2nd PREP

FIRST TERM

ALADWAA Gem

أكبر بنك أسئلة على الشهور

2025

NEW HELLO



ALADWAA
Gem

New Hello!

الصف الثانى الإعدادى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

Prepared by

Said Darahem

&

A Group of Experts in Teaching English

8

راجع إجاباتك

نزل إجابات الكتاب بصيغة PDF

هنا تجد كودك الشخصى

NAHDET MISR PUBLISHING HOUSE

www.aladwaa.com | Follow Us —

Contents

Module 1
Unit 1
Coming home 6
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 1 43
Unit 2
How are you feeling? 47
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 2 82
Units 1&2 Question Bank 86

Module 2
Unit 3
Great jobs 89
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 3 123
Review
Review A 127
Unit 4
Into the past 130
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 4 167
Units 3&4 Question Bank 171

Module 3
Unit 5
Helping you, helping me 174
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 5 211
Unit 6
Different environments 215
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 6 245
Units 5&6 Question Bank 249
Review
Review B 251

Answers
Listening Texts 254
Challenging Questions Answers 255

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثانى الإعدادى للعام الدراسى 2025-2024

الفصل الدراسى الأول

Month	New Hello! English for preparatory schools Year Two (SB + WB)		
September	Unit 1	December	Units 5 (cont.) + 6 + Review B
October	Units 1 (cont.) + 2 + 3	January (2025)	General Revision
November	Review A + Units 4 + 5		

MODULE 1

مقرر الشهور سبتمبر وأكتوبر



Unit 1 Coming home

Unit 2 How are you feeling?

Module 1 Question Bank

Selected from Previous Exams



Unit 1 COMING HOME

OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	A text about daily routines; a blog; interviews about routines; a website article about children in India; *The Railway Children*
Writing	A text message; an email to a penfriend
Listening	Description of a bedroom
Speaking	Discussing daily routines; describing bedrooms and furniture
Language	Present simple
Life Skills	Self-management
Values	Coexistence values
Issues	Citizenship

SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video

SB pages 2 - 5 | WB pages 72 & 73

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

a block of flats	عمارة سكنية	routine (n)	روتين/نظام يومى
chess (n)	شطرنج	sofa (n)	كنبة/أريكة
daily (adv)	يوميًا	text (ed) (v)	يراسل برسائل نصية
interview (n)	مقابلة/حوار		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

baker's (n)	مخبز	hobby (n)	هواية
blog (n)	مدونة إلكترونية	interest (n)	اهتمام
favourite (adj)	مفضل	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
flat (n)	شقة	subject (n)	مادة دراسية
free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	topic (n)	موضوع

Check Point

Choose and complete: Chess - interest - routine - interview

1. It's great to see your ..... in reading growing!
2. ..... is a game that people of all ages can enjoy.
3. My friends always do the same things at the weekends. They have a ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	activities	يؤدى أنشطة	take	a bus	يأخذ أتوبيس
	exercises/sports	يؤدى تمارين/رياضة		a routine	لديه روتين/نظام يومى
	homework	يؤدى الواجب المنزلى	have	coffee/lunch	يتناول القهوة/الغداء
make	breakfast/dinner	يُعد الإفطار/ العشاء		fun	يمرح

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Prepositions — حروف الجر

at break	فى الفسحة	on holiday	فى إجازة
at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	on the way to	فى الطريق إلى
different to/from	مختلف عن	share with	يشارك مع
for breakfast	على وجبة الإفطار	spend time on	يقضى وقتًا فى
help with	يساعد فى	study hard for	يذاكر بجدٍّ لـ
in the holidays	فى الإجازات	talk to	يتكلم مع/إلى
on the right	على اليمين		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
begin يبدأ	began	begun	learn (ed) يتعلم	learnt	learnt
drink يشرب	drank	drunk	leave يترك/يغادر	left	left
get up ينهض/يستيقظ	got up	got up	spend يقضى	spent	spent

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
good for	مفيد لـ	bad for	ضار بـ
late	متأخرًا	early	مبكرًا
same	مماثل/مشابه	different	مختلف
start	يبدأ	finish	ينهى

Check Point

Choose and complete: Same - at - for - learn - do

1. Next holiday, I am going to ..... water activities like swimming, diving and fishing.
2. I like playing with my friends ..... break time.
3. "....." is the opposite of "different".
4. It isn't easy to ..... a new language. It needs hard work.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **help to + inf. = help + inf. /help with + n** يساعد

- I help my brother (to do/ do) his homework.
- I help my mother with the housework.

2 **by** + وسائل المواصلات تستخدم أمام جميع وسائل النقل بشرط عدم وجود أداة أو ضمير أمام الوسيلة.

- I go to school by bus.
- We travelled to France by plane.

in + (a/an/the/my/his....) + car/taxi/canoe

تستخدم أمام وسائل النقل التى نجلس بداخلها أثناء الحركة.

- My father goes to work in his car.
- They went to the club in a taxi.

on + (a/an/the/my/his....) + bus/train/plane

تستخدم أمام وسائل النقل التى يمكن أن نقف بداخلها أو على ظهرها أثناء الحركة.

- I go to school on the bus.
- Sally enjoyed her journey on the train.

3 **home** البيت (لا يأتى قبلها حرف جر بمعنى إلى)

- They get home late.
- He came home late.
- He arrived home late.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I always help my mum ..... breakfast.
- a) make
- b) making
- c) to making
- d) makes

2 Yesterday, we went ..... the train to visit our grandparents.
- a) by
- b) at
- c) in
- d) on

3 My father ..... home late from work today.
- a) went to
- b) got
- c) arrived at
- d) came to

4 My uncle travelled to Hurghada ..... plane.
- a) in
- b) on
- c) at
- d) by

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
good for	مفيد لـ	useful for	مفيد لـ
start	يبدأ	begin	يبدأ

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
bake (v)	يخبز	-er		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم فاعل		baker (n)	خباز
differ (v)	يختلف	-ent		تحويل الفعل إلى صفة		different (adj)	مختلف

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-		تعطى عكس المعنى		important (adj)	هام	unimportant (adj)	غير هام

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
blog	مدونة	block	مبنى
interview	مقابلة	review	مقال نقدى

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - Do you do the same things every day?

Lesson 1
SB page 2

Read about Mariam. How does she get to school?

I'm Mariam. My daily routine[1] is the same every school day! I always get up at 6:30 in the morning. My mum always makes my breakfast. I go to school by bus with my friend, Dina. Sometimes we listen to music. My parents work at the hospital. They get home late, so I often help to make dinner. In the evening, I do my homework, read on the sofa[2], watch TV and text my friends[3]. Then I go to bed!



Post-reading questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
2. What time does Mariam get up?
3. What does Mariam do before going to bed?

(1) روتين/نظام يومى

(2) يقرأ على الأريكة

(3) أرسل أصدقائى برسائل نصية

Pre-reading question: - What do you do in your free time?

Look quickly at the blog. How does Sherifa help at home?

Lesson 2
SB page 4

My best friend's family



Hi, everyone! Today's interview[1] is with my best friend, Sherifa and her family. Here's a photo of us. Sherifa's on the right.

How many people are in your family, Sherifa?

There are five people: me, Mum, Dad and my two brothers.

When do you get up?

I usually get up at 6:30 and help Mum make breakfast. My brothers help, too. My dad starts work very early, so he leaves home before we get up. That's why he doesn't have breakfast with us. He eats when he gets to work. I walk to school with my brothers.

(1) حوار/مقابلة
(2) يستمع للموسيقى
(3) يلعب الشطرنج

Do you like to study?

Yes, I do. My favourite subject is English.

What do you do in the evening?

I listen to music[2] every day. My dad and I sometimes play chess[3]. My brothers always watch TV and my mum usually reads.

Comprehension Skills

"Critical Thinking Skill" «مهارة التفكير النقدى»

- What is critical thinking?

ما هى مهارة التفكير النقدى؟

- هو عملية تحليل وتقييم المعلومات التى جمعت من خلال الملاحظة وبناء رأى نقدى شخصى على ما تم قراءته من معلومات فى النص ودائما ما تكون إجابة هذه النوعية من الأسئلة غير مرتبطة بإجابة واحدة ولكن تعتمد الإجابة على فهمك وتحليلك للمعلومات الواردة بالفقرة أو النص.

Example:

Sherifa walks to school with her brothers.

Why do you think Sherifa and her brothers walk to school?

بناء على الملاحظة والقراءة الجيدة نستنتج أن المدرسة قريبة من منزلهم.
لذلك ستكون الإجابة كالتالى:

I think they walk to school because it is near their house.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We live in a ..... on the third floor of our building.
   a) topic b) tip c) flat d) blog
2. I had cheese with tomatoes ..... breakfast this morning.
   a) in b) for c) of d) on
3. My sister likes to write a ..... where she shares stories and pictures of our family.
   a) blog b) routine c) break d) daily
4. Let's ..... exercises to stay healthy and strong!
   a) text b) prefer c) make d) do
5. We stopped by the ..... to pick up some fresh bread.
   a) hobby b) baker's c) blog d) subject
6. Can you help me ..... my homework?
   a) with b) of c) on d) at
7. Painting is my ..... and I love using bright colours to paint beautiful pictures.
   a) hobby b) routine c) blog d) interview
8. Can we ..... the park now? It's starting to get dark.
   a) leave b) go c) get up d) spend
9. We talked about many ..... when we met last time.
   a) interviews b) flats c) topics d) blocks
10. ..... is a fun game to play with pieces on a board.
    a) Tennis b) Chess c) Basketball d) Running
11. Eating vegetables is ..... for your body and helps you grow strong.
    a) same b) late c) bad d) good
12. I always study hard ..... my exams because I feel proud when I get high marks.
    a) in b) off c) at d) for
13. Every day, I ..... a routine of eating breakfast, getting dressed, and going to school.
    a) give b) make c) have d) do
14. Ice cream is my ..... dessert, especially chocolate and vanilla. I like it.
    a) bad b) different c) fun d) favourite
15. I see many houses ..... my way to school.
    a) at b) on c) of d) in

Time to Practise



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Uncle Omar lives in a ..... of flats in the city centre. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤
   a) block b) back c) blog d) bag
2. I go to school .....; I always go in the morning. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤
   a) to day b) daily c) in day d) week
3. How do you like to ..... your time in the holidays? الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) stay b) spend c) play d) do
4. Samir has an important ..... today for the new job. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) interview b) revision c) view d) classroom
5. What do you do in your .....? الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) free time b) far time c) busy time d) last time
6. Do you ..... hot or cold drinks? المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) draw b) prefer c) text d) stay
7. Your ..... is your usual way of doing something. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) food b) routine c) relatives d) hobbies
8. This ..... is comfortable. It takes four people. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) chair b) curtain c) drawer d) sofa
9. I ..... my room with my sister. There are two beds. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤
   a) do b) cry c) share d) play
10. Mum is really tired today. I will help her ..... dinner. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) text b) listen c) make d) build
11. Can you ..... my mother for me? My phone is not working. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) test b) exit c) taste d) text
12. Mai has a great ..... in music. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
    a) interesting b) interest c) interested d) interests
13. My favourite ..... is English. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) sport b) music c) singer d) subject
14. My father starts work very early in the morning, so he doesn't have ..... with us. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
    a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner d) supper



لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Remember

1 The Present Simple Tense — زمن المضارع البسيط

e.g. - I get up at six o'clock every day.

Usage — الاستخدام

- It's used to express habits and facts. — يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن العادات والحقائق.

e.g. - The sun rises from the east. (Fact حقيقة)

- We go to the club at the weekends. (Habit عادة)

Form — التكوين

Affirmative — الإثبات

I / You / We / They (اسم جمع) > inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. - I play football at the club.
- You play chess online.

He / She / It (اسم مفرد) > inf. مصدر الفعل + s/es/ies

e.g. - Ahmed plays tennis.
- The cat plays with the ball.

Negative — النفى

I / You / We / They (اسم جمع) > don't + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. - Ali and I don't play football at the club.
- The students don't play in the playground.

He / She / It (اسم مفرد) > doesn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. - Nancy doesn't play tennis.
- My brother doesn't play the piano.

Question — السؤال

Yes/No questions — السؤال بمعنى هل

Do (I / you / we / they (اسم جمع)) > inf. ...? مصدر الفعل

e.g. A: Do Ahmed and Samir play volleyball?
B: No, they don't.

Does (he / she / it (اسم مفرد)) > inf. ...?

e.g. A: Does Ghada play tennis?
B: Yes, she does.

Wh-questions — السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q.word أداة استفهام + do + I, we, they, you, اسم جمع + inf. مصدر الفعل?

e.g. - When do you play volleyball?

Q.word أداة استفهام + does + he, she, it, اسم مفرد + inf. مصدر الفعل?

e.g. - Where does he play football?

2 Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار

Usage الاستخدام

- نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن مدى تكرار فعل ما.

e.g. I always **get up** at 11 o'clock. Sally never **has** coffee for breakfast.

- ظروف التكرار ونسبة كل منها:

always (100%) دائمًا - usually (70-80%) عادة - often (60-70%) غالبًا -
sometimes (50%) أحيانًا - never (0%) أبدًا

Form التكوين

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + adverb of frequency ظرف التكرار + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + adverb of frequency ظرف التكرار + **inf.** + **s, es, ies**

e.g. - He usually **listens** to music on his way to school.
- My kids always **go** to school by bus.

كما لاحظنا يتم وضع ظرف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسى، ولكن يختلف الوضع مع verb to be كالتالى:

Subject + **(am/is/are)** + adverb of frequency ظرف التكرار + **adjective** صفة

e.g. - We **are** usually **late**. - Mona **is** always **clever**.

لاحظ

١- عند السؤال عن ظروف التكرار نستخدم (How often):

How often

do	I / we / they / you (اسم جمع)	> inf. ...? مصدر الفعل	e.g.	**A: How often** do Nora and Yasmine **study** science? **B: They** sometimes **study** science.
does	he / she / it (اسم مفرد)	> inf. ...? مصدر الفعل	e.g.	**A: How often** does Nader **walk** to school? **B: He** always **walks** to school.

٢- يمكننا استخدام الكلمات التالية عند الإجابة عن السؤال بـ How often:
once مرة واحدة / twice مرتان / three times ثلاثة مرات

e.g. - I visit my grandparents once a week. (مرة فى الأسبوع)
- She cleans the bedroom twice a day. (مرتان فى اليوم)

تُمكِّنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 My cousin ..... (always is) helpful.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is always) لأن ظرف التكرار يأتى بعد verb to be.

2 A: ..... (How many) does Laila practise the violin? B: Twice a week.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (How often) لوجود twice فى الإجابة مما يعنى أننا نسأل عن عدد المرات.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises (1)

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. On Saturdays, Amr always ..... up at seven. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

a) gets b) get c) getting d) to get

2. Hamdi ..... drink coffee for breakfast. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

a) doesn't b) don't c) isn't d) hasn't

3. Our school ..... at three o'clock every day. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

a) finish b) finishes c) finished d) finishing

4. She ..... a sports car. الغربية ٢٠٢٢

a) never drive b) drives never c) drives ever d) never drives

5. **A:** How ..... do you watch TV? **B:** Twice a week. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤

a) many b) often c) long d) much

6. My sister ..... polite and clever. الغربية ٢٠٢٣

a) always is b) is always c) does always d) always does

7. They ..... football. They prefer tennis. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

a) likes b) not like c) doesn't like d) don't like

8. **A:** ..... Mariam listen to music? **B:** Yes, she does. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

a) Do b) Have c) Does d) Did

9. Aytn and Wafaa always ..... English stories in the evening.

a) reads b) reading c) read d) is reading

10. I ..... share my toys with my sister. I like doing that.

a) once b) never c) always d) don't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My brother usually ..... (help) me with my school work. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤

2. On Fridays, we ..... (not/ study). We always spend the day out.

3. Omar ..... (never is) late for school. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

4. I always ..... (drinking) milk for breakfast. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

5. It doesn't ..... (rains) in summer. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

3 How to Form A Question كيفية تكوين سؤال

أولًا: السؤال بمعنى هل (Yes/No question) هو عبارة عن سؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو فعل ناقص:

Form التكوين

نكوّن السؤال بمعنى (هل) عن طريق:

Helping verb (فعل مساعد) + subject (فاعل) + complement تكملة الجملة?

Auxiliary/Modal verbs: تعرف أولا على الأفعال المساعدة/الناقصة:

Verb (to be) (الفعل يكون)	Verb (to do) (الفعل يفعل)	Verb (to have) (الفعل يملك)	Modal verbs (الأفعال الناقصة)
am / is are / was were	do does did	have has had	can / could / will / would / shall / should / may / might / must

1 Verb "to be" الفعل يكون

Verb to be + subject الفاعل + (noun اسم/adj. صفة/inf. مصدر الفعل +ing)?

Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة
A: Is Basma eating?	**B:** Yes, she is. / No, she isn't.
A: Were they happy at the party?	**B:** Yes, they were./ No, they weren't.

2 Verb "to do" الفعل يفعل

Verb to do + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

الجمل فى زمن المضارع أو الماضى البسيط لا تحتوى على فعل مساعد، لذلك نستخدم (Do/Does) مع المضارع البسيط ونستخدم (Did) مع الماضى البسيط.

Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة
A: Does Waleed work hard?	**B:** Yes, he does./ No, he doesn't.
A: Do they like fish?	**B:** Yes, they do. / No, they don't.
A: Did Aya make lunch?	**B:** Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.

3 Verb "to have" الفعل يملك

Verb to have + subject الفاعل + past participle التصريف الثالث للفعل?

راجع جداول تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة داخل الدروس.

Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة
A: Have you got a bike?	**B:** Yes, I have./ No, I haven't.
A: Has Sally bought a car?	**B:** Yes, she has./ No, she hasn't.
A: Had Ali finished his homework?	**B:** Yes, he had./ No, he hadn't.

4 Modal Verbs

الأفعال الناقصة

Modal verb + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة
A: Will they study English tomorrow?	**B:** Yes, they will./ **B:** No, they won't.
A: Can he play the guitar?	**B:** Yes, he can. / **B:** No, he can't.

ثانيًا: السؤال بأداة استفهام:

- يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالتالى:

Q. word	helping verb	subject	complement?
١- أداة استفهام	٢- فعل مساعد/ناقص	٣- فاعل	٤- تكملة السؤال

- قم بحفظ أدوات الاستفهام التالية جيدا.

What	ما/ماذا	How	كيف	How heavy	كم الوزن
When	متى	How many	كم عدد	How long	كم المدة
Where	أين	How much	كم الثمن/الكمية	How far	كم البعد/المسافة
Who	من	How often	كم مرة	How fast	كم السرعة
Which	أى/أيهما	How old	كم العمر	How wide	كم العرض/الاتساع
Why	لماذا	How tall	كم الطول	How deep	كم العمق
Whose	مِلْك من/لمن	How high	كم الارتفاع	What kind	ما نوع

Sentence الجملة	Question السؤال
They will travel to Aswan **next week**.	When will they travel to Aswan?
Karim is **playing tennis**.	What is Karim doing?
Ola has got **a car**.	What has Ola got?

تُمكِّنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 ..... (where/we) going?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Where are we) لأن السؤال فى المضارع المستمر لوجود going والفاعل we يأخذ are.

2 What colour ..... (are) your new bike?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is) لأن bike مفرد.

3 **A:** ..... will Ali spend his weekend? **B:** In Alexandria.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Where) لأن الإجابة تعبر عن مكان.

4 Can you ..... (climbing) this tree?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (climb) لأن Can يتبعها فعل فى المصدر.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises (2)

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When ..... Nijar's last birthday? القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

a) was b) did c) do d) does

2. ..... you go to the museum last week? الغربية ٢٠٢٣

a) Did b) Were c) Are d) Do

3. ..... do you do in your free time? الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) What b) Where c) Who d) How

4. ..... you always listen to music on your mobile? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) Does b) Do c) Have d) Are

5. ..... is this box?

a) How many b) How heavy c) How fast d) How far

6. ..... I watch my favourite TV show?

a) Am b) Was c) Have d) Can

7. **A:** Is he ..... tennis? **B:** No, he isn't. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

a) plays b) play c) playing d) played

8. How ..... go to work?

a) do they b) are they c) they do d) they are

9. ..... taught you to ride a bike?

a) What b) Where c) Who d) How

10. Has your father ..... a computer? المنوفية ٢٠٢٤

a) getting b) gets c) get d) got

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When ..... (do) he usually arrive? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. Why ..... (be) you laughing? القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
3. Did your sister ..... (went) to the market last week? الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
4. **A:** ..... (Who) does Kareem come to school? **B:** By bus.
5. What ..... (was) you doing all day yesterday? الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Discussing daily routines

مناقشة الروتين اليومى

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد
online			
What time do you get up?			متى تستيقظ؟
I always get up at six a.m.	أستيقظ دائمًا فى السادسة صباحًا.		
How do you get to school?			كيف تصل للمدرسة؟
I usually get to school by bike.	عادة أصل بالدراجة.		
Where do you live?			أين تعيش؟
I live in Alexandria.	أعيش فى الإسكندرية.		
Who do you live with?			مع من تعيش؟
I live with my family.	أعيش مع عائلتى.		

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Mona is asking Reham about her daily routine. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

Mona : Where do you live?

Reham : (1)..... .

Mona : (2).....?

Reham : I live with my family.

Mona : Do you usually have dinner with your family?

Reham : (3)..... .

Mona : How often do you do exercise?

Reham : (4)..... .

Mona : (5).....?

Reham : I like to go to parks on holiday.

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about a daily routine

كيفية الكتابة عن نظام يومى

- My name's (الاسم).
- I live in (المكان).
- I always get up at (الوقت).
- I usually walk to school with (الأشخاص).
- I have lunch with my family.
- I do my homework in the evenings.
- I do sports every (اليوم).
- I go to bed at (الساعة).

Writing tips

Organise your thoughts before starting. Brainstorm all related ideas and vocabulary.

نظم أفكارك قبل البدء فى الكتابة. فكر فى مفردات وأفكار مرتبطة بالموضوع.

Example

My family's daily routine

My name's Basmala. I live on the second floor of the new block of flats with my dad, mum, grandma and two brothers. I always get up at 6 o'clock on a school day. My mother always makes my breakfast. I walk to school with my two brothers. My father goes to work at 7:30 a.m. He works at a school. Sometimes I walk to school with my father. I never go to school late. We usually have lunch at five together. In the evenings, I do my homework. I often play chess with my grandma before I go to bed. I study hard for my exams. I often listen to music. We often go to the park on the weekends. I like to play on the grass there.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your school day"

My name's .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

1. Walid gets up at ..... in the morning.
   a) five b) six c) seven d) eight
2. Walid has breakfast at ..... .
   a) home b) the road c) a restaurant d) school
3. Walid has ..... brother(s).
   a) no b) one c) two d) three
4. Walid is good at ..... .
   a) maths b) Arabic c) English d) geography

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Zeinab and Aisha are discussing their daily routines.

Zeinab : Hi Aisha! What time do you usually get up in the morning?
Aisha : I get up at 7 o'clock. What about you, Zeinab?
Zeinab : (1)..... . I like to get up very early.
Aisha : How do you get to school?
Zeinab : (2)..... . It's just a short walk from our house.
Aisha : Oh, that's nice. (3).....?
Zeinab : I live in a flat.
Aisha : (4).....?
Zeinab : I live with my parents and my little sister. What about you?
Aisha : (5)..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. On the weekends, I go to the funfair with my cousins and we ..... a lot of fun.
   a) take b) spend c) have d) make
2. Yesterday, I ..... time drawing a picture for my friend.
   a) spent b) began c) left d) drank
3. At break, I have some sandwiches and talk ..... my friends.
   a) in b) at c) for d) to
4. I used to get up late when I was young, but now I get up ..... .
   a) different b) early c) same d) free
5. We ..... the bus to get to the museum yesterday.
   a) took b) did c) made d) spent

6. The colour of your shirt is different ..... mine.
a) in b) by c) from d) at
7. The ..... of flats has many floors, and I live on the fifth floor.
a) chess b) routine c) break d) block
8. Habiba likes numbers so much, she ..... gets high marks in the maths exams.
الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
a) never b) doesn't c) always d) hasn't
9. Does he ..... to music?
المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
a) listen b) listens c) listening d) listened
10. How will they ..... their garden grow faster?
a) make b) made c) makes d) making

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He never ..... (come) to school late. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
2. My sister ..... (don't) help in the kitchen. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
3. We ..... (visits) grandma's house on Sundays.
4. **A:** ..... (How) always makes delicious food? **B:** My mum.

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your daily routine"

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People ..... usually work on Fridays. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
a) doesn't b) don't c) haven't d) aren't
2. Which subjects ..... he interested in?
a) is b) are c) have d) has

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Why ..... (do) you sad?
2. Every day, everyone in my family ..... (eating) breakfast early.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK					

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

Watch a video

SB pages 6 - 8 | WB pages 74 & 75

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

adventure (n)	مغامرة	railway line (n)	خط سكة حديد
feed the chickens	يطعم الدجاج	tap (n)	صنبور/حنفية
knife (n)	سكينة	terrible (adj)	فظيع/سيئ جدًا
prison (n)	سجن	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
profile (n)	الملف الشخصى	typical (adj)	معتاد/نموذجى/مثالى

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

bread (n)	خبز	picnic (n)	نزهة خلوية
carry (y ied) (v)	يحمل	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح
change (d) (v)	يتغير	the country (n)	الريف
describe (d) (v)	يصف	village (n)	قرية
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	water (ed) (v)	يروى/يسقى
marry (y ied) (v)	يتزوج	watermelon (n)	بطيخ

Check Point

Choose and complete: village - profile - picnic - prison

1. I can help you edit your online ..... if you want.
2. The ..... is connected with our town by a bridge.
3. He was sent to ..... because he stole a laptop from the store.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	a job	يؤدى مهمة	have	a job to do	لديك عمل للقيام به
	wrong	يفعل خطأ	take	turns	يتبادل الأدوار

Prepositions — حروف الجر

around the world	حول العالم	find out about	يكتشف عن
ask for	يطلب	full of	ملىء بـ
at first/last	فى البداية/أخيرًا	in many ways	بطرق كثيرة
at the (end/ beginning) of	فى نهاية/بداية	move from ... to	ينتقل من ..... إلى
careful with	حريص على	on TV	فى التلفاز
different for	مختلف بالنسبة لـ	take away from	يبعد عن

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
become	يصبح	became	become	feel	يشعر	felt	felt
bring	يحضر	brought	brought	forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
feed	يطعم	fed	fed	know	يعرف	knew	known

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
attractive	جذاب	ugly	قبيح	near	قريب	far	بعيد
borrow	يستعير/يستلف	lend	يسلف	outside	بالخارج	inside	بالداخل
careful	حريص	careless	مهمل	poor	فقير	rich	غنى
full	ممتلئ	empty	فارغ	remember	يتذكر	forget	ينسى
large	ضخم	small/tiny	صغير	young	صغير السن	old	كبير السن

Check Point

Choose and complete: do - around - careless - feel - take

1. You can't both play the game at the same time - ..... turns.
2. I'd like to sail ..... the world.
3. The opposite of "careful" is "..... ".
4. I always ..... worried when my parents aren't at home.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 with — ذو/لديه (تستخدم عند الوصف)

- They have a big home with a large garden.

2 My six-year-old cousin

لاحظ عدم جمع كلمة (year) لأنها هنا تستخدم كصفة لكلمة (cousin) والصفة لا تجمع.

- My six-year-old cousin is here and he wants to play a game with me.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My school has two buildings ..... a big playground.
   a) with b) for c) at d) of
2. I saw a ten-.....-old boy swimming in the lake.
   a) years' b) year's c) years d) year

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

poor	فقير	people without enough[1] money
prison	سجن	a place where people go when they do something[2] wrong[3]
railway line	خط سكة حديد	the road that a train travels on

(1) كافٍ (2) شىء ما (3) خطأ

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها	Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
attractive	جذاب	beautiful	جميل	near	قريب	close	قريب
careful	حريص	cautious	حريص	terrible	فظيع	very bad	سئ جدا

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
attract (v)	يجذب	-ive		تحويل الفعل إلى صفة		attractive (adj)	جذاب
care (n)	رعاية/حرص	-ful		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		careful (adj)	حريص

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
message	رسالة	massage	تدليك
poor	فقير	pour	يصب
tap	صنبور/حنفية	tape	شريط لاصق

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Read the profile quickly. Which of the three questions is Shahana answering?

Lesson 3

SB page 6

Lives around the world

Tell us about your life!

- What are your hobbies[1] and interests[2]?
- What is a typical[3] day in your life?
- What job do you want to do one day?

(1) هوايات (2) اهتمامات
(3) نموذجى/مثالى (4) يشارك
(5) حنفية/صنبور (6) يطعم

My name's Shahana. I'm from India. I live in a village with my parents, my brother and my sister.

I share[4] a room with my sister. We all get up early. There is an outside tap[5] at the end of the street where we live. My mum gets water from the tap every morning. Then we all have breakfast. We have bread with a cup of tea. My dad works in a shop.

I have two jobs to do when I get home from school. I feed[6] the chickens, then I help my mum make dinner. After dinner, I do my homework. Sometimes I help my brother and sister to do their homework, too. Then I go to bed.

Pre-reading question: - What kind of fruit do you like?

Read the conversation and answer the questions. *SB page 7*

Yunis Grandma, have you got a watermelon[1]?

Grandma Yes, I have. It's on the table.

Yunis Can I have some, please? I like watermelon.

Grandma Yes, of course. We need a knife[2] to cut it!

Yunis Shall I help you to cut it?

Grandma Thank you, Yunis, but be careful[3] with the knife!



(1) بطيخة (2) سكين

(3) حريص/حذر

Post-reading question: - Why should we be careful when we use the knife?

Pre-reading question: - What game did you use to play when you were young?

Complete the text message with can, shall or have you got. *SB page 7*

online

Hi, Amal. **Have you got** that game called *Odd one out*?

No! I don't play that game now. It's for young children.

Have you got any other children's games?
My six-year-old cousin is here and he wants to play a game with me.

Yes, I have *Role-play*! Do you remember that game?

Yes, I do! **Can** I borrow it this evening? My cousin would love it!

Of course. **Shall** I play it, too? It's better with three people, and I still enjoy that game.

Of course! You can come to my house later.

Post-reading question: - What game has Amal got?

Pre-reading question:

- What kind of stories do you like reading?

Read the story and put these pictures in the correct order. *SB page 8*

The Railway Children *by E Nesbit*



It is the 1900s. Roberta, her younger brother Peter and their little sister, Phyllis, live with their parents in London. They have a big, attractive (1) home with a large garden. One terrible (2) day, two men take their father away from home. The children do not know where he is going or why.



The children move from the city with their mother to a small house near a railway line (3). The family are poor (4) and life is very different for them.



The children have lots of adventures (5) near the railway line. A kind old man, who travels on the train every day, becomes their friend.

The old man helps the family in many ways. He helps their father too, because their father is in prison (6) for something he did not do. Finally, their father comes home. The family is so happy to be together again at last.

(1) جذاب (2) فظيع
(3) خط سكة حديد (4) فقراء
(5) مغامرات (6) سجن

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

adventure /əd'ven·tʃər/
prison /prɪzən/

Comprehension Skills

"Critical Thinking Skill" «مهارة التفكير النقدى»:

كما ذكرنا من قبل هو عملية تحليل وتقييم المعلومات التى جمعت من خلال الملاحظة، والسؤال فى الغالب يأتى فى اتجاهين:

الأول: أن يسألك عن رأيك بناء على التفكير والاستنتاجات (تمت مناقشته من قبل).

الثانى: أن يضعك محل أحد الاشخاص ويسألك عن تصرفك ورد فعلك فى هذا الوضع.

فعلى سبيل المثال من القصة السابقة:

If you were one of the children, what would you do?

إن كنت أحد الأطفال ماذا سوف تفعل؟

I would try to find work to help my family.

يمكن أن تختلف الإجابة من شخص لآخر فعبر عن رد فعلك كما ترى من وجهة نظرك.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mom will ..... snacks for our movie night.
   a) become b) feel c) forget d) bring
2. The ..... is a place with lots of open fields and farms.
   a) railway b) country c) message d) picnic
3. My teacher ..... reading a book to be better at English.
   a) fed b) enjoyed c) suggested d) borrowed
4. Dad is planning to ..... the colour of our living room walls next month.
   a) change b) carry c) find out d) suggest
5. Be careful ..... the information you share about yourself online.
   a) for b) with c) in d) on
6. My dream is to ..... a famous footballer like Mo Salah.
   a) come b) carry c) enjoy d) become
7. Last year, my grandparents ..... from the country to the city to live near us.
   a) brought b) suggested c) moved d) carried
8. I ..... the plants to help them stay healthy and grow big.
   a) watered b) described c) imagined d) suggested
9. In stories, the prince and princess often ..... and live happily ever after.
   a) move b) marry c) feed d) feel
10. I usually ask ..... advice from my parents.
    a) to b) for c) on d) at
11. The playground is full ..... children playing and laughing.
    a) on b) for c) of d) about
12. I found ..... more information about animals from a book at the library.
    a) out b) for c) at d) on
13. I can't go out tonight because I have lots of jobs to ..... .
    a) make b) do c) get d) think
14. When it's sunny, I always like to play ..... to enjoy the warm weather.
    a) inside b) near c) far d) outside
15. My mum will ..... my tablet if I don't finish my homework on time.
    a) move from b) pay for c) take away d) find out

Time to Practise



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To give food to an animal is to ..... it. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) feel b) feed c) fail d) fan
2. The ..... are the people without enough money to live on. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) rich b) young c) poor d) brave
3. The weather was ....., so we couldn't travel to Alexandria. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) bored b) wonderful c) fantastic d) terrible
4. You must be careful when you use the ..... . It's very sharp. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) knife b) tap c) profile d) table
5. The opposite of "attractive" is "....." . القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) good b) far c) small d) ugly
6. When people do something wrong, they go to ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٤
   a) prize b) prison c) cinema d) concert
7. The school workers use a ..... in the garden to water the plants there. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
   a) cap b) tap c) tab d) map
8. On a ..... weekend, I visit my grandfather. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) bored b) typical c) weak d) strong
9. We can't ..... life without computers and the internet. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) get b) imagine c) need d) visit
10. Their new house is in the country near the railway ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
    a) line b) square c) circle d) tube
11. Living in the desert has a lot of ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) houses b) adventures c) rooms d) shops
12. They bought a ..... house as their old one was very small. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
    a) tiny b) bad c) large d) funny
13. My friend is sending me a ..... message on my phone. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
    a) research b) street c) picnic d) text
14. Students can read and ..... books from the library. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
    a) lend b) give c) borrow d) send
15. Every day, my father buys 14 loaves of ..... from the baker's. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) cheese b) rice c) coffee d) bread



لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



1. Speaking

Asking for something:

طلب شيء

- **Can I + inf. ....., please?**

هل يمكننى...، من فضلك؟

A: Can I **have** a cup of tea, please? **B:** Yes, of course.

Suggesting doing something:

اقتراح فعل شيء

- **Shall I + inf. ....?**

هل ...؟

A: Shall I **help** you to cut it? **B:** Good idea.

- **Let's + inf. .... .**

هيا بنا

A: Let's **go** to the park tomorrow. **B:** OK. Why not?

Asking about feelings:

السؤال عن المشاعر

- **How (do/did) you feel .....?**

كيف تشعر ....؟

A: How did the children **feel** when they moved to the small house?

B: They felt very sad.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue: WB

Khadeja is painting some pictures and wants to borrow watercolours.

Mariam : What are you doing, Khadeja?

Khadeja : (1)..... .

Mariam : That's great! I know you are good at art.

Khadeja : Yes, I like it. Can I ask for something?

Mariam : (2)..... .

Khadeja : (3).....?

Mariam : Yes, I have got a box of watercolours in my drawer.

Khadeja : (4).....?

Mariam : Of course, you can borrow it. Just be careful with it.

Khadeja : (5)..... . I will be very careful, Mariam.

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about your weekend routine

كيفية الكتابة عن الروتين الخاص بنهاية الأسبوع

- I'm (الاسم).
- I live with (الأشخاص).
- My house is (الوصف).
- I like to (الأنشطة التى تقوم بها فى المنزل).
- My father works in (المكان).
- I help my mother with the housework.
- I go to bed at (الساعة).

Writing tips

After brainstorming ideas and related vocabulary, start thinking about a good introduction for your paragraph.

بعد تحديد الأفكار والمفردات المرتبطة بالفقرة، ابدأ بالتفكير فى مقدمة جيدة للموضوع.

Example

My weekend routine

My name's Shahenda. I live with my parents and my sister in a large house with a beautiful garden. It's in the village. I share a room with my sister. On Fridays, we all get up early. We have breakfast in the garden. Then, we help our father who works on the farm. I like to water the flowers and plants in the garden. I get water from an outside tap. My sister likes to feed the chickens and collect the eggs. We also help our mother with the housework. We do our homework after dinner. Sometimes I help my sister with her homework. We go to bed at ten o'clock.

2. How to describe a room, flat or a house

كيفية وصف غرفة، شقة أو منزل

- I live in (المكان).
- Our flat/ house is (الوصف).
- It has got (الغرف).
- My bedroom is (الوصف).
- It has (الأشياء التى بها).

Example

To : adam@yahoo.com **From :** karim@yahoo.com **Subject :** My bedroom

Hi Adam,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about our flat. I live in a flat with my family. It has got two bedrooms, a dining room, a kitchen, a living room and a bathroom. It's in a big city. Our flat is very comfortable. My bedroom has a big window with curtains. When I open the curtains, the room is very bright with the sunlight. My bed is under the window. I have a wardrobe in front of the bed. I put my clothes there. There is a mirror next to the wardrobe. There's also a lamp next to the bed. The bathroom is next to my bedroom. It's big. It has a nice basin there. In the evenings, I like to read in bed or watch TV. I always feel comfortable and happy in our flat.

Write soon.
Karim

1 Read the following, then answer the questions: الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

I'm Tarek, I live in Cairo. This is a typical day for me. On school days, I get up at half past six. I usually have breakfast with my family. My school is far away. So I never walk there. My mum and dad drive me there. When we hear the bell at seven o'clock, we go to the school hall. We have three lessons, then it is break. During the break, I usually talk with my friends in the playground, but sometimes we go to the library to read books. We have lunch at one o'clock. School finishes at three o'clock.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about? .....
2. Do you think it's good to be in a school that's far from your house? Why? Why not? .....
3. Why do pupils sometimes go to the library? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "there" refers to ..... .
   a) school b) playground c) library d) school hall
5. Tarek finishes his school at ..... .
   a) six b) seven c) three d) four
6. The underlined word "typical" means ..... .
   a) unusual b) safe c) usual d) unknown

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. His mother was angry because he ..... something wrong.
   a) brought b) came c) did d) spent
2. This box is too heavy to ..... . Let me help you.
   a) carry b) feed c) water d) cut
3. I want to have a ..... in the park next weekend.
   a) prison b) message c) village d) picnic
4. I forget to bring my book. The opposite of "forget" is ..... .
   a) lend b) know c) remember d) borrow
5. Ramy's family lives in a big and a/an ..... house. It's really amazing. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) bored b) tiny c) attractive d) terrible
6. The metal road that a train travels on is a ..... line. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) railway b) high way c) smart way d) home way

7. We always start our exams ..... the beginning of January.
a) at b) of c) on d) out
8. ..... she got blond hair? الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
a) Does b) Do c) Has d) Have
9. I ..... to bed before 11 p.m.
a) often goes b) goes often c) go always d) always go
10. How ..... they learn English so fast?
a) were b) are c) did d) does

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I never ..... (leaves) my clothes on the bed. I always put them in the wardrobe.
2. Rayan ..... (not/ like) eating spicy food.
3. ..... (I can) have a cookie, please?
4. Where ..... (we are) going on holiday?

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"A typical school day" الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. We play in the fifteen- ..... break.
a) minute b) minutes c) minute's d) minutes'
2. There is a tap to water the plants. The word "water" here is a/an ..... .
a) adjective b) verb c) noun d) adverb

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My mum ..... (doesn't) late for helping us.
2. Who ..... (go) with you in the last trip?

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4
TACKLES	Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK				

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

Watch a video

SB pages 9 - 11 | WB pages 76 - 78

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

armchair (n)	كرسى ذو مساند	cushions (n)	وسائد
basin (n)	حوض	lamp (n)	مصباح
bookshelf (n)	رف الكتب	match (ed) (v)	يطابق/يتماشى مع
carpet (n)	سجادة	mirror (n)	مرآة
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج	nature reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية
cupboard (n)	دولاب	penfriend (n)	صديق بالمراسلة
curtains (n)	ستائر	wardrobe (n)	خزانة ملابس

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

bathroom (n)	حمّام	information (n)	معلومات
bedroom (n)	حجرة نوم	nearby (adv)	مجاور/بالقرب من
breakfast break (n)	استراحة الإفطار	sunlight (n)	ضوء الشمس
description (n)	وصف	website (n)	موقع إلكترونى

Check Point

Choose and complete: carpet - Sunlight - bookshelf - cupboard

1 ..... makes my room warm.

2 The ground of the living room is covered by a colourful ..... .

3 The ..... in the kitchen is full of dishes and glasses.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

get	dressed	يرتدى ملابسه	practise	English	يمارس اللغة الإنجليزية
keep	clothes	يحفظ الملابس	take	photos	يلتقط صورًا فوتوغرافية

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a reply to	ردًا على	look for	يبحث عن
a short walk from	على مسافة قصيرة من	look out of	ينظر من
at night	فى الليل	Nice to meet you!	من الجيد أن ألقاك!
belong to	تخص/تنتمى لـ	on the front	فى المقدمة
hear from	يتلقى أخبارًا من		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
keep يحفظ/يحتفظ بـ	kept	kept	sell يبيع	sold	sold

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
downstairs	فى الطابق السفلى	upstairs	فى الطابق العلوى
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	hate/dislike	يكره
open	يفتح/مفتوح	close/closed	يغلق/ مغلق

Check Point

Choose and complete: close - kept - get - belonged - sold

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

1. I usually ..... dressed before I have my breakfast.
2. The opposite of "open" is "..... ".
3. The sweets ..... to Sarah, but she shared them with her friends.
4. My brother ..... his clothes in a chest of drawers when we were in Alexandria.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

1 would ('d) love/like to + inf. يود أن

- I'd love to **visit** the nature reserves near El Faiyoum.

2 Thank you for/Thanks for + (n/v. ing) شكرًا على

- Thank you for **sending** me your profile.
- I just wanted to say thanks for **the present** you sent.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Thank you ..... helping me do my homework. It is hard for me sometimes.
   a) with b) at c) to d) for
2. I would love ..... to the park and play there.
   a) to go b) to going c) go d) going

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

(1) أدراج (2) الأرضية (3) ضوء (4) يضع

Definitions التعريفات

a chest of drawers خزانة ذات أدراج	it has drawers[1] where you can put your clothes
basin حوض	something you can wash your face in
carpets سجاد	these are on the floor[2]
curtains ستائر	they are next to your windows and you close them at night
lamp مصباح	it gives you light[3]
mirror مرآة	you can see yourself in this
wardrobe خزانة ملابس	it is a big cupboard where you can put[4] your clothes

Prepositions of place حروف جر المكان

above	فوق	next to	بجوار
behind	خلف	on	على
in front of	أمام	opposite	مواجه لـ
near	بالقرب من	under	تحت

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة		Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها	
comfortable	مريح	relaxing	مريح
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	like/love	يحب

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة		Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة	
inform (v)	يعلم	-ation	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	information (n)	معلومات

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	comfortable (adj) مريح	uncomfortable (adj) غير مريح

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word الكلمة		Similar word الكلمة المشابهة	
lamp	مصباح	lamb	خروف صغير
match	يتطابق/يتماشى مع	much	كثير

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 5

Listen to two descriptions. Which room is each person describing? *SB page 9*

Narrator 1

Boy My room is small, but it's really attractive(1). I have a lamp(2) on a bookshelf(3) next to my bed so I can read at night. I have a wardrobe(4) with a mirror(5) on the front, and my desk is under the window. Do you like my curtains(6)? The colour matches the carpet(7).

The best thing about my room is the sofa. I can sit there and read or watch videos on my computer.



(1) جذاب (2) مصباح
(3) رف الكتب (4) دولاب ملابس
(5) مرآة (6) ستائر
(7) سجادة (8) وسائد
(9) كرسى ذو مساند (10) خزانة ذات أدراج
(11) حوض

Narrator 2

Girl My bed is under the window. There are cushions(8) on it! Sometimes I sleep with the curtains open because I like to look out of the window! I've got lots of books, and I like to sit and read in the big armchair(9). I keep some clothes in the chest of drawers(10). Our bathroom is downstairs, but I have a basin(11) in my room, where I can wash my face before I go to bed.



Listen and complete the description of the bedroom. *WB page 76*

Girl I like my parents' bedroom. When they open the curtains, there is always lots of sunlight in the room. Their bed is **under** the window. In **front** of the bed, they have a big **wardrobe**. My mum puts her dresses in there. There is also an **armchair** next to the window. My dad sometimes reads his book here. He puts his clothes in a big chest of **drawers**. This is **behind** the door. They don't have a **basin** in their room because the bathroom is next to their room, but they have a big **mirror**. My sister always likes to look at herself in it!



Read the email. Why does Judy want a penfriend?

SB page 10

Dear Rebecca,

It is very nice to meet you. My name is Judy. I'm from Al Fayoum, in Egypt. It's a large city, with beautiful nature reserves[1] nearby. I live with my parents and my brother in a flat. My grandparents live in a flat downstairs.



(1) محميات طبيعية (2) صديق بالمراسلة

On Saturdays, I usually get up early and help my grandmother with her shopping, then I read or do my homework. In the afternoons, I visit my friends or play computer games with my brother.

My favourite subjects are maths and English. Thank you for being my penfriend[2]. I'm happy to be able to practise my English!

I hope to hear from you soon.

Judy

Put this email to a penfriend in the correct order.

WB page 77

Hi Leila



b. 1 Thank you for your email. Here is some information about me. I live with my parents and my two sisters in Oxford. We live in a house but we don't have a garden. Does your home have a garden?

a. 2 Without a garden, I often go to the park at the weekends. I love taking photos of the birds there. Do you have many birds where you live?

d. 3 I enjoy my school and I have many friends there. The school is a short walk from my house. Is your school nearby, or is it far from your home?

c. 4 I hope you can write to me again soon and please answer my questions!

Best wishes.

Mariana

Pre-reading question: - How many lessons do you have every day?

Lesson 7

Complete the emails with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

SB page 11

Hi Alex!

Thanks for being my penfriend. I'm from England. I **get up** at about half past seven, and then my mum **makes** breakfast for the family.

I **walk** to school with my brother. Our school **finishes** at three o'clock. After school, we sometimes **do** sport or play music.

I **don't watch** TV when I get home. I always **do** my homework first.

Can you tell me about your typical daily routine in Germany?

Hi Dan!

Thanks for your email. In Germany, school **starts** very early in the morning. So, I **don't have** breakfast before school. There's a "breakfast break" after the first lesson. How many lessons **does your school have** every day?

Post-reading question: - Where is Dan from?

Pre-reading question: - Do you have a room of your own? Can you describe it?

Complete the text with words from the picture:

SB page 11

I love my bedroom! I have a big white **wardrobe** in the corner. Next to it, there is a **mirror**. I look at myself in it in the mornings. I also have a small **bookshelf** where I put my books.

Next to this, there is a big window. I have blue **curtains** on it. I close them at night. I also have a red **lamp** next to my **bed**. I use it to read before I go to sleep.

Also in my bedroom, there is a grey **armchair**. I sit and read my book **there** sometimes. There is also a **chest of drawers.** I put my T-shirts, socks and other clothes in it. Finally, there is a big **carpet** on the floor!

Post-reading questions:

1 Give a suitable title for the previous passage.

.....

2 What does the underlined word "**there**" refer to?

.....

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Please, turn the ..... off. I want to sleep. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) cupboard b) sofa c) lamp d) desk
2. ..... make sitting on the sofa comfortable.
   a) Curtains b) Mirrors c) Cupboards d) Cushions
3. It's exciting to receive emails from your ..... to learn about their life in a different place!
   a) websites b) corners c) penfriends d) breaks
4. A ..... is like a special home for plants and animals.
   a) nature reserve b) cupboard c) breakfast break d) lamp
5. I like looking ..... the car window while we drive through the country.
   a) up b) after c) for d) out of
6. There's a grey ..... in my bedroom. I sit on it to read books. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) armchair b) cupboard c) wardrobe d) mirror
7. When we go on walks, I bring my camera so I can ..... photos.
   a) take b) get c) keep d) practise
8. I didn't hear ..... my friend for a long time. I really miss him.
   a) of b) out c) from d) at
9. Mum puts my socks in the second drawer of the ..... of drawers.
   a) lamp b) corner c) lamp d) chest
10. The curtains ..... the painting and the bed. They are the same colour. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
    a) deal b) treat c) play d) match
11. In my room, I have a small ..... to wash my hands and face. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
    a) curtain b) carpet c) basin d) pool
12. The internet has lots of ..... about everything.
    a) practice b) sunlight c) information d) light
13. My grandparents live ..... because they're old and can't go up.
    a) above b) opposite c) upstairs d) downstairs
14. The chair is ..... the table.
    a) opposite b) next c) front d) on
15. We put up some new ..... on the window of the living room. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
    a) cushions b) carpets c) chairs d) curtains

Take a test

TEST YOURSELF



Unit 1 Lessons (5 & 6)

7.5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar is asking Ayman about his life. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

Omar : Do you live in a block of flats?
Ayman : (1)..... .
Omar : What do you do in your free time?
Ayman : (2)..... .
Omar : Reading. (3).....?
Ayman : Yes, I go to the library.
Omar : (4).....?
Ayman : I go to the library twice a week.
Omar : What's your favourite book?
Ayman : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can see yourself in the ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) mirror b) sofa c) bookshelf d) carpet
2. We put our clothes in the ..... . الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
   a) curtains b) wardrobe c) armchair d) bed
3. I put my books on the ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) bookshop b) bookstore c) bookshelf d) pocket
4. El Faiyoum is a large city, with beautiful nature reserves ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) under b) nearby c) next d) up
5. Hany is a clever student. He ..... studies hard. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
   a) never b) not c) sometimes d) always
6. Did Ali ..... to the shops yesterday? الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) go b) went c) used to go d) goes

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Gehan ..... (usually) goes to school on Friday. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
2. How often ..... (you/visit) your uncle? الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
3. My father ..... (don't) wear a hat when it's sunny outside.
4. ..... (Does) your father in Cairo yesterday? الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3
TACKLES	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language
MARK			

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 1

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

1. What's Samira talking about?
   a) Her family tree.
   b) Her holiday.
   c) Her daily routine.
   d) Her trip.
2. When does Samira get up?
   a) At 6:30 pm.
   b) At 6:03 pm.
   c) At 6:03 am.
   d) At 6:30 am.
3. What are her parents' jobs?
   a) Doctors.
   b) Teachers.
   c) Sellers.
   d) Engineers.
4. What does Samira like doing on the sofa?
   a) Reading.
   b) Texting friends.
   c) Doing homework.
   d) Watching TV.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Kamal is telling Ahmed about his bedroom.

القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

Ahmed : Do you live in a house?
Kamal : (1)..... . I live in a house with a large garden.
Ahmed : Fantastic! (2).....?
Kamal : We have got three rooms.
Ahmed : Have you got a bedroom of your own?
Kamal : (3)..... . I share a room with my sister.
Ahmed : (4).....?
Kamal : I like my bedroom because it has a big window and a wardrobe.
Ahmed : Are there any curtains in your room?
Kamal : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: التجربة ٢٠٢٤

I am Aya. My bedroom is wide and bright. I keep it clean and tidy because it is my favourite room in the house. Its walls are white and the floor is brown. On the floor, there is a big blue carpet. I have two sofas, a table and an armchair. I also have a small chest of drawers where I put my clothes. I enjoy reading so there is a bookshelf with many books on it. On the bookshelf, there is a vase with small plant and an old clock. There are two windows and both of them have got lovely curtains I made myself. I like to read and have fun in my bedroom. It's warm and comfortable.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

.....

3. Why do you think Aya likes to read and rest on her bedroom?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Aya puts her books on a ..... .
   a) bookshelf b) sofa c) table d) carpet
5. The word "....." in the passage is similar in meaning to "beautiful".
   a) tidy b) warm c) lovely d) comfortable
6. There is a big ..... carpet on the floor.
   a) yellow b) white c) black d) blue

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The tour guide gave us a wonderful ..... of the ancient castle we visited.
   a) topic b) description c) blog d) object
2. He went early to ..... the first bus to Cairo.
   a) make b) do c) miss d) take
3. He watches football matches on an internet ..... . الصوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) phone b) printer c) website d) charger
4. We have a ..... in our garden and we use it to water our plants. التجربة ٢٠٢٢
   a) tap b) tape c) tab d) tip

5. There's a brown ..... on the floor of the living room. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤

a) card b) curtain c) carpet d) drawer

6. I like to ..... English by reading books and listening to songs in English.

a) match b) practise c) belong d) hear

7. My mother keeps her clothes in a big ..... . السويس ٢٠٢٣

a) bed b) wardrobe c) armchair d) bookshelf

8. Students ..... in classes during the break. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) stay always b) never stay c) always stay d) stay never

9. Should I ..... up my room today?

a) tidying b) tidied c) tidies d) tidy

10. **A:** How ..... do they watch TV? **B:** Every evening.

a) much b) many c) often d) old

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. **A:** ..... (Do) you study Arabic tomorrow? **B:** No, I won't.
2. She ..... (goes/always) to work early.
3. I usually ..... (spending) time with my cousins on Saturdays.
4. Why ..... (he/shout) at you yesterday?

E Writing

6 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your pen friend Dan to tell him about your family house. Your name is Adam and your email address is adam@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is dan2020@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5	6
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Reading	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK						

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Aya is describing her room to Judy.

Judy : Hi, Aya. How are you today?

Aya : (1)..... .

a) I'm fine, thanks. b) I'm nine years old.

c) Nice to meet you. d) I'm moving house.

Judy : Do you have any sisters?

Aya : (2)..... . I share a room with her.

a) No, I don't. b) Yes, I have one. c) Yes, I have. d) No, I haven't.

Judy : (3).....?

a) What's her name? b) Who is it? c) What is it? d) How is it?

Aya : It's really attractive with a big wardrobe.

Judy : (4).....?

a) Is there a carpet in the room? b) Are there any carpets in the room?

c) Are there any curtains on the window? d) Are there any windows in the room?

Aya : Yes, there are curtains and the colour matches the carpet.

Judy : What is the best thing about your room?

Aya : (5)..... .

a) My room is attractive.

b) The best thing about my room is the matching colours.

c) I share it with my sister. d) Nothing.

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. I ..... (going) to an art class once a week.

a) went b) go c) goes d) is going

2. It ..... (usually/be) very hot in summer.

a) usually is b) are usually c) is usually d) usually are

3. She gets up early and ..... (having) breakfast.

a) have b) is having c) had d) has

4. **A:** ..... (Who) do you use your tablet? **B:** Always.

a) How long b) How often c) How old d) How much

5. ..... (Did) they travel to Hurghada next summer holiday?

a) Will b) Are c) Have d) Does

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a) (b) (c) (d)	2 (a) (b) (c) (d)	3 (a) (b) (c) (d)	4 (a) (b) (c) (d)	5 (a) (b) (c) (d)
Q 2	1 (a) (b) (c) (d)	2 (a) (b) (c) (d)	3 (a) (b) (c) (d)	4 (a) (b) (c) (d)	5 (a) (b) (c) (d)



Unit 2

HOW ARE YOU FEELING?

OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	A text about night workers; descriptions of weekend activities; an article about happiness for teenagers; an informal email
Writing	A text to describe a place or a photo; an email to a friend
Listening	People talking about learning new skills; descriptions of photos
Speaking	Describing weekend activities; describing photos; responding to news
Language	Adverbs of manner
Life Skills	Empathy
Values	Patience
Issues	Social participation

SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video

SB pages 12 - 15 | WB pages 79 & 80

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

artist (n)	فنان	repair (ed) (v)	يصلح
calligraphy (n)	فن الخط	sewing (n)	الخياطة/الحياكة
deaf (adj)	أصم	sign language (n)	لغة الإشارة
food stall (n)	كشك الطعام	skill (n)	مهارة
neighbour (n)	جار	tourist (n)	سائح
park (ed) (v)	يركن السيارة	ward (n)	جناح/قسم/عنبر
patients (n)	المرضى	wave (d) (v)	يلوح بيده

Jobs الوظائف

call-centre worker (n)	عامل مركز الاتصال	police officer (n)	ضابط شرطة
computer engineer (n)	مهندس كمبيوتر	shop worker (n)	عامل فى محل
nurse (n)	ممرضة	street-food seller (n)	بائع طعام بالشارع

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

cook (n)	طاهٍ/ طباخ	paint (ed) (v)	يدهن/يلون
dance (d) (v)	يرقص	present (n)	هدية
fantastic (adj)	رائع	sail (ed) (v)	يبحر
keyboard (n)	لوحة المفاتيح	seem (ed) (v)	يبدو

Check Point

Choose and complete: repair - computer engineer - shop worker - nurse

1. My aunt works as a ..... . She looks after sick people.
2. I asked the mechanic to ..... my car because it broke down.
3. I always help my brother repair his computer, so I'd like to be a ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

catch	> fish	يصطاد سمكًا	have/take	> a rest	يأخذ راحة
get	> ready	يستعد	make	> a calligraphy book	يعد كتاب فن الخط
give	> a surprise	يفاجئ		> sure	يتأكد

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

Prepositions — حروف الجر

at home	فى البيت	look after	يعتنى بـ
by the fountain	بجوار النافورة	look forward to + (v.ing/ noun)	يتطلع إلى
communicate with	يتواصل مع	on a boat	فى قارب
excited about	متحمس بخصوص	problem with	مشكلة فى
go on a trip	يذهب فى رحلة	tin of beans	علبة فول

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	P.P.	Present	Past simple	P.P.
catch يمسك/يلحق بـ/يصطاد	caught	caught	speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken
drive يقود/يسوق	drove	driven	swim يسبح/يعوم	swam	swum
hear يسمع	heard	heard	teach يُعلم/يُدرس	taught	taught
hurt يصيب/يؤذى/يؤلم	hurt	hurt	understand يفهم	understood	understood
sew يخيط	sewed	sewn	wear يرتدى	wore	worn

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
bored	شاعر بملل	excited	منفعل/متحمس
busy	مزدحم/مشغول	free	متفرغ
hungry	جوعان	full	ممتلئ/شبعان
lazy	كسول	active	نشيط
lovely	جميل/رائع	ugly	قبيح
safe	آمن	dangerous	خطير
stay	يبقى/يقيم/يظل	leave	يغادر
traditional	تقليدى	modern	حديث/عصرى

Check Point

Choose and complete: on - modern - caught - speak - for

1. When I went snorkelling with my family, I stayed ..... the boat because I was frightened.
2. Yesterday, we ..... fish at the lake and it was so much fun!
3. Suzan likes to wear traditional clothes. The opposite of "traditional" is "..... ".
4. I am bilingual. I can ..... two languages.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes



ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا
لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **look forward to + (v.ing/ n)** يتطلع إلى (يأتى بعدها الفعل مضافًا إليه (ing))

- I look forward to **going** home and **having** a rest.
- She looks forward to her **birthday party.**

2 **adjectives ending with (ing/ed)**

- نستخدم (ing) لوصف الاسم (الشىء/الشخص) الذى تسبب فى الشعور. (مؤثر).
- نستخدم (ed) لوصف الشعور (متأثر).

- The lion is standing in front of the goats. The lion is frightening. The goats are frightened.

3 **would prefer to + inf.** يفضل أن

- I'd prefer **to study** English in England.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The film was so ..... that I fell asleep before it finished.
a) bored **b)** boring **c)** excited **d)** exciting

2 I would prefer ..... ice cream for dessert instead of cake.
a) to have **b)** having **c)** to having **d)** have

3 I'm looking forward ..... Adel at the weekend.
a) to meet **b)** meeting **c)** meet **d)** to meeting

Vocabulary Builder



جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
cold بارد	cool بارد
lovely جميل/رائع	beautiful جميل

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
danger (n) خطر	-ous	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	dangerous (adj) خطير
tradition (n) تقليد/عادة	-al		traditional (adj) تقليدى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - What are your dream goals?

Lesson 1

3 am in Cairo

Read about some people in the photos. What are their jobs? *SB page 13*

A: I'm looking after patients[1] at a hospital. It's very busy. I'm looking after children in the children's ward[2]. I like my job, but I'm feeling tired tonight. I'm looking forward to[3] going home and having a rest.

Amal



B: We're driving around the city and making sure[4] that people are safe in the streets. We aren't very busy tonight. It's cold, so everyone is staying at home. Adel's feeling a bit bored and I'm feeling hungry. I'm looking forward to having breakfast!

Emad and Adel



C: I'm parking[5] my food stall[6] here because it's the best place in the city. Lots of people and tourists come this way. People start to buy their breakfast at 6 am. I'm getting everything ready. I'm feeling cold and I'm looking forward to drinking some hot coffee!

Kamal



(1) المرضى (2) جناح الأطفال
(3) يتطلع إلى (4) يتأكد
(5) يركن (6) كشك الطعام

Post-reading questions:

1. Do you think Amal is working hard? Why/ Why not?

.....

2. Why do you think Kamal is looking forward to some hot coffee?

.....

3. Why aren't Emad and Adel busy tonight?

.....

Pre-listening question:

Listening Text

Lesson 2

- What skills would you like to learn during the summer holiday?

Listen to three people talking about learning new skills and put the photos in the correct order. *SB page 15*

Tamer I'm Tamer. At the moment I'm learning a new skill[1]. I'm learning sign language[2] so I can communicate[3] better with my cousin, Sami. Sami is deaf[4] – he can't hear. He's learning sign language at school, too. I'm having sign language lessons on Saturday morning so I can give Sami a surprise[5]!



Eman I'm Eman. At the weekend, I'm learning to do lots of new things. Our neighbour, Mr. Osman, is in hospital at the moment. With some other neighbours in our building, we're repairing his flat. He lives in a lovely flat, but he can't look after it at the moment. My sisters and I are painting the kitchen and I am also sewing some new curtains.



Manal I'm Manal. Mona and I are starting a calligraphy[6] and art club at school. We're very excited about it. My uncle is an artist[7] and he's coming to the school to teach us. We're studying traditional[8] Arabic calligraphy and we're enjoying it very much. I'm making a calligraphy book for my uncle as a present.



(1) مهارة (2) لغة الإشارة (3) يتواصل (4) أصم
(5) مفاجأة (6) فن الخط (7) فنان (8) تقليدى

Post-listening questions:

1. What are Eman's sisters doing at present?

.....

2. Why is Manal making a calligraphy book?

.....

3. Why do you think Tamer is interested in learning sign language?

.....

Read about what Ziad, Injy and Aya do at the weekend. Choose two sentences from a-d to complete each text. *SB page 14*



1. Hi, I'm Ziad. I live with my mum and dad in a small flat in Minya. At the weekend, I'm usually quite lazy.

b d



2. Hello, I'm Injy and this is my sister Aya. We live near the sea.

a c

(a) My father and my uncle have an old boat which they are repairing. I am learning to sail but Aya doesn't like the water very much!

(b) On Friday evening, my parents and I usually have a big dinner with my grandparents and we sometimes stay at their house. It's bigger than our flat.

(c) At the weekend, we do our homework and on Saturday we sometimes spend time with our father and uncle on their boat.

(d) On Saturday morning, I often stay in bed and then I have a late breakfast with grandmother - she's a fantastic cook! In the afternoon, I do my homework.

Comprehension Skills

- Understanding reference: فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير:

My father and my uncle have an old boat which they are repairing.

What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

How to answer this question: كيفية الإجابة عن هذا السؤال:

أولًا: عليك أن تعرف ماذا تشير الضمائر إلى:

Pronouns are words that refer to the closest specific noun right before them.

الضمائر عادة تشير لأقرب اسم يسبقها

ثانيًا: عليك قراءة الجملة التى تسبق الضمير جيدًا وتحديد الاسم التى تشير إليه، وباتباع الخطوات نستنتج أن they فى الجملة السابقة تشير إلى: **father and uncle**.

Listen to four people doing the jobs in Exercise 1. Write their jobs. *WB page 79*

Man 1 I'm sorry, sir, but you can't leave your car here.

Woman 1 There seems to be a problem with the keyboard, but it won't take me long.

Woman 2 Good morning, this is Dina speaking, how can I help you?

Man 2 Are you looking for tins of beans? You can find them on the top shelf, over there.

Answers:

(1) **A police officer**

(2) **A computer engineer**

(3) **A call-centre worker**

(4) **A shop worker**

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother is good at ..... . She always makes her clothes by herself.
   a) waving **b)** dancing **c)** sewing **d)** drawing
2. The little girl ..... goodbye to her mother as she left the house.
   a) moved **b)** waved **c)** painted **d)** gave
3. ..... are people who travel to new places to have fun.
   a) Tourists **b)** Shop workers **c)** Presents **d)** Patients
4. Dad is going to ..... the car in front of the house.
   a) park **b)** connect **c)** wave **d)** appear
5. We had a ..... day at the beach. It was really fun.
   a) dangerous **b)** lazy **c)** fantastic **d)** deaf
6. I'm so excited ..... going to the zoo tomorrow and seeing all the different animals.
   a) about **b)** with **c)** for **d)** of
7. It's a ..... day; let's go out and play in the park!
   a) bad **b)** busy **c)** dangerous **d)** lovely
8. It's the doctor's job to treat ..... .
   a) tourists **b)** patients **c)** cooks **d)** artists
9. Eating a snack helps me feel ..... when I'm hungry.
   a) full **b)** busy **c)** free **d)** lazy
10. I'm sure that my friend will ..... me a surprise next week for my birthday.
    a) paint **b)** get **c)** give **d)** catch
11. We have a problem ..... the television. It won't start.
    a) with **b)** at **c)** in **d)** on
12. Press the "Enter" key on the ..... to start a new line.
    a) present **b)** ward **c)** skill **d)** keyboard
13. The ..... in this restaurant makes delicious food for everyone to enjoy.
    a) nurse **b)** waiter **c)** patient **d)** cook
14. Yesterday, we ..... on a big boat and saw dolphins jumping in the waves.
    a) waved **b)** sailed **c)** parked **d)** sewed
15. The story ..... so exciting. I can't wait to hear what happens next.
    a) hurts **b)** catches **c)** seems **d)** sails

Time to Practise



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... prepares food for people to eat in the streets. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) shop worker **b)** police officer **c)** nurse **d)** street-food seller
2. Police officers should ..... sure that people are safe. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) take **b)** give **c)** make **d)** put
3. She is learning ..... . She wants to improve her handwriting. البحيرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) technology **b)** biology **c)** geography **d)** calligraphy
4. Deaf people can ..... by using sign language. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤
   a) communicate **b)** take **c)** carry **d)** sings
5. I'm ..... forward to meeting my uncle. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) taking **b)** looking **c)** making **d)** doing
6. I usually ..... my baby sister when my parents are away. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) look after **b)** wash up **c)** tidy up **d)** look up
7. Ramy is ....., so he can't hear you. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
   a) blind **b)** short **c)** slow **d)** deaf
8. A/An ..... is a big room with many beds where people stay in hospitals. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) award **b)** reward **c)** ward **d)** attic
9. We need a computer engineer to ..... our computer. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) repair **b)** prepare **c)** care **d)** compare
10. Street-food sellers put their food ..... in the best places in the city. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
    a) still **b)** stall **c)** stale **d)** sale
11. My little brother is very ..... . He always wants to stay at home and watch TV! القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) excited **b)** careful **c)** lazy **d)** hungry
12. My cousin draws very well. He wants to be a/an ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
    a) engineer **b)** doctor **c)** artist **d)** pilot
13. A/An ..... worker is the person who answers phone calls. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) art club **b)** street food **c)** sign language **d)** call-centre
14. Calligraphy needs a great ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
    a) skull **b)** score **c)** skill **d)** speed
15. Our next door ..... is very kind. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
    a) neighbour **b)** cafe **c)** ring **d)** community



لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

1 The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

e.g. I **am doing** my homework now. (This means I'm in the middle of doing it.)

هذا يعنى أننى أقوم بأداء الواجب الآن أى بدأت جزء وما زلت أعمل لأنهيه، ومن هنا ننتقل لاستخدام المضارع المستمر.

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present continuous to talk about things that are happening now. - يعبر عن شىء يحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).

e.g. Nelly is watching an English movie at the moment.

Form التكوين

I	am	+ (not) + inf. مصدر الفعل + ing
He, She, It, اسم مفرد	is	
We, They, You, اسم جمع	are	

e.g.
- I am playing chess.
- Hany is playing the guitar.
- Nada and Fatima are playing basketball.
- I am not playing cards.
- He isn't playing the piano.
- They are not playing handball.

لاحظ الاختصارات التالية:

am ('m) - is ('s) - are ('re) - is not (isn't) - are not (aren't)

Question السؤال

Yes/No questions السؤال بمعنى هل

Am	I	inf. مصدر الفعل + ing ...?
Is	he, she, it, اسم مفرد	
Are	we, they, you, اسم جمع	

e.g. Is the cat playing in the garden?
- Yes, it is. / - No, it isn't.

e.g. Are you playing games online?
- Yes, I am. / - No, I am not.
- Yes, we are. / No, we aren't.

- إذا كان المخاطب مفردًا يتم تحويل Are you إلى I am. - إذا كان المخاطب جمع يتم تحويل Are you إلى We are.

Wh- questions السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. word أداة الاستفهام

am	I	inf. مصدر الفعل + ing ...?
is	he, she, it, اسم مفرد	
are	we, they, you, اسم جمع	

e.g. What is Adel doing?
- He is playing cards.

e.g. What are you doing?
- I am/ We are playing handball.

لاحظ عند إضافة الـ (ing) للفعل:

- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) نحذف الـ (e): e.g. - (take - taking) - (come - coming)
- بعض الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك واحد غالبًا ما نضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة الـ (ing):
  e.g. - (put - putting) - (cut - cutting) - (swim - swimming)
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ie) نحذف الـ (ie) ثم نضع (ying). e.g. - (lie - lying) - (die - dying)

Key words الكلمات الدالة

احترس Watch out! - أنصت Listen! - انظر Look! - فى هذه اللحظة at the moment
فى الوقت الحاضر at present - الآن now

e.g. - My mother is cooking lunch **now**.
- **Listen!** The students are making noise.

Got it ?

تُمكِّنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 He ..... (not/ write) a letter at the moment.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (isn't writing) لوجود at the moment الدالة على المضارع المستمر والجملة منفية.

2 Are Menna and Judy ..... (watch) TV now?
- الإجابة الصحيحة (watching) لوجود now الدالة على زمن المضارع المستمر فنضيف للفعل (ing).

2 The difference between Present Simple and Present Continuous
الفرق بين المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر

- لاحظ الفرق فى الاستخدام بين المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر:

The Present Simple Tense	The Present Continuous Tense
لمراجعة زمن المضارع البسيط ارجع للشرح ص 14	
It's used to express:	**It's used to express:**
a) Habits: العادات	**a) Things that are happening now:** أشياء تحدث وقت الكلام
e.g. I always drink milk for breakfast.	e.g. Listen! Amir is shouting.
b) Routines and repeated actions: الروتين والأفعال المتكررة	**b) Unfinished actions in progress around now:** أفعال تحدث ولكن لم تنته إلى الآن
e.g. We go to school every day.	e.g. Hany is studying medicine.
c) Things that are always true: الحقائق	**c) Temporary situations or actions:** أفعال أو مواقف مؤقتة
e.g. The sun rises from the east.	e.g. They are painting the school this week.

Got it ?

تُمكِّنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Sally often ..... (drive) carefully.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (drives) الدالة على العادة فى المضارع البسيط لوجود often.

2 My kids ..... (sleep) at present.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (are sleeping) لوجود at present الدالة على المضارع المستمر والفاعل اسم جمع My kids.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Listen! The children ..... a lot of noise. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

   a) makes **b)** are making **c)** make **d)** made

2. Why is Omar ..... his food stall at this place? الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

   a) parking **b)** parks **c)** parked **d)** park

3. My mother ..... at the moment. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤

   a) is shopping **b)** shops **c)** shop **d)** shopping

4. Basel usually repairs computers, but today he ..... his grandparents. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

   a) visits **b)** are visiting **c)** visit **d)** is visiting

5. My neighbour ..... in a lovely flat, but now he is staying in his son's house.

   a) living **b)** live **c)** lives **d)** is living

6. Huda and Fareeda ..... hard because they have an English test next week. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

   a) studied **b)** study **c)** studying **d)** are studying

7. I am busy at the moment. I ..... an email. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

   a) write **b)** writing **c)** am writing **d)** wrote

8. Who ..... she waiting for at the moment?

   a) are **b)** is **c)** do **d)** does

9. The baby is quiet today. He ..... a lot.

   a) is crying **b)** cries **c)** isn't crying **d)** doesn't cry

10. We are students, but we ..... this week to help clean our neighbourhood.

    a) works **b)** work **c)** is working **d)** are working

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Drive carefully here because they ..... (repair) the road. القاهرة ٢٠٢٠
2. Listen! The rain ..... (fall) on the roof.
3. Mona ..... (learn) a new skill at the moment. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
4. Who ..... (you/are) texting at present?
5. She ..... (doesn't) playing tennis now. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
6. ..... (Do) the girls dancing to their favourite song?

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your dream job: كيفية الكتابة عن وظيفة أحلامك:

- There are many good jobs.
- I'm looking forward to being (الوظيفة) one day.
- This job is very important.
- I like it because (السبب).
- I like helping people.
- It's very interesting.

Writing tips

The body of the paragraph is where you explain and mention more examples. Elaborate on ideas, each idea is explained in one sentence.
هيكل الفقرة عبارة عن شـرح وذكـر الكثير من الأمثلة. وضح أفـكارك، كل فكرة فى جملة.

Example

A job I like

There are many interesting jobs. I think the doctor's job is the most important one. A doctor helps people get better after being sick. That's why I look forward to becoming a doctor one day. I like helping the sick and looking after them. I want to help the poor to get good medical care رعاية طبية without paying any money. That will make me happy. I also want to make people aware واعٍ of the importance of staying healthy. However, being a doctor isn't easy as it needs a lot of hard work. I think we should all study well to achieve our dreams.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your dream job"

My name's .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Take a Test

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 2 Lessons (1 & 2)

19.5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤

1. The speaker is learning to do lots of new things at the ..... .
   a) holiday **b)** night **c)** weekend **d)** day
2. Karima can communicate in ..... language.
   a) English **b)** signal **c)** Arabic **d)** sign
3. The speaker's sister is ..... new curtains.
   a) sewing **b)** playing **c)** learning **d)** teaching
4. The speaker is painting the ..... now.
   a) kitchen **b)** bedroom **c)** wall **d)** garden

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Samar wants to know what Ola is doing at the moment. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

Samar : Hi, Ola. What are you doing?
Ola : Hi, Samar. (1)..... .
Samar : A letter! (2).....?
Ola : To my penfriend, Sara.
Samar : Where does she live?
Ola : (3)..... .
Samar : France! (4).....?
Ola : She is 13 years old.
Samar : Do you have any other penfriends?
Ola : (5)..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They want to ..... their house white with blue doors.
   a) draw **b)** paint **c)** write **d)** catch
2. I had lots of ..... on my birthday from my friends.
   a) artists **b)** signs **c)** presents **d)** wards
3. My mum asked me to bring her two ..... of beans.
   a) tins **b)** pots **c)** pans **d)** stalls
4. We didn't tell our grandmother that we are going to visit her to ..... her a surprise.
   a) catch **b)** make **c)** have **d)** give
5. A/An ..... helps to keep people safe in the street. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
   a) engineer **b)** police officer **c)** shop worker **d)** nurse

6. Deaf people use ..... language to communicate with each other. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
a) English b) sign c) signal d) Latin
7. He works in a clothes shop. He is a shop ..... .
a) worker b) artist c) officer d) engineer
8. Look at that dog. It ..... water from the lake.
a) drinks b) drink c) drank d) is drinking
9. How ..... your parents feeling now?
a) have b) is c) are d) do
10. What ..... you usually eat for breakfast?
a) do b) are c) does d) is

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. On Saturday morning, I often ..... (staying) in bed and have a late breakfast.
2. The students ..... (listen) to the teacher now. They are making a noise.
3. Where are your friends ..... (go)?
4. Look! A car ..... (come) very fast. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Different jobs"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You look ....., Adel; you have worked for a long time.
a) tire b) tires c) tiring d) tired
2. Police officers are driving around the city to ..... sure that people are safe.
a) do b) have c) watch d) be

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. It's cold, so everyone ..... (stay) at home.
2. I'm looking forward to going home and ..... (have) a rest.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK					

STUDY

Lessons 3 & 4

Watch a video

SB pages 16 - 18 | WB pages 81 & 82

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

airport (n)	مطار	normal (adj)	عادى
alone (adj/adv)	بمفرده	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخى
crowds (n)	الحشد/الجمهور	sharp (adj)	حاد
desert (n)	صحراء	skin (n)	جلد
grateful (adj)	ممتن/شاكر	striped (adj)	مقلم/مخطط
guest (n)	ضيف	suitcase (n)	حقيبة سفر
happiness (n)	السعادة	teenager (n)	مراهق
mosque (n)	مسجد	treat (ed) (v)	يعامل/يعالج
nature (n)	الطبيعة	wedding (n)	حفل زفاف

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

aged (adj)	بالغ من العمر	magazine (n)	مجلة
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	mountain (n)	جبل
exciting (adj)	مثير	port (n)	ميناء
funny (adj)	مضحك	probably (adv)	من المحتمل
hill (n)	تل/هضبة	rock (n)	صخرة
human (n)	إنسان	suit (n)	بدلة
husband (n)	زوج	weeding (n)	إزالة الأعشاب الضارة
laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك	young people	الشباب

Check Point

Choose and complete: husband - crowds - normal - grateful

1. A lot of ..... were standing around the players after the match.
2. Amir is my ..... . We got married two years ago.
3. I am ..... to all the teachers for their help.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

catch	a plane	يلحق بالطائرة	get	a rest	يحصل على راحة
do	well	يؤدى جيدًا		married	يتزوج
	wrong	يخطئ		texts	يتلقى رسائل نصية
feel	better	يشعر بتحسن		worried	يقلق
make	friends	يكوّن صداقات	take	a selfie/ photo	يلتقط صورة شخصية

Prepositions — حروف الجر

for the first time	لأول مرة	happy/pleased about	سعيد/مسرور بخصوص
get on a plane	يركب طائرة	on a trip to	فى رحلة إلى
go into	يدخل	smile at	يبتسم لـ

Prepositions of place — حروف جر المكان

behind	خلف	in the middle	فى الوسط
in front of	أمام	on the left	على اليسار
in the background	فى الخلفية	on the right	على اليمين
in the foreground	فى المقدمة/الطليعة	towards the right/left	نحو اليمين/اليسار

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
choose	يختار	chose	chosen	show	يعرض/يبين/يوضح	showed	shown
fly	يطير	flew	flown	win	يفوز	won	won
hang	يعلق	hung	hung				

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
dark	غامق	light	فاتح	normal	عادى	abnormal	غير عادى
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود	win	يفوز	lose	يخسر

Check Point

Choose and complete: win - flew - feel - on - in

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

1 Tomorrow, we are going to get ..... a plane and visit a new country.

2 The opposite of "lose" is "..... ".

3 Drinking warm soup can make you ..... better when you have a cold.

4 I ..... to London two weeks ago. I did a lot of shopping there.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

make + مفعول + adj. صفة / inf. مصدر الفعل يجعل

- The trip made the children **happy**.
- This medicine will make you **feel** better.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions التعريفات

alone	بمفرده	not with other people
desert	الصحراء	an area(1) of very dry land
grateful	ممتن/شاكر	feeling happy about the good things in your life
nature	الطبيعة	everything(2) in the world that is not made by humans(3)
normal	طبيعى	usual, not different
teenager	مراهق	a boy or girl aged 13 - 19

(1) مساحة

(2) كل شىء

(3) البشر

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
relax	يسترخى	calm	يهدأ
win	يفوز	beat	يهزم

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
friend (n)	صديق	-ly		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		friendly (adj)	ودود
happy (adj)	سعيد	-ness		تحويل الصفة إلى اسم		happiness (n)	السعادة

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 3

Pre-listening question:

- What do you do to keep good memories alive?

Listen to the descriptions and put the photos in the correct order. *SB page 16*

Girl 1 This is a photo of my sister's wedding (1). It's at the end of the day and the guests (2) are slowly leaving. Most of the family are still there, though, and still enjoying the party. That's my sister smiling happily at the camera and the man next to her is Youssef, her husband.



Boy 1 That's my class on our school trip to the mountains. We're sitting carefully on the rocks (3) because they are very sharp (4)! We got up at 5:00 o'clock in the morning and walked for hours and hours. You can't see me in this picture. I'm sitting under a tree and hungrily eating my lunch.



Boy 2 This is me at the airport (5). I'm waiting excitedly to get on a plane for the first time! My family were with me but you can't see them because my sister is taking the photo while my parents are quickly buying some sandwiches for us to eat on the plane.



Girl 2 This is my aunt's new baby. Isn't she sweet? She is laughing loudly in this picture because she can see my aunt's cat. She always laughs when she sees this cat – she thinks it's very funny (6).



(1) حفل زفاف (2) ضيوف (3) صخور
(4) حاد (5) مطار (6) مضحك

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

picture /pɪktʃəʳ/ laugh /lɑːf/

Post-listening questions:

1. Why are the students sitting carefully on the rocks?
2. The baby girl is laughing loudly. Explain the reason.

Listen and read to complete the description of the photo with the expressions in the box.



This is a photo of my family in Al-Azhar Park in Cairo. My mother and my sisters are sitting under a tree **in the foreground** of the photo. **In the background**, you can see the Umm Sultan Shaban Mosque. The tree is **towards the right** of the photo and my eldest sister Reem is sitting in front of it. Our mother is behind her – we can't see her face. My middle sister Talia is **in the middle of** the picture. She is taking a selfie as usual! Our aunt is behind them, down the hill and **on the left.** I think she is getting ready to take a photo, too.

Happiness for teenagers

It's normal [1] to get worried or to feel sad sometimes – but what helps teenagers [2] to feel happy? We found five things that can help.

1. Get lots of rest

Teenagers often don't sleep enough, but this is a time in your life when you need a lot of sleep. Young people [3] who sleep eight to ten hours a night are much happier!

2. Be friendly

It's good to be alone [4] sometimes, but people need people. Spend time with your family and also try to make new friends because this makes teenagers happy.

3. Go outside

People need nature [5] to be happy. Go to the desert or the river or, if you live in the city, go to a park.

4. Help someone

When you do something kind for someone else, this makes you feel happy, too. Try it! You feel really good.

5. Be grateful

One of the best ways to be happy is to remember the good things in your life and feel pleased [6] about them.

(1) طبيعى
(2) المراهقون
(3) الشباب
(4) وحيدًا/بمفرده
(5) الطبيعة
(6) مسرور



Pre-reading question: - Who do you go to when you have troubles?

Read the email to a magazine and its reply, and write the missing sentences a-c in the right places. *WB page 82*

a) Your friends probably feel worried, just like you.

b) Please can you help me?

c) What am I doing wrong?



New Message

Dear Help! Magazine,

I am a **normal** teenager but I often feel worried about things. Every day, I stay at home and do my homework. Then, I get texts from my friends and they say they are all doing exciting things! [1] [c]

I **do well** at school and I enjoy my weekends with my family. We often go to the park or the beach, but I sometimes think that my friends are having a better time than me. [2] [b]

Yours, Osama

Send

New Message

Dear Osama,

Thank you for writing to us and yes, we will try to help you. It is normal to think that other people are doing more exciting things than you, but remember: you are wrong! [3] [a]

When you go to the park or the beach, do you send photos to your friends? They probably think YOU are having a better time than they are! Remember that we all work and relax at different times.

Be grateful for the good things in your life and continue to work hard!

Yours truly, Help! Magazine

Send

Comprehension Skills

- Understanding reference: فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير:

Read the first email carefully, then try to find what the pronoun "We" in the sentence "We often go to the park or the beach." refers to.

اقرأ الإيميل الأول جيدًا ثم حاول أن تعرف ما يشير إليه الضمير We فى الجملة.

تذكر: نذكر اسم الكاتب فى نهاية الإيميل ودائمًا ما تشير We لاسم الكاتب وأشخاص آخرين معه فقم بقراءة الجملة التى تسبق الضمير جيدًا.

Answer: The underlined pronoun "We" refers to Osama and his family.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After a long day at school, I like to ..... by watching my favourite show.
   a) feel **b)** catch **c)** relax **d)** mix
2. Anas told me a very ..... joke. I laughed a lot.
   a) scary **b)** funny **c)** friendly **d)** excited
3. Basel ..... something wrong by taking his father's phone without asking.
   a) caught **b)** got **c)** did **d)** felt
4. My aunt has two sons, ... eleven and thirteen.
   a) called **b)** named **c)** old **d)** aged
5. Sarah went ..... the shop to buy some sweets.
   a) of **b)** for **c)** into **d)** out
6. Tomorrow, we are going to ..... a plane to visit Paris.
   a) catch **b)** make **c)** do **d)** feel
7. Be careful with that knife; it's very ..... .
   a) sweet **b)** loud **c)** normal **d)** sharp
8. My teacher smiled ..... me when I answered the question correctly.
   a) for **b)** at **c)** in **d)** on
9. Doing things that you love can give you lots of ..... .
   a) worry **b)** sadness **c)** happiness **d)** nature
10. The opposite of "dark" is "..... ".
    a) abnormal **b)** friendly **c)** light **d)** grateful
11. Basmala ..... her younger brother nicely and shared her toys with him.
    a) treated **b)** relaxed **c)** continued **d)** laughed
12. The students were pleased ..... their exam results.
    a) on **b)** for **c)** about **d)** of
13. I have to ..... reading the story because the teacher will ask us about it tomorrow.
    a) treat **b)** wait **c)** stop **d)** continue
14. We should keep our ..... safe from the sun when it's very hot.
    a) skill **b)** skin **c)** skull **d)** scale
15. I like ..... . I like watching trees and birds.
    a) desert **b)** rock **c)** mountain **d)** nature

Time to Practise



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you invite a person to your house, they are your ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٤

a) grass b) guess c) guests d) glasses

2. I'd like to invite you to my brother's ..... . He'll get married. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

a) wearing b) sleeping c) wedding d) weeding

3. He went to the ..... to catch the plane. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

a) port b) station c) airport d) metro

4. A ..... is an area of very dry land. السويس ٢٠٢٣

a) river b) sea c) desert d) dessert

5. The skin of a zebra is ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

a) striped b) strapped c) sharp d) curly

6. It's normal to get ..... when your father is late. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) bored b) worried c) happy d) lazy

7. To be ..... is to be happy about the good things in your life. المنيا ٢٠٢٤

a) crazy b) worried c) grateful d) lazy

8. ..... are boys or girls from thirteen to nineteen. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤

a) Volunteers b) Teenagers c) Adults d) Babies

9. When the tourists travel outside their countries, they carry their ..... on their back. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) handbags b) school bags c) suitcases d) pencil cases

10. It's ..... to feel scared if you see a snake. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤

a) normal b) funny c) careful d) helpful

11. ..... means not with other people. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) Together b) Old c) Ancient d) Alone

12. ..... is everything in the world that is not made by humans. WB

a) Technology b) Wedding c) Manual d) Nature

13. People like to wear ..... clothes in summer.

a) hot b) dry c) heavy d) light



لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

Adverbs of Manner — الظروف

e.g. My uncle always drives **slowly**.

Usage — الاستخدام

We use the adverbs of manner to describe how we do the action of a verb.
The adverbs of manners answer the questions: • How? • In what way?

يستخدم الظرف لوصف الفعل.
نستخدم (الظرف/الحال) للإجابة عن الأسئلة: - كيف؟ - وبأى طريقة؟

e.g. - **A:** How does Mr. Adel speak?
- **B:** He speaks **quietly**.

كيف يتحدث مستر عادل؟
يتحدث بصوت هادئ (وصف للفعل يتحدث).

e.g. - **A:** In what way do teachers treat their students?
- **B:** They treat them **kindly**.

بأى طريقة يعامل المدرسون الطلبة؟
يعاملونهم بطريقة لطيفة (وصف للفعل يعامل).

Form — التكوين

- تحول الصفة إلى ظرف غالبًا بإضافة (ly) فى نهاية الصفة.

Adjective		Adverb		Adjective		Adverb	
kind	عطوف	kindly	بعطف	bad	سيئ	badly	بشكل سيئ
quick	سريع	quickly	بسرعة	strong	قوى	strongly	بقوة

- بعض الصفات المنتهية بـ (y + حرف ساكن consonant) نحذف y ونضيف (-ily).

e.g. - happy → happily - lucky → luckily

لاحظ هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (أى لا تتبع القاعدة) لا نضيف إليها (-ly) فيجب حفظها جيدًا.

Study these irregular adjectives: ادرس هذه الصفات غير المنتظمة:

good	جيد	well	بشكل جيد	hard	صعب	hard	بجد
early	مبكر	early	مبكرًا	fast	سريع	fast	بسرعة
late	متأخر	late	متأخرًا				

- يأتى الظرف قبل الفعل أو بعده:

e.g. • I'm sitting under a tree and hungrily **eating** my lunch.
• She's **smiling** happily at the camera.

• هل هناك فرق بين الصفة والظرف؟ - نعم يوجد فرق فى الاستخدام، ادرس المثال القادم للتعرف عليه.

e.g. • Mr. **Waleed** is kind. He **treats** the children kindly.
الصفة (kind) تصف الاسم (**Mr. Waleed**) بينما الظرف (kindly) يصف الفعل (**treats**).
من المثال نستنتج أن الصفة تستخدم لوصف الاسم، بينما الظرف يستخدم لوصف الفعل.

Got it ? تُمكِّنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 My sister plays the piano ..... (loud).
- الإجابة الصحيحة (loudly) لأنها ظرف يصف الفعل plays.

2 She did ..... (good) in the exams.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (well) لأنها ظرف يصف الفعل did والصفة (good) غير منتظمة.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The baby slept ..... last night.
   a) quieter **b)** as quiet **c)** quietly **d)** quiet
2. The children were ..... when they played in the park.
   a) happiest **b)** happy **c)** as happy **d)** happily
3. The cat is sitting in the sun ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) lazy **b)** lazier **c)** laziest **d)** lazily
4. I always study ..... for my exams. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
   a) bad **b)** hardly **c)** hard **d)** good
5. There are sharp rocks. You have to be ..... . قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) carefully **b)** careful **c)** carelessly **d)** quickly
6. She closed the door ..... behind her.
   a) less angry **b)** much angry **c)** angrily **d)** angry
7. Sherine plays basketball ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) good **b)** bad **c)** well **d)** will
8. The children are singing ..... in the playground. WB
   a) loudest **b)** louder **c)** loudly **d)** loud
9. Rehab played the piano ..... in the party last week. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
   a) beautiful **b)** beautifully **c)** bad **d)** slow
10. I'm sitting under a tree and ..... eating my lunch. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
    a) hungry **b)** hungrily **c)** sad **d)** quick

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Drive ..... (slow) when it is rainy. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
2. The dog ..... (bad) hurt itself while running.
3. That bird is flying very ..... (faster). WB
4. I'm waiting ..... (excited) to get on a plane for the first time. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
5. Don't run ..... (quick) in the street. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
6. She can answer all the questions ..... (easy). القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to ask someone for help: كيفية طلب المساعدة من شخص ما:

From : ahmed@yahoo.com
To : tamer@yahoo.com
Subject : Asking for help

Dear Tamer,

Greetings! How are you and your family? I hope you all are in good health. I'm very happy to write this email to you. I am a normal teenager, but I often feel worried. I do my homework every day. I have lots of friends. I get texts from my friends. I do well at school. I enjoy my weekends with my family, but I think that my friends are having a better time than me. Please help me. I look forward to hearing from you. Write soon.

Best wishes.
Yours,
Ahmed

Writing tips

Start your email with greetings such as: ابدأ رسالتك الإلكترونية بإلقاء التحية:
Hello, Dear...., Hope you are well, ...
And end it with: وقم بإنهائها مستخدمًا:
Regards,
Hope to see you soon,
Yours, ...

Check Point

Write an email to your friend Salma. Tell her about your problems at school and ask her for help. Your name is Aya.

To : .....
From : .....
Subject : .....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

It's normal to get worried or to feel sad sometimes, but what helps teenagers to feel happy? We found five things that can help. Teenagers don't often get enough sleep, but this is a time in your life when you need a lot of sleep.

Young people who sleep from eight to ten hours a night are much happier. It's good to be alone sometimes, but people need each other, spend time with your family and also try to make new friends because this makes teenagers happy.

People need nature to be happy. Go to the desert, the river or go to a park if you live in the city. When you do something kind for someone else, this makes you feel happy, too. Try it! You will feel really good.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. .....
2. How many hours should young people sleep a night? .....
3. What do you think makes teenagers happy? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers ..... .
   a) to be kind **b)** to be false **c)** to be unkind **d)** to be angry
5. Why do people need nature?
   a) To be sad. **b)** To be happy. **c)** To be unhappy. **d)** To be important.
6. The underlined word "sad" means ..... .
   a) happy **b)** pleased **c)** unhappy **d)** brave

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I always see ships with lots of fish at the ..... .
   a) suit **b)** skin **c)** rock **d)** port
2. I don't go to football games because I don't like big ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) sellers **b)** crowds **c)** messengers **d)** workers
3. I ..... a funny text from my friend yesterday.
   a) sent **b)** got **c)** wrote **d)** made
4. It's impolite to ..... when someone is speaking seriously.
   a) treat **b)** laugh **c)** hang **d)** win
5. Most people like to ..... some of their pictures on the wall.
   a) feel **b)** catch **c)** treat **d)** hang

6. The man at the wedding wore a fantastic ..... .
   a) rock b) suit c) desert d) magazine
7. The young like ..... a selfie. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
   a) taking b) talking c) making d) doing
8. The teacher treats all his children ..... . كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
   a) kinder b) kindest c) kindly d) kind
9. We're sitting ..... on the rocks because they are sharp. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
   a) carefully b) care c) caring d) careful
10. I always get up ..... . I get up at 6:30.
   a) good b) early c) bad d) badly

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Shahenda usually arrives ..... (lately). She never comes on time.
2. The nurse picked up the baby ..... (gentle).
3. It rained ..... (heavy) all through the night.
4. Ahmed went into the new school ..... (sad), because he did not know any children there. WB

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Teenagers" الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. The students were not happy ..... find so much rubbish.
   a) about b) to c) with d) for
2. My ..... brother is very ill. We're very sad.
   a) centre b) middle c) background d) foreground

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I feel ..... (real) good.
2. He felt ..... (happily) when he got high marks.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4
TACKLES	Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK				

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

Watch a video

SB pages 19 - 20 | WB pages 83 & 84

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

congratulations (n)	تهانينا	pity (n)	شفقة/حزن
get better	يتحسن	prepare (d) (v)	يعد/يجهز
greetings (n)	تحيات	well done	أحسنت
pass (ed) (v)	ينجح فى	worry (y ied) (v)	يقلق

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

amazing (adj)	مذهل	football practice (n)	تدريب كرة القدم
coach (n)	مدرب	imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل
guess (ed) (v)	يخمن	miss (ed) (v)	يفتقد

Check Point

Choose and complete: miss - pity - move - worries

1. We felt ..... for the child who lost his family in the accident.
2. I ..... my friend who travelled abroad.
3. My mum always ..... about me when I go out alone.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do > hours of homework	يقوم بساعات من الواجبات المنزلية	pass > an exam	يجتاز امتحانًا
go > swimming/sailing	يذهب للسباحة/للإبحار		

Prepositions — حروف الجر

congratulations on	مبروك على	speak to	يتحدث إلى
respond to	يرد على	with time	بمرور الوقت
sorry to + inf.	آسف لـ		

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
difficult/ hard	صعب	easy	سهل
pass	ينجح	fail	يفشل

Check Point

Choose and complete: going - fail - to - at

1. Yesterday, I spoke ..... my friend on the phone and we talked about our last trip.
2. Mazen is happy because he passed his driving test. He didn't ..... .
3. Today, we are ..... sailing after school.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر والكلمات وعكسها.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
difficult	صعب	hard	صعب
pass	ينجح	succeed in	ينجح

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
amaze (v)	يذهل	-ing		تحويل الفعل إلى صفة		amazing (adj)	مذهل
congratulate (v)	يهنئ	-ion		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		congratulation (n)	تهنئة

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - How's it going at your school?

Lesson 5

Listen to four short conversations and put the photos in the correct order.

SB page 19

1. **Ali** Hi, Yasser! Are you coming to football practice on Thursday?
   Yasser Oh, hello Ali. No, I can't come this week. My granddad is in hospital again. I have to look after my little brothers while my mum goes to visit him.
   Ali I'm sorry to hear that. I hope he gets better[1] soon. It's a pity[2] that you can't come. Maybe see you next Thursday, then.
   Yasser Thanks, Ali.

(1) يتحسن
(2) شفقة/حزن
(3) يخمن
(4) أحسنت
(5) أخبار
(6) يجتاز
(7) تهانينا

2. **Yasser** Hey Ali, Guess[3] what! I'm in the football team! The coach told me after football practice last night.
   Ali Well done[4], Yasser! That's great news[5].



3. **Hana** Hello, Salma. How are you? Great to see you! How's it going at your new school? Are you enjoying it?
   Salma Hello, Hana. Great to see you too! The new school is really hard! I don't know anyone, and I feel everyone is much cleverer than me. I have to do hours of homework every night.



   Hana That must be difficult. But don't worry: I'm sure things will get better with time. **You** were always the best student in our class!

4. **Hana** Hi, Huda. How are things?
   Huda Hello, Hana! Fine thanks. I passed[6] my English exam!
   Hana Congratulations[7]! I'm so happy for you. Everyone knows that's a really difficult exam.

Post-listening questions:

1 Yasser is a helpful boy. Explain.

.....

2 What does the underlined word "**You**" refer to?

.....

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 6

- What kind of news would you tell your friend?

Read Injy's email to her friend Salma and answer the questions. *SB page 20*



Hi Salma,

How are you? I hope you are enjoying your new school. We really miss (1) you.

I am fine, but there is some bad news from school. Mrs. Tahany is leaving! She is such a good science teacher and we are feeling very sad.

I have some good news (2), too. Guess what?

My parents say I can go on the school trip (3) to Amman. I am very excited! There are many amazing places to visit **there**. The trip is in March and I can't wait.

So what's your news? Write soon!

Injy

(1) يفتقد (2) أخبار (3) رحلة مدرسية

Post-reading questions:

1 What does the underlined word "**there**" refer to?

.....

2 Why do you think Injy is excited about going on the school trip?

.....

Read the email from Tamer to Tarek. Correct the mistakes. Listen and check your answers. *WB page 84*



Hi Tarek,

How's it going? Congratulations (1) on passing (2) your maths test! Do you have more exams next term?

The news from me is that we **are moving** to a new house! I'm so **excited** because my bedroom in the new house is very big. **I have** some bad news, too. I'm sharing (3) the room with my brother! But this is only for a week until his room is ready.

I'm looking forward **to meeting** you in the summer. Do you want to go swimming or sailing (4) at the beach this year? **I can't wait** to see you.

Write soon!

Tamer

(1) تهانينا

(2) يجتاز

(3) يشارك

(4) الإبحار

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You did a/an ..... job. Your drawing is great!
   a) hard **b)** amazing **c)** difficult **d)** busy
2. I'm going to show our coach how much I got better at football ..... .
   a) exam **b)** homework **c)** team **d)** practice
3. Can you ..... how many people were at the party?
   a) guess **b)** respond **c)** speak **d)** worry
4. Next weekend, I am ..... swimming in the pool with my cousins.
   a) playing **b)** getting **c)** going **d)** doing
5. You will grow taller and stronger ..... time.
   a) at **b)** with **c)** for **d)** of
6. A ..... teaches people how to play or improve a sport. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) scientist **b)** sports coach **c)** nurse **d)** worker
7. Maria didn't respond ..... my email. I am worried about her.
   a) with **b)** at **c)** to **d)** about
8. **A:** We didn't swim in the sea because it was very windy.
   B: What a .....! الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) pity **b)** dear **c)** really **d)** no
9. He is a doctor who helps sick people ..... better. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) do **b)** have **c)** make **d)** get
10. .....! I'm so happy for you. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
    a) Congratulations **b)** Shame **c)** Pity **d)** Sorry
11. The teacher helped me ..... my maths exams. السويس ٢٠٢٣
    a) cross **b)** guess **c)** succeed **d)** pass
12. It was a very busy weekend. We ..... hours of homework.
    a) did **b)** made **c)** studied **d)** missed
13. The waiter ..... food for people to eat. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) prepares **b)** takes **c)** misses **d)** does
14. I'm so happy to see you after these long years. I really ..... you. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
    a) lose **b)** win **c)** earn **d)** miss
15. We send our warm ..... to all guests..
    a) teams **b)** coaches **c)** practice **d)** greetings

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Responding to news

الرد على الأخبار

Good news	الأخبار الجيدة	Bad news	الأخبار السيئة
- Well done!	أحسنت!	- I'm sorry to hear that.	حزين لسماع ذلك.
- That's great news!	إنها أخبار عظيمة!	- I hope he gets better soon.	أتمنى أن يتحسن قريبًا (تقال فى المرض).
- Congratulations!	مبروك/تهانينا!	- It's a pity that you ...	من المحزن-الشفقة أنك ... .
- I'm so happy for you.	أنا سعيد جدًا من أجلك.	- That must be difficult. But don't worry.	من المؤكد أن هذا صعب. ولكن لا تقلق.
		- Don't worry. I'm sure things will get better with time.	لا تقلق، أنا متأكد أن الأمور سوف تتحسن بمرور الوقت.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Kady won first place in the painting competition, but Yara's little brother is ill.

Kady : Hi, Yara. Guess what? I won first place in the painting competition at school!
Yara : Wow, Kady! (1).....!
Kady : Thank you, Yara! I worked really hard.
Yara : (2).....?
Kady : I drew an animal. So, what's your news?
Yara : (3)..... .
Kady : I'm sorry to hear that. (4).....?
Yara : That was three days ago.
Kady : (5)..... .
Yara : I hope so. Thanks for your feelings.

1 Complete the following dialogue:

القليوبية ٢٠٢٤

Ali's grandfather is ill.

Ali : I can't come to your party.
Ola : Why can't you come?
Ali : (1)..... .
Ola : (2).....?
Ali : In the hospital.
Ola : Why don't we visit him?
Ali : (3)..... .
Ola : (4).....?
Ali : Tomorrow in the morning.
Ola : I hope he will get better soon.
Ali : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

1. I can't answer this question. It's very ..... .
   a) careless **b)** easy **c)** simple **d)** difficult
2. Can you ..... how life will be like in twenty years?
   a) win **b)** wait **c)** get **d)** imagine
3. ..... done, Yasser! You got the first prize.
   a) Paintings **b)** Greetings **c)** Well **d)** Congratulations
4. I have some good ..... . My sister has a new baby girl.
   a) data **b)** maths **c)** news **d)** papers
5. He greeted his guests ....., making them feel comfortable and welcome.
   a) warm **b)** warmly **c)** badly **d)** good
6. We ..... with our parents at the moment.
   a) stay **b)** stays **c)** are staying **d)** staying

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I don't wear a scarf, but today I ..... (wear) one because it's very cold.
2. It is important not to drive ..... (careless) when it is raining.
3. My mum always ..... (cook) delicious food.
4. Don't talk ..... (noisy) in the library.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3
TACKLES	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language
MARK			

A Listening

نص الاستماع
فى نهاية الكتاب.

القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rania is a ..... .
   - **a)** teacher
   - **b)** housewife
   - **c)** farmer
   - **d)** dentist
2. She works in ..... .
   - **a)** Egypt
   - **b)** London
   - **c)** Japan
   - **d)** India
3. She has ..... children.
   - **a)** one
   - **b)** two
   - **c)** three
   - **d)** four
4. She advises her patients to look after their ..... .
   - **a)** bodies
   - **b)** teeth
   - **c)** legs
   - **d)** hands

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

Yasser can't go to the football practice because his brother is in hospital.

Ali : Hi Yasser! How are things?
Yasser : Hi Ali! Fine.
Ali : Are you coming to football practice today?
Yasser : (1)..... .
Ali : (2).....?
Yasser : I can't come because my brother is in hospital.
Ali : (3).....?
Yasser : He had an accident.
Ali : Sorry to hear that.
Yasser : (4)..... .
Ali : Could I come to visit him with you?
Yasser : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hi Ramez,

How are you doing? Good job on passing your science test! I'm so proud of you. Do you have any more exams coming up next term? I have some exciting news to share with you. We're moving to a new house! I'm really looking forward to it because my new bedroom is huge. But there's a little bit of bad news too - I have to share the room with my brother for a week until his room is ready. Would you like to visit me in my new house? I'll be happy if you come. I really can't wait to see you this summer. We should plan some fun activities to do together. How about going swimming or sailing at the beach? It's going to be so much ***fun***!

Write back soon!

Amir

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this text. .....
2. Who wrote it? .....
3. Why do you think Amir isn't happy? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "you" refers to ..... .

a) Ramez **b)** Amir **c)** his brother **d)** the writer

5. Ramez passed his ..... test.

a) maths **b)** science **c)** art **d)** English

6. The word "***fun***" means ..... .

a) useless **b)** ugly **c)** exciting **d)** sad

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They need a technician to ..... the computer. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

a) park **b)** communicate **c)** repair **d)** guess

2. I heard the ..... on the radio.

a) teams **b)** maths **c)** news **d)** exams

3. You can't ..... your car here. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) bark **b)** break **c)** brake **d)** park

4. When two people ..... married, they have a wedding.

a) do **b)** make **c)** get **d)** take

5. When I go to a new place, I like ..... friends. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) making b) giving c) doing d) taking

6. You should ..... a rest after studying for a long time.

a) take b) make c) do d) relax

7. I can go on the school ..... to Aswan.

a) trip b) pity c) travel d) walk

8. I live ..... with my mum and dad in a small flat in Minya.

a) happy b) happily c) sad d) good

9. We're studying traditional Arabic calligraphy and we're ..... it.

a) enjoy b) enjoys c) enjoyed d) enjoying

10. We are repairing the roof ..... .

a) ago b) now c) yesterday d) last

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My grandpa ..... (visit) us on Fridays. We always enjoy sitting with him.
2. Always speak ..... (quiet) to your parents. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
3. What is your father ..... (do)? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
4. I'm so sorry, I can't hear what you ..... (say). الغربية ٢٠٢٢

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"What teenagers need to be happy"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5	6
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Reading	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK						

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sara and Rawan are talking about how they are going to spend their holiday.

Sara : Hello, Rawan. Where are you going to spend your holiday?

Rawan : Hello, Sara! (1)..... .

a) I'm going to stay home **b)** I'm going to visit my uncle

c) I'm going to spend it in Luxor **d)** I'm going to go to the zoo

Sara : (2).....! Luxor is a very nice place. How will you go there?

a) Don't worry **b)** It's a pity

c) I'm sorry to hear that **d)** That's great news

Rawan : I'll go there by plane.

Sara : (3).....?

a) Who will you go with **b)** When will you go

c) How will you go **d)** Where will you go

Rawan : I'll go with my family. (4).....?

a) How is that **b)** What about you

c) What happened **d)** How are you

Sara : I'll spend it in the country.

Rawan : Great! The country is beautiful and enjoyable.

Sara : I hope you will have a nice time.

Rawan : (5)..... .

a) Thank you **b)** Not at all **c)** You're welcome **d)** I'm sorry

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** Where's your mother? **B:** She ..... (gets) everything ready for the trip.
   a) get **b)** getting **c)** got **d)** is getting
2. He is a bad driver. He drives ..... (danger).
   a) dangerously **b)** dangerous **c)** more danger **d)** as dangerous
3. My sisters and I ..... (painting) the kitchen now.
   a) paint **b)** paints **c)** are painting **d)** painted
4. On Saturday, we sometimes ..... (are spending) time on a boat.
   a) spends **b)** spend **c)** spent **d)** spending
5. Mazin usually ..... (walk) to school.
   a) walking **b)** walks **c)** is walking **d)** has walked

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)
Q 2	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)

Module 1 Question Bank On Units 1&2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A) Adel is asking Samir about his father's job. دمياط ٢٠٢٤

Adel : What's your father's job, Samir?
Samir : (1)..... .
Adel : (2).....?
Samir : He works in Damietta prep school.
Adel : What subject does he teach?
Samir : (3)..... .
Adel : (4).....?
Samir : Yes, all his pupils like him.
Adel : Do you want to be a teacher like him?
Samir : (5)..... .

B) Soha and Mona are talking about their friend Huda. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

Mona : Our friend Huda hasn't come to school since last week.
Soha : What a pity! (1).....?
Mona : She had an accident last week.
Soha : (2).....?
Mona : No, she is at home now.
Soha : Can I come with you to visit her?
Mona : (3)..... .
Soha : When will we visit her?
Mona : (4)..... . Where shall we meet?
Soha : (5)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We do the same things every day, that's our daily ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
a) routine **b)** exercise **c)** wedding **d)** curtain
2. Mo Salah had a/an ..... on TV last night. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
a) view **b)** revision **c)** review **d)** interview
3. On Saturday, I usually ..... time with my cousins. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) spend **b)** begin **c)** finish **d)** leave
4. Your mark is ..... . You must work harder. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
a) large **b)** attractive **c)** terrible **d)** brave
5. He was sent to ..... as he did something wrong. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤
a) school **b)** bank **c)** garden **d)** prison

6. ..... are important to keep the light out. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

a) Wardrobes b) Carpets c) Curtains d) Sofas

7. She works in a hospital. She is working in the children's ..... at the moment. البحيرة ٢٠٢٤

a) word b) award c) ward d) world

8. Shady is deaf, but he understands us because we use ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٤

a) food stall b) sign language c) colours d) sports

9. This is a photo of my parents' ..... . They were very happy. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤

a) weeding b) wedding c) accident d) crowds

10. We ..... her on her marriage. الغربية ٢٠٢٣

a) congratulated b) interested c) succeeded d) punished

11. Hamdi ..... drink coffee for breakfast. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

a) doesn't b) don't c) isn't d) hasn't

12. Dina looks forward ..... London. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

a) visiting b) to visit c) visits d) to visiting

13. The police officer ..... a school today. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢

a) visiting b) visits c) is visiting d) visit

14. What ..... doing at the moment? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) were you b) you were c) you are d) are you

15. Salma speaks English ..... . القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

a) worse b) bad c) good d) well

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Jomana is ..... (wrote) a message now. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
2. What is Salma ..... (do) now? المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
3. He never ..... (write) emails in French. البحيرة ٢٠٢٤
4. My friend sews ..... (bad). الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
5. My sister is smiling ..... (happy) at the camera. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
6. Samir works ..... (hardly). الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
7. The man accepted the offer ..... (immediate). البحيرة ٢٠٢٣
8. Fady is ..... (travel) to Aswan at the moment. السويس ٢٠٢٣
9. When ..... (do) she get up every day? دمياط ٢٠٢٣
10. I am looking forward to ..... (see) you. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

MODULE 2

مقرر الشهور أكتوبر ونوفمبر



Unit 3 Great jobs

Unit 4 Into the past

Module 2 Question Bank

Selected from Previous Exams



Unit 3 GREAT JOBS

OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	An article about the Egyptian handball team; a text about Ancient Egyptian doctors; a text about heroes
Writing	A paragraph about your rubbish collectors; a paragraph about someone you are proud of
Listening	Descriptions of different heroes; a talk about a family history; a discussion about what makes a hero
Speaking	Talking about heroes; discussing your family history; saying what you are proud of; checking your understanding
Language	*used to*
Life Skills	Collaboration; communication
Values	Work values; love and respect for homeland and the family
Issues	Citizenship; loyalty and belonging; national unity

SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video

SB pages 22 - 25 | WB pages 86 & 87

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

attack (ed) (v)	يهاجم	national (adj)	وطنى/قومى
brave (adj)	شجاع	nuclear (adj)	نووى
competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة	patron (n)	راعٍ/كفيل
date of birth (n)	تاريخ الميلاد	princess (n)	أميرة
final (n/adj)	المباراة النهائية/نهائى	senior (n/adj)	الأكبر سنًا/خبرة
handball (n)	كرة اليد	shark (n)	سمكة قرش
junior (n/adj)	مبتدئ/ناشئ	successful (adj)	ناجح
khedive (n)	الخديو	teamwork (n)	عمل جماعى
medicine (n)	دواء/طب	treatment (n)	علاج
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية	hero (n)	بطل
Jobs وظائف			
charity worker (n)	عامل فى جمعية خيرية	sports coach (n)	مدرب رياضى
scientist (n)	عالم	heart surgeon (n)	جراح قلب

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

against (prep)	ضد	land (n)	أرض
daughter (n)	ابنة	preparatory (adj)	إعدادى
die (d) (v)	يموت	pleased (adj)	مسرور
event (n)	حدث	primary (adj)	ابتدائى
improve (d) (v)	يحسن	university (n)	جامعة
the Africa Cup of Nations	كأس الأمم الإفريقية	the Under-19 World Cup Final	نهائى كأس العالم تحت ١٩ سنة

Check Point

Choose and complete: improve - Khedive - die - date

1. Princess Fatma Ismail was the daughter of ..... Ismail.
2. This site asks for your name and your ..... of birth to log in.
3. I practise a lot to ..... in playing the guitar.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	> experiments	يُجرى تجارب معملية	lose	> a leg	يفقد ساقًا
get	> a prize	يحصل على جائزة	make	> a hero	يصنع بطلًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

by (v + ing)	بواسطة	play for	يلعب لـ
good/ the best at	جيد /الأفضل فى	throw into	يرمى فى داخل
help with	يساعد فى	was born in	وُلِدَ فى
look inside the body	ينظر داخل الجسم	with heart problems	ذو مشاكل فى القلب

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
become	يصبح	became	become	mean	يعنى/يقصد	meant	meant
lose	يخسر	lost	lost	throw	يرمى	threw	thrown

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن	junior	مبتدئ/ناشئ	senior/older	أكبر سنًا/خبرة
ill	مريض	well	بصحة جيدة	nervous	عصبى/متوتر	patient	صبور
female	مؤنث	male	مذكر	brave	شجاع	coward	جبان

Check Point

Choose and complete: throwing - at - with - safe - lost

1. I saw a bird with only one leg. I wonder how it ..... its other leg. يتساءل
2. The opposite of "dangerous" is "..... ".
3. Sarah is good ..... drawing.
4. You can score in handball by ..... the ball into a goal.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية

1 work as + وظيفة — يعمل كـ

- My father works as a teacher.
- He stopped his work as a surgeon.

2 the first ... to + inf. — أول ... من ...

- They were the first team from Africa to win the Under-19 World Cup Final in 2019.

3 use + الشىء + (to + inf.) / (for + v.ing/ n) — يستخدم

- Ancient Egyptian doctors used plants (to help/ for helping) people with burns.

4 Subject الفاعل + last + past simple ماضٍ بسيط — آخر مرة

- We last saw Mr Said three days ago.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In the race, Rana was the first ..... the finish line.
a) crossing b) cross c) to crossing d) to cross

2 I last ..... my grandma a month ago.
a) visit b) visited c) visits d) am visiting

3 The teacher used some drawings ..... the lesson well.
a) explained b) explain c) to explain d) to explaining

4 My aunt works ..... a nurse. She looks after patients.
a) in b) at c) as d) for

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions	التعريفات
competition مسابقة/منافسة	an event(1) when people try to get a prize by being the best at something
handball كرة اليد	a sport with seven players in a team, they score by throwing the ball into a goal
junior مبتدئ/ناشئ	for younger(2) people
patron راعٍ/كفيل	gives money(3) to people or places
scientist عالِم	does experiments(4) to study and find out about how things work
senior الأكبر سنًا/خبرة	for older(5) people
sports coach مدرب رياضى	teaches people how to play or improve(6) in a sport
surgeon جراح	knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill
won فاز	were first in a game or competition

(1) حدث .....
(2) الأصغر سنًا .....
(3) يتبرع بالمال .....
(4) تجارب .....
(5) الأكبر سنًا .....
(6) يطور

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
ill	مريض	sick/unwell	مريض
pleased	مسرور	happy	سعيد

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
nation (n)	أمة	-al		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		national (adj)	وطنى/قومى
success (n)	نجاح	-ful				successful (adj)	ناجح

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
brave	شجاع	brief	ملخص
heart	قلب	hurt	يؤذى/يؤلم

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Listening Text

Pre-listening question:

- Who is your role model? Why do you like him/her?

Listen to someone talking about the people in the photos. Check your answers to Exercise 1.

(1) سمكة قرش (3) ناجح (5) علاج
(2) يهاجم (4) عالم نووى

1 Photo one shows Omar Abdelkader. He was born in 1994. When Omar was 22, a shark[1] attacked[2] him and he lost a leg, but this did not stop him wanting to be successful[3]. Now he helps other people with similar problems and he is an important sports coach.



2 Photo two shows Sameera Moussa. Sameera was born in 1917 and studied science at Cairo University. She was Egypt's first female nuclear scientist[4] and wanted to use nuclear treatments[5] in medicine. She died in 1952.



3 Photo three shows Magdy Yacoub. He was born in Bilbeis in 1935. He went to Cairo University and became an important heart surgeon[6]. He then helped people with heart problems for many years. He stopped most of his work a long time ago, but in 2006, he started a charity to help children with heart problems.



4 Photo four shows Princess[7] Fatma Ismail. The Princess was the daughter of Khedive[8] Ismail and she was born in 1853. She became a patron[9] of Egypt's first national university[10] after she gave a lot of money and land to help it to open in 1908. From 1908 to 1940, people called it the Egyptian University, but it is now called Cairo University.



(6) جراح قلب (9) راعٍ/كفيل
(7) أميرة (10) جامعة وطنية
(8) الخديو

Post-listening questions:

1 Dr Magdy Yacoub is a great Egyptian surgeon. Explain.

2 Why do you think Princess Fatma Ismail gave money and land to help open the Egyptian University?

3 What do you think of Sameera Moussa?

Pre-reading question:

- Where did you use to live when you were young?

Circle the correct words: *WB page 86*

When my parents were younger, they lived in Luxor. Then they moved to Port Said **in** 1990. My father got a job in Cairo 15 years **ago**. They then lived in a small flat **from** 2005 **to** 2006. They moved to the bigger flat a year later **when** I was born.

Post-reading questions:

1 When did the writer's parents move to Port Said?

.....

2 Why do you think the writer's parents moved from Port Said to Cairo?

.....

Pre-reading question: - What sport do you like?

Read the article and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 24

(1) كرة اليد
(2) أبطال
(3) فاز
(4) المباراة النهائية
(5) فريق الشباب
(6) كأس العالم
(7) الفريق الأول
(8) منافسات

Egyptian heroes!



The Egyptian handball[1] team are heroes[2]! They won[3] the Handball Africa Cup of Nations in Tunisia in 2020. They won the final[4] against Tunisia 27-23. That means they are the best team in Africa!

This is not the first time Egypt's handball team played in a final. In 2019, the junior team[5] won the Under-19 World Cup[6] Final 32-28 against Germany. They were the first team from Africa to win it. In 2018, the senior team[7] were also in the final of the Africa Cup of Nations, but lost the final against Tunisia.

Now, lots of people in Egypt love the sport. Let's hope the Egyptian team can win competitions[8] again!

Comprehension Skills

"Giving the main idea" «مهارة إعطاء الفكرة الأساسية»

- The main idea means **what the text is about.** الفكرة الرئيسية تعنى ما يدور حوله النص.

To find the main idea easily, you should follow these steps:

لتجد الفكرة الرئيسية بسهولة عليك اتباع الخطوات التالية:

1. Look at the title. انتبه للعنوان.
2. Read the first sentence. أقرأ الجملة الأولى.
3. Read the last sentence. اقرأ الجملة الأخيرة.
4. Look for repeated words or phrases. ابحث عن الكلمات والعبارات المكررة.

Example:

What's the main idea of the previous passage?

The main idea is about the achievements of the Egyptian Handball Team.

Complete the text with these words.

WB page 87

My brother Ahmed loves playing **handball** and he's very good at it. When he was eight, he played in a **junior** competition for a team in our city. The team didn't **win**, but it was second. Ahmed is now 21 and last year, he played for an important senior team. He was very pleased. Next year, the team are playing in an important **competition**. I hope they win it!

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our ..... team won the final. All the country was happy.
   a) global b) national c) preparatory d) primary
2. A ..... is someone who is older and has more experiences in life.
   a) princess b) teenager c) senior d) junior
3. It's important to take your ..... on time to be better.
   a) patron b) princess c) teamwork d) medicine
4. The ..... wore a beautiful dress in the party. She was so attractive.
   a) princess b) khedive c) junior d) competition
5. She played ..... her school team and scored many goals.
   a) into b) for c) to d) at
6. Yesterday, I ..... an experiment in the science lesson.
   a) played b) thought c) did d) made
7. The dog ..... the boy, but it didn't hurt him.
   a) lost b) attacked c) died d) got
8. Last week, my favourite plant ..... because we didn't water it enough.
   a) lived b) saved c) attacked d) died
9. Dr Magdy Yacoub helps children ..... heart problems.
   a) by b) at c) with d) on
10. If you get high marks, you will ..... a prize.
    a) win b) make c) play d) lose
11. ..... is a sport with seven players in a team. They score by throwing the ball into a goal.
    a) Chess b) Handball c) Tennis d) Sailing
12. My mother was so ..... because I cleaned up my room.
    a) pleased b) angry c) nervous d) sad
13. When a group of people have the ability to work together, it's called ..... .
    a) patron b) date c) treatment d) teamwork
14. Do you feel ..... during exams?
    a) brave b) dangerous c) successful d) nervous
15. Samy was ill and went to hospital for..... .
    a) treatment b) teamwork c) competition d) university

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My teacher is very ..... . He never gets nervous. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) brave b) patient c) slow d) ugly
2. I always give money to a/an ..... that helps poor people. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) charity b) voluntary c) emergency d) environment
3. A ..... does experiments to study how things work. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) surgeon b) teacher c) vet d) scientist
4. Everyone works hard to be ..... . بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) loser b) away c) junior d) successful
5. In 2020, Egypt won the final match ..... Tunisia. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) against b) to c) for d) by
6. A ..... trains people how to play or improve sport. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) scientist b) surgeon
   c) sports coach d) charity worker
7. The ..... handball team won the Under-19 World Cup Final. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
   a) senior b) junior c) old d) children
8. A/An ..... is a large, dangerous animal that lives in the sea. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) shark b) eagle c) turtle d) crab
9. The Egyptian Handball Team are all ..... . They won the cup. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) bad b) heroes c) sad d) ill
10. He ..... his camera yesterday. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
    a) played b) lost c) read d) painted
11. A ..... gives money to people or places. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
    a) volunteer b) patron c) coach d) surgeon
12. A/An ..... is an event when people try to get a prize. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
    a) hero b) orchestra c) competition d) goal
13. A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
    a) surgeon b) pilot c) teacher d) baker
14. "Brave" is the opposite of "..... ". الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
    a) famous b) coward c) crazy d) late
15. This is the school which won the ..... match. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
    a) final b) fan c) fin d) finally
16. Sameera Moussa was Egypt's first female ..... scientist. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
    a) nuclear b) chemistry c) biology d) Arabic

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

e.g. They visited their uncle yesterday.

Usage الاستخدام

- We use the past simple tense to talk about actions that started and ended in the past and for past habits.

- نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط لنتحدث عن فعل حدث فى الماضى وانتهى أو للتعبير عن عادات فى الماضى.

e.g. He watched TV last night.

Form التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل

I, we, they, you
he, she, it
اسم مفرد/ اسم جمع

e.g. **My sister** cleaned her room. **My brother and I** bought a new car.

لاحظ تنقسم الأفعال إلى قسمين:

Regular verbs: أفعال منتظمة:
تتكون بإضافة (d/ ed/ ied) للمصدر.

live	lived
visit	visited
study	studied

Irregular verbs: أفعال غير منتظمة:
يتغير فيها شكل الفعل وليس لها قاعدة محددة.

win	won
lose	lost
catch	caught

Negative النفى

Subject الفاعل + **did not (didn't) + inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. **Adel and Marwan** did not **arrive** late for school.
Hana didn't **understand** the lesson.

Question السؤال

Yes/No questions السؤال بهل **Did + subject** الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل?

e.g. **A:** Did you watch TV last night? **B:** Yes, I did. / **B:** No, I didn't.

Wh-questions السؤال بأداة الاستفهام

Q. word أداة استفهام + **did** + **subject** الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل?

e.g. **A:** What time did the students get up? **B:** They got up at 6 o'clock.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

- في الماضي in the past - منذ ... ago - الماضي ... last - أمس yesterday)
- سنة ماضية + to + سنة ماضية - in + سنة في الماضي (in 2010) - for + مدة from +

e.g. My mum came home early yesterday.
Last Friday, the children talked about a day out in the country.

لاحظ استخدام (When) بمعنى عندما مع زمن الماضي البسيط:

e.g. When I was 12, I won a medal.
Hany and I lived in Tanta when we were young.

Verb to "be" الفعل «يكون»

من الأفعال غير المنتظمة ولكنه لا يتبع نفس القاعدة.

Form التكوين

I, He, She, It, + اسم مفرد + was/ was not (wasn't) + adjective صفة

e.g. Shahenda was absent **yesterday**. I was so excited **yesterday**.

You, We, They, + اسم جمع + were/ were not (weren't) + adjective صفة

e.g. The teachers were angry **yesterday**. You weren't hungry.

Yes/No questions السؤال بهل

Was + I, he, she, it, + اسم مفرد + adjective صفة?

e.g. Was Nader absent yesterday? Yes, he was. / No, he wasn't.

Were + you, we, they, + اسم جمع + adjective صفة?

e.g. Were they excited? Yes, they were./ No, they weren't.
Were you busy? Yes, I was./ No, I wasn't.

Got it ?

تمكّنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Anas ..... (not/use) the computer last night.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (didn't use) لوجود last الدالة على زمن الماضي البسيط والجملة في صيغة النفي.

2 When I travelled to Paris, I ..... (visit) the Eiffel Tower.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (visited) لوجود (When) بمعنى عندما فيتبعها الفعل في الماضي البسيط.

3 Where ..... (you/ spend) your last holiday?
- الإجابة الصحيحة (did you spend) لوجود last الدلة على زمن الماضي البسيط وهي صيغة سؤال في الماضي.

4 The boy ..... (not/ be) happy yesterday.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (wasn't) لوجود yesterday الدالة على زمن الماضي البسيط وفاعل الجملة مفرد والجملة منفية.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandfather ..... working in 2015. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) stopping b) stop c) stopped d) stops
2. We ..... watch the film yesterday.
   a) didn't b) weren't c) don't d) won't
3. Magdy Yacoub stopped most of his work as a surgeon a long time ..... . SB
   a) when b) last c) for d) ago
4. They ..... the first team from Africa to win it. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) were b) did c) was d) does
5. Where did your parents ..... when they were young? دمياط ٢٠٢٤
   a) lived b) lives c) live d) to live
6. ..... Hany at the party yesterday? البحيرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) Was b) Did c) Were d) Is
7. ..... you have fun at the cinema last weekend?
   a) Are b) Will c) Do d) Did
8. Enas didn't ..... her friends yesterday. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) meet b) met c) meets d) meeting
9. When Omar was 22, a shark attacked him and he ..... a leg. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) lost b) to lose c) is lost d) loses
10. My father travelled to Germany ..... 2010 to 2020.
    a) in b) from c) to d) ago

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Gamal ..... (not/visit) his uncle last week. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
2. My cousins ..... (be/not) at home yesterday.
3. Meg ..... (cuts) her fingers yesterday. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
4. Who ..... (win) the Africa Cup of Nations in 2018? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
5. One of the boys ..... (is) absent yesterday. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤
6. ..... (Do) you stay in a hotel when you travelled to Hurghada?

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about what makes a hero

كيفية الكتابة عن مواصفات البطل

- A hero is someone who can (فعل).
- He's a person who can help people in many ways.
- A hero can be someone who gives up their life so that others could live.
- A hero can be (وظيفة).
- He can (طبيعة عمله).
- He's a person who makes a difference in a person's life.

Writing tips

Write down relevant ideas and vocabulary to the topic.

- اكتب موضوعك متضمنًا أفكارًا ومفردات مرتبطة به.

Example

What makes a hero

A hero is someone who can show courage when they face a problem. A hero is a person who is able to help others in many ways. A person can become a hero by saving someone who is in danger. A hero is also a person who is there to help others to go on through the difficulties of life. A hero can be someone who gives up their life so that others could live. A hero does not always have to show courage, he can be afraid, but he is still a hero through his other actions. A hero can be a teacher. He can teach you to read or write and that will make a big difference in your life. That is a hero to me, someone who makes a difference in a person's life.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your hero"

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. Which sport is the text about?
   a) Football. b) Handball. c) Tennis. d) Volleyball.
2. When did the Egyptian team win the Africa Cup of Nations in that sport?
   a) In 2020. b) In 2022. c) In 2010. d) In 2021.
3. Which country did they play against?
   a) Sudan. b) Morrocco. c) Germany. d) Tunisia.
4. What was the score of the match?
   a) 27-22. b) 72-32. c) 27-23. d) 72-23.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hany is reading an article.

الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

Ali : What are you doing?
Hany : (1)..... .
Ali : (2).....?
Hany : It is about famous Egyptians, like Magdy Yacoub.
Ali : Why is he famous?
Hany : (3)..... .
Ali : (4).....?
Hany : He was born in Belbis. He has a charity.
Ali : Really! I think he is a great man.
Hany : (5)..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I love the cold weather because I was born ..... Europe.
   a) in b) on c) at d) for
2. I hope I'll win the school swimming ..... this year.
   العربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) experiment b) treatment c) competition d) charity
3. From your point of view, what ..... a hero?
   a) does b) has c) takes d) makes
4. A surgeon knows how to look ..... the body to help people who are ill.
   a) inside b) out of c) for d) towards
5. My grandfather was a ..... . He used to help poor children.
   a) cleaner b) charity worker
   c) computer programmer d) princess

6. This film is based on real ..... .
   a) events b) competitions c) sports d) finals
7. You mustn't take ..... without asking the doctor.
   a) medicine b) water c) juice d) oil
8. How did you ..... when you saw the lion yesterday? القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) feel b) felt c) feeling d) feels
9. Egypt's football team ..... the Africa Cup of Nations in 2010. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) win b) won c) winning d) use to win
10. ..... your uncle born in 1961?
   a) Do b) Did c) Were d) Was

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He ..... (meet) aunt Reem when he was 20 and they got married in 1983. WB
2. The teachers ..... (be/not) angry yesterday because we all did our homework.
3. Did Nancy ..... (spent) a nice holiday?
4. My father ..... (worked) last Monday. It was a holiday.

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your hero"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. The Egyptian Handball Team was the first team from Africa ..... the Under-19 World Cup Final.
   a) win b) to win c) winning d) won
2. They moved to the bigger flat a year ..... .
   a) latest b) last c) late d) later

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Today the weather is nice, but yesterday it ..... (was).
2. The news ..... (be) very bad a week ago.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK					

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

Watch a video

SB pages 26 - 28 | WB pages 86 & 89

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

blood (n)	دم	furniture (n)	أثاث
bone (n)	عظمة	heart (n)	القلب
brain (n)	المخ	health (n)	صحة
breathe (d) (v)	يتنفس	infect (ed) (v)	يعدى/يصيب
burn (n/v)	حرق/يحرق	infection (n)	عدوى/التهاب
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية	jewellery (n)	مجوهرات
countryside (n)	الريف	lungs (n)	الرئتان
natural disaster (n)	كارثة طبيعية	pump (ed) (n/v)	مضخة/يضخ
earthquake (n)	زلزال	serious (adj)	خطير/جاد
emergency (n)	طوارئ	stomach (n)	معدة
function (n)	وظيفة (الشيء)	volunteer (n)	متطوع

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

broken (adj)	مكسور	scary (adj)	مخيف
fill (ed) (v)	يملأ	special (adj)	خاص
fire (n)	حريق/نار	history (n)	التاريخ
plant (ed) (n/v)	نبات/يزرع	the Red Crescent (n)	الهلال الأحمر

Check Point

Choose and complete: burn - plants - pump - breathe

1. The function of the heart is to ..... blood around the body.
2. We can ..... fresh air in the countryside.
3. My aunt always ..... flowers in her garden.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do	a job	يؤدى وظيفة	play	the piano	يعزف على البيانو
	research	يقوم بعمل بحث	sew	cuts	يخيط الجروح
make	a note	يدون ملاحظة	stop	infections	يوقف العدوى/الالتهابات
	medicine	يصنع دواء			

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a cut on	جرح فى	pleased with	مسرور من
cut into pieces	يقطع إلى أجزاء	proud of	فخور بـ
do a project on	يقوم بعمل مشروع عن	take in air	يستنشق هواء
for no money	بدون مقابل	work for	يعمل لدى
find out	يكتشف	write down	يدون

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
fall	يقع	fell	fallen	pay	يدفع ثمن ...	paid	paid

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
ancient	قديم	modern	حديث
mend	يصلح	damage	يتلف
natural	طبيعى	unnatural	غير طبيعى
terrible	فظيع/سيئ جدًا	beautiful	جميل

Check Point

Choose and complete: stop - did - beautiful - down - off

1. The opposite of "terrible" is "……".
2. We can …… infections by washing our hands more often.
3. I like to write …… my ideas for a new story.
4. My little brother fell …… his bike and broke his leg.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions — التعريفات

brain	مخ	it tells the parts[1] of our body what to do
charity	جمعية خيرية	a group of people that helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home/an organisation[2] that helps people who need them
countryside	الريف	the area[3] outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature
emergency	طوارئ	something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about
heart	القلب	it pumps blood around[4] the body
lungs	الرئتان	they take in[5] air and help us to breathe
natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية	a terrible event such as an earthquake
proud	فخور	feeling pleased[6] with someone because you think they are or have done something very good
volunteer	متطوع	someone who works for no money to help people

(1) أجزاء
(2) منظمة
(3) منطقة
(4) فى أنحاء
(5) يستنشق
(6) مسرور

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
mend — يصلح	fix/repair — يصلح
terrible — فظيع/سيئ جدًا	horrible — رهيب

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
infect (v) — يعدى/يصيب	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	infection (n) — عدوى
nature (n) — الطبيعة	-al	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	natural (adj) — طبيعى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 3

Pre-listening question:

- Why do you think it is important to know about your family history?

Listen to Yasser talking about his family history and answer the questions. *SB page 26*

I didn't use to know very much about my family history. Then, last week, I did a school project[1] about someone in my family, so I did some research and I found out some really interesting things about my great grandfather. I knew he used to be a doctor, but I didn't know he worked for a charity!

My great grandfather used to live in the countryside[2] and he worked as a volunteer doctor for the Red Crescent[3] when there was a natural disaster[4] or a health emergency[5]. For example, when there was an earthquake[6], my great grandfather went to help. The work was difficult and sometimes scary[7]. He also used to look after people who didn't have much money. I feel very proud[8] of him.



(1) مشروع (5) طوارئ
(2) الريف (6) زلزال
(3) الهلال الأحمر (7) مخيف
(4) كارثة طبيعية (8) فخور

Post-listening question:

- Why do you think Yasser is proud of his great grandfather?

Read about Magdy Yacoub and complete the text. *WB page 88*

We should all be proud of Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Bilbeis, but the family **used to travel** to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before he stopped working in 2001, he **used to work** in a special hospital in London. At this hospital, Magdy **used to help** to give people new hearts[1] for the first time. Before the 1980s, people with heart problems often **died**. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started a charity[2] for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children **didn't use to live** long lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives.



(1) قلوب
(2) جمعية خيرية

Complete the text.

WB page 89

Life in Ancient Egypt(1) was different to today. Poor children didn't use to **go** to school, but children from rich families(2) used to **start** school when they were about seven. When they were at home, children used to **enjoy** playing games. When older parents die, they used to leave their houses to the sons. However, they used to **leave** things inside the house, such as jewellery(3) and furniture(4), to the daughters.

(1) مصر القديمة
(2) الأسر الغنية
(3) مجوهرات
(4) أثاث/موبيليا

Read the article. Which parts of the body did Ancient Egyptian doctors understand some things about?

SB page 28

Ancient Egyptian doctors



We know how Ancient Egyptian doctors helped their patients(1) because they wrote down their ideas thousands of years ago.

The body

Ancient Egyptian doctors understood that the heart(2) pumps(3) blood(4) around the body. However, they used to think that the heart also pumped air(5) to our lungs(6)! They were also the first people to understand some of the things the brain(7) does, but they did not know how important it was.

(1) المرضى
(2) القلب
(3) يضخ
(4) الدم
(5) الهواء
(6) الرئتان
(7) المخ
(8) الحروف
(9) العدوى
(10) يصلح
(11) عظام
(12) جروح

Ways to help

Doctors used to use plants to help people with burns(8) and to stop infections(9). We still use some of these plants today. They also knew how to mend(10) broken bones(11) and sew cuts(12), but they didn't use to know everything. For example, they used to make medicine from animal eyes. They used to think that an animal's eye helped people who could not see!

Comprehension Skills

"Giving the main idea" «مهارة إعطاء الفكرة الأساسية»

يأتى السؤال على الفكرة الرئيسية بأكثر من طريقة:

- What's the main idea of the passage?
- What is the text about?
- What does the passage talk about?

Example: What's the main idea of the previous passage?

Answer: The passage is mainly about Ancient Egyptian doctors.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... in our living room includes a big sofa and a nice armchair.
   a) organisation b) stomach c) function d) furniture
2. Do you know the ..... of the brain?
   a) model b) health c) function d) age
3. Sameera lost a lot of ..... after the accident.
   a) bone b) stomach c) blood d) heart
4. The big dog looks ....., but it's really friendly and loves to play.
   a) scary b) sick c) proud d) natural
5. Yesterday, we ..... research on the computer to learn about different planets.
   a) sewed b) wrote c) made d) did
6. If you touch something hot, it can cause a ..... .
   a) skill b) burn c) born d) turn
7. Next week, we will do a project ..... famous football players.
   a) in b) at c) on d) for
8. If your child is sick, he should stay home to avoid ..... his friends at school.
   a) filling b) pumping c) burning d) infecting
9. I can't eat anything, my ..... is completely full.
   a) stomach b) heart c) lung d) burn
10. I ..... the glass with orange juice for my brother this morning.
    a) burned b) filled c) pumped d) infected
11. Mr Mazen gave me a ..... prize for doing a great job in class today.
    a) sick b) special c) healthy d) serious
12. A/An ..... is when the ground moves really hard.
    a) lung b) history c) organisation d) earthquake
13. Let's ..... which the fastest animal in the world is.
    a) find out b) cut into c) take in d) work for
14. Sohaila's infection got more ..... . She should go to hospital.
    a) healthy b) scary c) serious d) proud
15. The Grand Egyptian Museum is full of ..... objects.
    a) new b) ancient c) modern d) poor
16. I always feel ..... about the good things in my life.
    a) worried b) angry c) hungry d) pleased

Time to Practise



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... pumps blood around the body. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) heart b) lung c) liver d) brain
2. The ..... tells the parts of our body what to do. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) brain b) nose c) head d) ear
3. The ..... take in air and help us to breathe. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) brain b) hearts c) lungs d) legs
4. Alice is a ..... . She works without money. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) voluntary b) charity c) pioneer d) volunteer
5. A natural ....., such as an earthquake, is a terrible event. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) well b) disaster c) eye d) grass
6. If something is serious or dangerous, it's a/an ..... . الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   a) party b) emergency c) charity d) organisation
7. Eman's sister is in the hospital with eye ..... . الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
   a) infection b) correction c) plant d) light
8. I am so proud ..... my successful parents. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) in b) to c) of d) off
9. ..... is usually made of gold and it is expensive. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Clay b) Rocks c) Plastic d) Jewellery
10. Salma's mother is a volunteer at the hospital. They don't ..... her for work. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
    a) buy b) take c) pay d) look
11. There was a/an ..... emergency and many people were in hospitals. قنا ٢٠٢٣
    a) wealth b) earth c) north d) health
12. The ..... is a place where there are farms and lots of nature. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
    a) city b) desert c) town d) countryside
13. Our TV is broken. Can you ..... it? المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
    a) make b) do c) mix d) mend



لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

(USED TO) for regular past habits and routines اعتاد أن

e.g. They used to play the piano.

We use (used to + inf.) to talk about habits or states that were true in the past but are not true now. تستخدم للتعبير عن أفعال كنا نفعلها فى الماضى، أما الآن فهى لا تحدث.

Form التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفى
Subject الفاعل + used to + inf. مصدر الفعل (اعتاد أن)	Subject الفاعل + didn't use to + inf. مصدر الفعل (لم يكن معتادًا أن)
e.g. My grandfather used to live in the countryside.	e.g. Noha and I didn't use to go shopping.

Question السؤال

Yes/No questions السؤال بـ هل	Wh- questions السؤال بأداة استفهام
Did + subject الفاعل + use to + inf. مصدر الفعل?	Q. word أداة استفهام + did + subject الفاعل + use to + inf. مصدر الفعل?
e.g. A: Did your uncle use to repair his car himself? B: Yes, he did. / B: No, he didn't.	e.g. A: Where did you use to live? B: I/We used to live in a village.

لاحظ

١ نستخدم (There used to be) اعتاد أن يوجد/ (There didn't use to be) اعتاد ألا يوجد كالتالى:

e.g. There used to be a big tree here.

There didn't use to be a school in this area.

٢ عند المقارنة بما نفعله الآن نستخدم (don't أو doesn't) إذا كانت (used to) مثبتة، ونستخدم (do أو does) إذا كانت (used to) منفية.

e.g. I used to ride a bike, but now I don't. He didn't use to have a car. Now he does.

ما عدا إذا كان الفعل بعد (used to) هو (be) فنستخدم (am أو is أو are)

e.g. I used to be poor. Now I am not. He didn't use to be fat, but now he is.

تُمكِّنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 I ..... (not/use/enjoy) studying, but I do now.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (didn't use to enjoy) بمعنى «لم يعتد أن» فى الماضى.

2 There ..... (use) a supermarket here ten years ago.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (used to be) لأن الجملة تعنى اعتاد أن يوجد فى الماضى.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We ..... live in a small village before moving to the city.
   a) used to b) use to c) used d) use
2. Rahma's mother didn't ..... work in hospital. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) use b) used to c) use to d) used
3. She used to ..... fat, but now she's thin. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) was b) is c) being d) be
4. Where ..... your sisters use to go on holiday during the summer?
   a) does b) did c) was d) is
5. My grandparents didn't use to use mobile phones, but now they ..... .
   a) do b) don't c) did d) didn't
6. What did you use to ..... at primary school? القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) learnt b) learns c) learning d) learn
7. Grandfather ..... to drive a car when he was young. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
   a) uses b) wasn't used c) didn't use d) using
8. Where did your father .....? البحيرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) lived b) use to live c) living d) used to live
9. They ..... have a lot of money, but now they are poor.
   a) used b) used to c) didn't use to d) didn't use
10. Sally ..... give money to charities, but now she does. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
    a) used to b) didn't use to c) uses to d) doesn't use to

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (not/ used) to smoke when I was young. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
2. There used to ..... (being) a big tree in our garden.
3. They didn't use to ..... (had) a big car. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
4. Poor children ..... (used to) go to school, but now they do.
5. My uncle used ..... (spent) the mid-year holiday in Aswan.
6. What games did you ..... (used) to play with your friends? الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

Discussing family history

مناقشة تاريخ العائلة

online

Where did your parents use to live when they were young?
أين اعتاد والداك أن يعيشا فى الماضى؟

They used to live in Tanta. اعتادا أن يعيشا فى طنطا.

When you were ten, did you use to live in a different house?
عندما كنتَ فى العاشرة، هل اعتدت أن تعيش فى منزل مختلف؟

Yes, I did. نعم.

Did you use to have different hobbies?
هل اعتدت أن يكون لديك هوايات أخرى؟

No, I didn't. لا.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Sherief is talking to Eslam about his past habits.

Sherief : Hi Eslam, what did you use to do before going to school?
Eslam : (1)..... .
Sherief : What time did you use to have your breakfast?
Eslam : (2)..... .
Sherief : (3).....?
Eslam : Yes, I used to have it with my parents.
Sherief : How did you use to go to school?
Eslam : (4)..... . Bikes are healthy.
Sherief : (5).....?
Eslam : I go to school on foot now.

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about past habits

كيفية الكتابة عن عادات قديمة

- When I was young, I used to live in (المكان).
- I used to (الأفعال التى اعتدت أن تفعلها).
- I didn't use to (الأفعال التى لم تعتد على فعلها).
- I used to go to (المكان).
- There used to be ..... .
- There didn't use to be ..... .

Writing tips

Use varied sentence patterns in your writing. There should be both long and short sentences.

استخدم نماذج متنوعة من الجمل. يجب أن تكون هناك جمل طويلة وأخرى قصيرة فى الفقرة.

Example

What you used or didn't use to do when you were young

When I was young, I used to do a lot of things. I used to get up early and go to school. When I got home from school, I used to do my homework. I didn't use to help my mum with cooking. At the weekends, I used to visit my grandparents. They used to live in a village. There, I used to meet my cousins. We used to play outside a lot. We used to ride bikes and have fun with each other. My grandma used to cook delicious food and my grandpa used to tell us funny stories. Life was simpler and full of play. I really miss my life when I was a kid.

2. How to write about someone you are proud of

كيفية الكتابة عن شخص تفتخر به

To : mona@student.com
From : sara@student.com
Subject : Someone I'm proud of

Hello Mona,

Of all the members in my family, my mother is the person I am proud of. She is 40. She looks much younger than her age with short hair and a beautiful face. She works hard. At work, she is respected by all of her friends. She is a useful person in society. My mother always does the housework well. She is a very good cook. I really admire her for her wonderful dishes. She often spends her free time cooking delicious dishes for us, which makes everyone in my family happy. What's more, my mother is an excellent adviser. I always love her and I will always be proud of her.

Write soon.
Sara

1 Read the following, then answer the questions: القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

The person I admire in my life is my grandfather. He was born in 1964. He worked as a doctor. He worked in a big hospital. All people there liked **him** because he was kind and helpful. I **admire** him because he did voluntary work and helped people for no money. I like him because he gave me many presents and helped me a lot. He used to help the poor and give them money. He always advised me to help people all the time. When he died last year, people were all sad. He left all his money for poor people and advised us to build a hospital for them.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage. .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "**him**" refer to? .....
3. What do you think of the writer's grandfather? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**admire**" means to ..... .
   a) dislike b) hate c) kill d) love
5. My grandfather advised me to ..... .
   a) work as a doctor b) help people
   c) build a school d) be a volunteer
6. My grandfather asked us to build a ..... for poor people.
   a) hospital b) charity c) bank d) library

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. An earthquake is a natural ..... . It is a terrible event. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) infection b) disaster c) disease d) wind
2. A volunteer is someone who works ..... no money to help people.
   a) of b) in c) for d) at
3. A ..... is an organization that helps the poor. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤
   a) charity b) band c) school d) bank
4. Lungs are parts of the body that ..... air and help us to breathe.
   a) throw away b) find out c) look at d) take in
5. You can only open this door in an emergency such as a ..... .
   a) plant b) fire c) burn d) brain

6. Please ..... a note of the questions you want to ask.
a) do b) make c) pay d) cut
7. Can you mend this ..... chair?
a) burnt b) cut c) written d) broken
8. Dina ..... use to get up early, but now she does. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) wasn't b) didn't c) don't d) doesn't
9. I used to ..... short hair when I was a teenager. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
a) has b) had c) having d) have
10. Mona used to be lazy, but now she ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) weren't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Yasser's grandfather didn't ..... (used to) drive a car. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
2. She ..... (use) to walk in the park. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. When he was young, he ..... (not/used to) be naughty. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
4. Did you use to ..... (reading) English stories?

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"How your life used to be different when you were younger"

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. My brother is a doctor. He sometimes sleeps in the hospital when there is a ..... emergency.
a) healthy b) health c) wealth d) wealthy
2. With treatments, many ill children can now live ..... lives.
a) healthy b) health c) wealth d) wealthy

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There didn't use to ..... (was) a bank in our area.
2. My brother used to be fast, but now he ..... (doesn't).

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4
TACKLES	Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK				

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

Watch a video

SB pages 29 & 30 | WB pages 90 & 91

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

confuse (d) (v)	يتحير/يرتبك	organisation (n)	منظمة
difference (n)	اختلاف	painting (n)	لوحة/ التلوين
education (n)	التعليم	rubbish collector (n)	جامع القمامة
firefighter (n)	رجل إطفاء	society (n)	مجتمع
heroic (adj)	بطولى	statue (n)	تمثال
nursing manager (n)	مدير التمريض	street cleaner (n)	عامل نظافة الشارع

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

building (n)	مبنى	explain (ed) (v)	يشرح
discussion (n)	مناقشة	reason (n)	سبب

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

collect > rubbish	يجمع القمامة	make > a poster	يعد ملصقًا إعلانيًا
give > information	يعطى معلومات	put > first	يضع فى المقام الأول

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
continue	يستمر	stop	يتوقف
modern	حديث	old	قديم
scared (of)	خائف (من)	brave	شجاع
useful (for)	مفيد (لـ)	harmful	ضار

Check Point

Choose and complete: buildings - give - paintings - harmful - society

1. Teachers ..... information to help students learn new things at school.
2. Hospitals are ..... where doctors and nurses help people feel better.
3. Sometimes, ... tell stories or show how someone is feeling.
4. Adel gave Waleed some useful information. The antonym of "useful" is "..... ".

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية والتعبيرات اللغوية والكلمات وعكسها.

Vocabulary Builder

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
scared	خائف	afraid	خائف
useful	مفيد	helpful	مفيد

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
clean (v)	ينظف	-er		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم فاعل		cleaner (n)	عامل نظافة
hero (n)	بطل	-ic		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		heroic (adj)	بطولي

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- Tell us about a person you respect the most.

Listen to two people having a class discussion. Tick the correct topic.

SB page 29



Mona What is a hero[1], Huda?

Huda I think a hero is someone who is very brave[2].

Mona What do you mean[3]?

Huda I mean a hero isn't scared[4] of anything.

Mona I think a hero is someone who is scared, but still tries his/her best.

Huda I'm not sure what you mean.

Mona In other words, they often do difficult or dangerous things.

Huda It's also about putting other people first.

Mona Sorry, I don't understand[5].

Huda I mean a hero helps other people.

Mona Yes, I agree[6]!

(1) بطل
(2) شجاع
(3) يعني
(4) خائف
(5) يفهم
(6) يتفق

Post-listening questions:

1 In your opinion, what makes a hero?

2 Do you think you will be a hero one day?

Pre-reading question: - Who is your hero?

Lesson 6

Read the article. Who is the writer's hero? Why? *SB page 30*

My heroic mother

Today, my mother is an important nurse, Mrs Karima Mohamed, but I know that her life used to be difficult. She studied to be a nurse at the Faculty of Nursing in Ain Shams University and used to work as a nurse, too, sometimes at night, to learn all she could. She then got a job at a big hospital in Cairo. She continued to work hard but did not stop her studies, and soon she became one of the most important nurses in Cairo.



Now, she works in a big hospital in Cairo. In 2020, many people became ill and she worked every day for many weeks. It was difficult, but heroic[1] work, because most of them got better. She is also a nursing manager[2] and she helps to teach younger nurses.

(1) بطولى

(2) مديرة قسم التمريض

(3) التعليم

I think she is a hero because she studied and worked very hard to get an important job and now she helps people every day. She always tells me that education[3] is very important, and that if I work hard, I can do anything.

Read the email and write the sentences a-c in the right places. *WB page 91*

Hi!

My name's Adam and I want to write about a person I am very proud to know. **Her name's Mrs Karima Mohamed.**

When she was younger, she used to study very hard because she wanted to be a nurse. She also used to work to help pay for her studies, but that is not the reason I am proud of her! In 2020, there was a health emergency and many people were in hospital. **I became ill, too.** I was in hospital for two weeks and Mrs Karima Mohamed helped me and other people in the hospital. She was always very kind. I now know that she is one of the most important nursing managers in Cairo, so I am very happy she helped me. **I am very proud of her.**

Post-reading question: - Karima Mohamed is a great character. Explain.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should tell me the ..... for coming late.
   a) idea b) reason c) thought d) wrong
2. We help each other and work together to make things better in our ..... .
   a) mind b) desert c) society d) rubbish
3. Mothers always ..... their family first.
   a) get b) do c) collect d) put
4. Let's have a/an ..... about what game we want to play together.
   a) discussion b) organisation c) difference d) collector
5. ..... are the people who help stop fires and keep us safe.
   a) Children b) Firefighters c) Collectors d) Nurses
6. I help to ..... rubbish every day to keep our area clean.
   a) continue b) confuse c) explain d) collect
7. Finding the ..... between the two pictures is a fun game.
   a) differences b) paintings c) statues d) organisations
8. The exam wasn't easy. Many questions ..... me.
   a) continued b) confused c) explained d) gave
9. The little girl is scared ..... dogs.
   a) from b) of c) with d) at
10. We saw many ..... in the museum last week.
    a) statues b) status c) stations d) stars
11. The nursing ..... always guides the nurses in helping patients feel better.
    a) manager b) cleaner c) firefighter d) collector
12. People who collect rubbish are called rubbish ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
    a) sailors b) collectors c) buyers d) sellers
13. My friend, Omar, ... the rules of the game for the new players.
    a) made b) taught c) explained d) continued
14. Eating vegetables is useful ..... keeping our bodies healthy and strong.
    a) at b) for c) with d) in
15. Doctors and nurses are doing ..... work. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤
    a) stupid b) heroic c) simple d) terrible

C Skills



Speaking

Checking understanding

التأكد من الفهم

Asking for clarification طلب توضيح أمر ما		Clarification توضيح أمر ما	
What do you mean?	ماذا تعنى؟	I mean, ...	أنا أعنى ...
I'm not sure what you mean.	لست متأكدًا مما تعنيه.	In other words, ...	بمعنى آخر ...
Sorry, I don't understand.	آسف، لا أفهم.		
Agreeing **عند الاتفاق مع شخص فى الكلام**		**Disagreeing** **عند عدم الاتفاق مع شخص**	
Yes, I agree.	أنا أتفق معك.	I don't agree.	لا أتفق معك.
That's true. / Yes, that's true.	هذا حقيقى.	I'm not sure about that.	لست متأكدًا من ذلك.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue: WB

Nagwa and Noura are talking about heroes.

Nagwa : Do you want to be a superhero one day?

Noura : (1).....?

Nagwa : I mean, someone who saves others from danger!

Noura : (2)..... . Can you explain more?

Nagwa : Like Batman or Spiderman!

Noura : Do you agree they are heroes?

Nagwa : (3)..... . They are great people.

Noura : (4)..... . They aren't heroes.

Nagwa : (5).....?

Noura : I don't agree because they aren't real people.

Take a test

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 3 Lessons (5 & 6)

7.5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Motaz is asking Sleem about his hero. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

Motaz : Who is your hero, Sleem?
Sleem : (1)..... .
Motaz : What was your grandfather's job?
Sleem : (2)..... .
Motaz : Great! (3).....?
Sleem : He worked in a big hospital in Cairo.
Motaz : Did he use to be a volunteer?
Sleem : (4)..... .
Motaz : (5).....?
Sleem : Yes, I am so proud of him.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... work early in the morning to make sure the roads are clean for everyone.
   a) Firefighters b) Nursing managers
   c) Scientists d) Street cleaners
2. ..... technology has opened our eyes to many useful things.
   a) Dangerous b) Ancient c) Modern d) Old
3. The government is interested in ....., so it builds schools everywhere.
   a) tourism b) education c) fun d) monuments
4. Charities are ..... that help poor people by giving them money.
   a) museums b) schools c) factories d) organisations
5. There ..... three restaurants in this town, but two closed down leaving only one.
   a) using to b) used to c) used to be d) was
6. Maria ..... in Paris last summer.
   a) are b) is c) were d) was

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. How many sweets did you ..... (ate)?
2. I ..... (spend) a nice time with my cousins last weekend.
3. Our family ..... (used/go) on picnics every Sunday in the park.
4. I ..... (not/used) wear glasses until I started reading a lot.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3
TACKLES	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language
MARK			

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 3

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع
فى نهاية الكتاب.

القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

1. My sister is a ..... .
   a) nurse b) doctor
   c) scientist d) teacher
2. She works in a big ..... .
   a) lab b) school
   c) hospital d) farm
3. She always helps ..... people.
   a) ill b) bad
   c) happy d) sad
4. What did she use to do when she was young?
   a) Ride a bike. b) Play games.
   c) Watch TV. d) Study hard.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

البحيرة ٢٠٢٤

Hani asks Omar about the importance of rubbish collectors.

Hani : What do you think of rubbish collectors?
Omar : (1)..... .
Hani : Heroes! (2).....?
Omar : Because they do something very useful.
Hani : What do they do?
Omar : (3)..... .
Hani : (4).....?
Omar : Yes, they are very important in our society.
Hani : What should we do to help them?
Omar : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

We should all be proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Belbeis, Sharqia. His family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. He also became a doctor like his father. He entered Cairo University. He studied medicine **there**. Then he moved to London. Before he stopped working in 2001, he worked in a special hospital in London. At this hospital, he helped to give people new hearts for the first time. Before the 1980s, people with heart problems often used to die. In 2009, he started a charity, called "Aswan Heart Centre", for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives, but many **ill** children can live healthy lives.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

.....

2. What does the underlined word "**there**" refer to?

.....

3. Why do you think Dr Magdy started a charity for ill children?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The birthplace of Dr Magdy is ..... .
   a) Aswan b) Cairo c) London d) Belbeis
5. The underlined word "**ill**" can have the same meaning as ..... .
   a) healthy b) ugly c) sick d) alive
6. In ....., he started a charity for ill children.
   a) 1980 b) 2000 c) 2009 d) 1935

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... helps people who are sick, poor or don't have a home. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) charity b) concert c) ward d) wedding
2. Dr Magdy Yacoub became an important heart ..... . السويس ٢٠٢٣
   a) patient b) patron c) surgeon d) cleaner
3. The mountain was very high and we all felt ..... at the top. It was a bad experience. البحيرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) scary b) scared c) happy d) tall

4. My father is the person who ..... for our needs.
   a) does b) makes c) buys d) pays
5. Mother likes .....; she usually makes good clothes.
   a) making b) doing c) sewing d) burning
6. The firefighter is a ..... . He saves a lot of people. البحيرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) hero b) beggar c) manager d) servant
7. Eating foods with calcium helps keep our ..... healthy and strong.
   a) bones b) burns c) toys d) dishes
8. He used to live in a village, but now he ..... in the city. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) lived b) used to live c) living d) lives
9. **A:** Why ..... your friends very happy? **B:** Because they passed their exams.
   a) were b) did c) do d) have
10. Where did you ..... go on vacation with your parents? القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) used to b) using to c) use d) use to

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The weather ..... (be) nice yesterday.
2. Baher ..... (lose) his arm in his last accident.
3. The park ..... (use/ have) a big fountain, but they changed it to a playground.
4. She ..... (not/ sing) a song at the show; she told jokes instead.

E Writing

6 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Dina to tell her about your hero. Your name is Yasmin and your email address is yasmin@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is dina@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5	6
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Reading	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK						

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Saher is telling his friend about his trip.

Saher : Good morning, dear friend.

Nader : Good morning. (1)..... last weekend?

a) When did you go
b) Where do you go
c) Where did you go
d) How did you go

Saher : I went on a trip to Alexandria.

Nader : (2).....?

a) Who did you go with
b) How are you
c) How did you go
d) Why did you go

Saher : I went with a lot of our friends. Why didn't you come?

Nader : (3)..... . How was the trip?

a) Because I was happy
b) Because I'm busy
c) Because I like it
d) Because I was busy

Saher : (4)..... .

a) It's great
b) It was great
c) It was bad
d) It's bad

Nader : Did you enjoy your time there?

Saher : (5)..... . I was very happy.

a) Yes, I did
b) No, I didn't
c) Yes, I was
d) No, I wasn't

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. The students ..... (do) a project last week.

a) did
b) does
c) do
d) doing

2. When did your favourite team last ..... (winning) a competition? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) is winning
b) wins
c) won
d) win

3. I ..... (use) ride a bike when I was young.

a) used to
b) used
c) use to
d) use

4. Ancient Egyptian doctors used plants ..... (help) people with burns.

a) to helping
b) to help
c) helps
d) helped

5. I ..... (not/ used) smoke, but now I do.

a) don't use to
b) didn't use to
c) doesn't use to
d) am not used to

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)
Q 2	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)

Review A On Units 1, 2 & 3

Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- Where did you live when you were younger? Who did you live with?

Listen to Dalia talking to her father. Check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 32



Dalia Hi Dad, I'm doing a school project about our family history. Can I ask you some questions?

Dad Of course, what do you want to know?

Dalia Where did you live when you were a child? Was it in Luxor?

Dad No, I moved to (1) Luxor when I was a teenager (2). When I was a child, I used to live in a village outside the city.

Dalia Oh, I see. Who did you live with?

Dad I lived with my mum, dad, my sisters and also my grandparents (3). We used to live in my grandparents' house.

Dalia What time did you usually get up?

Dad Very early! On a school day, I got up at about 4:30 am!

Dalia Really? Why did you get up so early?

Dad Because my school was very far from where we lived. It took me an hour to get there.

Dalia How did you travel to school?

Dad I went on my bike. We didn't have a car then.

Dalia What subjects did and didn't you like at school?

Dad My favourite subject was maths, but I didn't like history.

(1) ينتقل إلى
(2) مراهق
(3) الأجداد

Post-listening question:

- Why did Dalia's father have to wake up early?

Pre-listening question:

- Do you like school trips? Where did you go last time?

Listen and label the picture with the correct names (you do not need to label all the people in the picture). *WB page 93*



My name's Hana. This is a picture of my class. We are walking through an attractive park on a school trip. There are three teachers with us. Our English teacher, Miss Badria, is on the left, near a large lake. I am in the foreground, with my best friends Lamia and Ola. I am in the middle and Lamia is on the right. My twin cousins Azza and Randa are in the background. Azza has a dark blue jumper and a striped school bag.

Post-listening questions:

1 What's the relationship between Azza and Randa?

.....

2 How many teachers are with the students on the trip?

.....

3 Where is Miss Badria standing?

.....

Pre-reading question:

- What do you know about **Antarctica**?

Lesson 2

Read the text again and match the questions 1–3 to the answers a–c.

SB page 33

Life in Antarctica



(a) Why did you come to work in Antarctica?

I **used** to work as a scientist at a university. Then, I saw a job advertisement for scientists to work in Antarctica for a year and **thought** it looked interesting.

(b) What is daily life like in Antarctica?

Some things **are** the same as home!

We usually **get up** at about 7 am. We have breakfast and **do** some exercise. Then we start work at 9 am and **finish** at 5 pm. We eat dinner together and then watch TV, play some games or read.

(c) What is different about life in Antarctica?

At the moment, it is winter, so it is dark all day and night! The weather is very cold and windy. Only 20 people are working here now.

I miss my friends and family, but it is an amazing experience!

Post-reading question:

- Would you like to live in Antarctica? Why/Why not?

Write a reply to this email from a penfriend in Canada. *SB page 33*

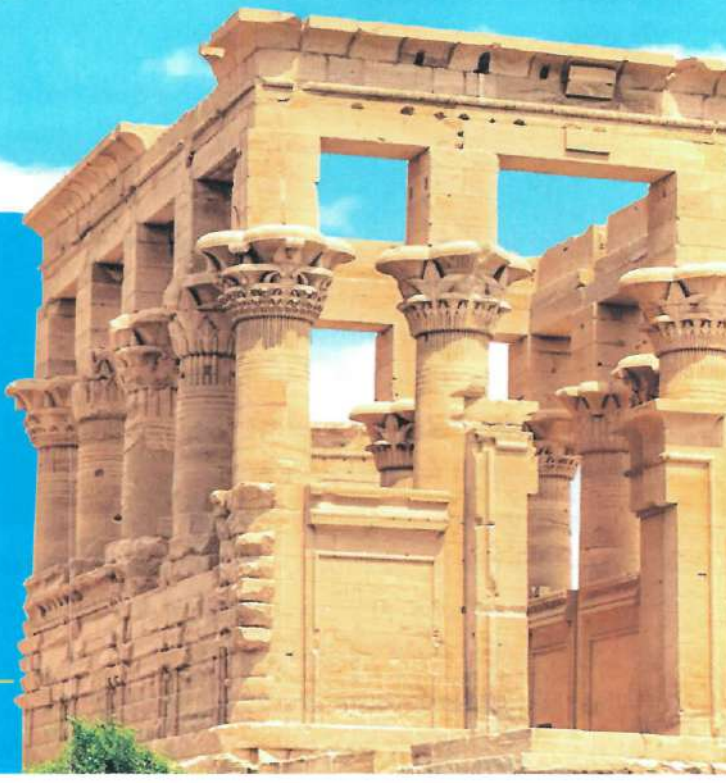
Hi!

How are you? I wanted your help with something. My homework is to write about life for children around the world. I have some questions about life in Egypt when you were a little child. What games did you use to play? What did your favourite toy use to be? What did you use to eat?

I hope you can answer the questions for me.

Write soon!

Max



Unit 4
INTO THE PAST

OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	Reviews of historic places in Egypt; a student's account of Jerash; information about a museum; a text about ancient objects; a text about the Stone Circles of Senegambia
Writing	A paragraph describing a historic place; a report about a historic site
Listening	A talk about a school trip; a talk about a historic place; an account of a trip to a museum; a class debate
Speaking	Describing a historic place; a telephone call asking for information; a debate about the effects of tourism
Language	Past continuous
Life Skills	Self-management; critical thinking
Values	Coexistence values; responsible behaviour
Issues	Environmental and developmental issues

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video

SB pages 34 - 37 | WB pages 95 & 96

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

ancient (adj)	أثرى/قديم جدًا	protect (ed) (v)	يحمى
arch (n)	قوس/قنطرة	race (n)	سباق
awesome (adj)	رائع	recommend (ed) (v)	يرشح/يوصى بـ
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف	ruins (n)	أطلال/أنقاض
castle (n)	قلعة	stadium (n)	استاد
culture (n)	ثقافة	statue (n)	تمثال
guide (n)	مرشد	temple (n)	معبد
historic (adj)	تاريخى	theatre (n)	مسرح
mosque (n)	مسجد	ticket (n)	تذكرة
pray (ed) (v)	يصلى	view (n)	منظر

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

bring (brought) (v)	يحضر	respect (ed) (v/n)	يحترم/احترام
concerning (adj)	بخصوص/متعلق بـ	rule (n)	قاعدة/قانون
object (n)	شىء	sports match (n)	مباراة رياضية
packed lunch (n)	غداء معلّبًا	stone (n)	حجر
picnic lunch (n)	غداء النزهة	time (n)	عصر/عهد

Check Point

Choose and complete: objects - theatre - stadium - ruins

1. I love going to the ..... to watch plays and concerts.
2. The museum has many ancient ..... .
3. We learned about the life of the ancient Egyptians by studying the ..... they left behind.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

drop	litter	يلقى القمامة	leave	straight away	يغادر على الفور
get	a guide	يحصل على مرشد	plan	properly	يخطط بشكل مناسب

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a long drive to	مسافة طويلة بالسيارة إلى	excited about	متحمس بخصوص
a long walk to	مسيرة طويلة إلى	go back to	يعود/يرجع إلى
away from	بعيدًا عن	interested in	مهتم بـ
date to	يرجع تاريخه إلى	entrance to	مدخل لـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten	take	يأخذ	took	taken

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
awesome	رائع	terrible/horrible	فظيع/سيئ جدًا	ancient	قديم/أثرى	modern	حديث
national	قومى/وطنى	international	دولى/عالمى	protect	يحمى	damage	يتلف/يدمر

Check Point

Choose and complete: get - modern - away - forgot - took

1. You should stay ..... from the busy road to be safe.
2. When you visit a new place, make sure to ..... a guide to help you.
3. He went back to his school to bring the book he ..... .
4. The opposite of "ancient" is "..... ".

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **historic (adj)** ذو أهمية تاريخية (له وجود فى التاريخ)/تاريخى
history (n) التاريخ/مادة التاريخ

- I like visiting historic places.
- My favourite subject is history.

2 **arrive at +** (مدرسة/بيت/مكتب/مطار) مكان محدد تمامًا — يصل إلى
arrive in + (بلد/مدينة/قرية) مكان غير محدد

- He arrives at school on time.
- He arrived in Cairo last night.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We will arrive ..... the park in just a few minutes.

a) on b) to c) in d) at

2 We should take more care of our ..... buildings.

a) historic b) history c) historian d) heroic

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

ancient	أثرى/قديم جدًا	very old
arch	قوس/قنطرة	an entrance to another place
awesome	رائع	amazing
castle	قلعة	a place that has very strong walls
guide	مرشد	a person who can show you round(1) a place
historic	تاريخى	important in history
mosque	مسجد	a place that Muslims can pray at
ruins	أطلال	not a complete(2) building
stadium	استاد	a place you can watch a sports match at
statue	تمثال	something you can see in a museum
view	منظر	what you can see from the top(3) of something

(1) حول .....

(2) مكتمل .....

(3) قمة

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
protect	يحمى	save	يحفظ
awesome	رائع	amazing/attractive	مذهل/جذاب

Places and Countries — أماكن وبلاد

Abydos	مدينة أبيدوس (مصر)	Djenne	دجين (مالى)	Lebanon	لبنان
Algeria	الجزائر	Jerash/Petra	جرش/بيترا (الأردن)	Leptis Magna	لبدة الكبرى (ليبيا)
Baalbeck	بعلبك (لبنان)	Jordan	الأردن	Mali	مالى
Djemila	قرية جميلة (الجزائر)	Karnak Temple	معبد الكرنك	Roman	الرومان

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- What do you usually do before going on a school trip?

Listen to the teacher. What is she telling the class about? *SB page 35*



(1) ثقافة (2) يحمى

Teacher I'm sure you're all excited about visiting the Pyramids next Sunday. It's important that we plan our trip properly, so I need to talk to you about rules.

On Sunday morning, you must arrive at school on time so that we can leave straight away. It's a long drive to Giza from the school. We're going to be away from school for the whole day, so you must bring a packed lunch. It's going to be very hot, so you must also bring a hat and a bottle of water.

Of course, the Pyramids are very important to the history and culture[1] of our country. We must help to protect[2] them. You mustn't climb the Pyramids or sit on them. You mustn't drop litter. We must bring all of our rubbish home with us.

So, are there any questions about the trip?

Note:

culture /kʌltʃəʳ/ تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

Post-listening questions:

1. Why do you think we should plan our trip properly?
2. How can we help protect our culture?

Complete the text with *must* or *mustn't*. *WB page 95*



(1) معبد (2) بأمان

(3) غداء النزهة

It is a long walk to the temple[1] so you **must** all listen carefully. It is hot today, so you **must** all wear a hat. You **must** take some water, too. Cars **mustn't** drive on this road so we can walk on it safely[2]. However, you **mustn't** stay on the road and you **must** walk. You **mustn't** run there. When we arrive at the temple, you **mustn't** touch any of the buildings because it is very old. We can eat our picnic lunches[3] after we visit the temple, but you **mustn't** eat in the temple. Finally, you **mustn't** forget to write about what you see!

WB page 96

Complete the review with words or a number from Exercises 1 and 2.

My trip to Petra



I love historic[1] places like Petra in Jordan. It dates to around 300 BCE, so it is more than two thousand years old! You must buy a ticket to visit, but when you are inside, you can walk for a long way through the old city and the views[2] from some of the higher places are awesome[3], but you must be careful! Our guide[4] explained how old the temples are: they are really interesting. I really enjoyed our day there and recommend[5] a visit!

(1) تاريخى (2) مناظر
(3) رائع (4) مرشد
(5) يوصى بـ

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

picnic /pɪknɪk/ awesome /ˈɔːsəm/

Pre-reading question: - Where's the Roman theatre?

Read the reviews and answer the questions.

SB page 36

An amazing day out! ★★★★★



I visited Abydos last week with my cousins. There's so much to see: temples, amazing art and ruins in the desert. I'm not usually very interested in history, but this place is awesome! It's really amazing!

Maged, Cairo

Get a guide ★★★★

The ruins[1] at the Karnak Temple were amazing and we really enjoyed our visit! It's a big place, so you need a few hours to walk around it. It's also a good idea to get a guide to tell you all about the history.

(1) بقايا / أطلال
(2) يتخيل

Leila, Assiut

Go back to Roman times! ★★★★★

I visited the Roman theatre in Alexandria with my cousins last week. It is easy to imagine[2] what life in Roman times was like here. There are also statues and the ruins of a temple in the museum there. It was great fun.

Samir, Giza

Post-reading question:

- Do you think Maged was happy in Abydos? Why/ Why not?

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

statues /ˈstætʃuːz/
ruins /ˈruːɪnz/

Pre-reading question: - What do you know about Jerash?

Lesson 2

Read about Jerash and match the photos A-D to the paragraphs 1-4.

SB page 37

The City of Jerash By Azza

Jerash is a Roman city in Jordan. It is more than 2,000 years old!

When you go there, the first thing you see is the entrance(1) to the city. The arch(2) is very tall. You must buy a ticket before you go in.

The Romans enjoyed watching sport. This stadium(3) is for Roman horse races(4). You can watch races there today.

Jerash has three Roman theatres(5). The biggest theatre is the South Theatre. Five thousand people can sit here.

This temple(6) is on a hill(7). There is an amazing view(8) of the city from here. I think it is important to learn about historic(9) places around the world(10). We must protect(11) them so that people can visit in the future, too.









(1) مدخل
(2) قوس/قنطرة
(3) استاد
(4) سباقات
(5) مسارح
(6) معبد
(7) تل
(8) منظر
(9) تاريخى
(10) العالم
(11) يحمى

Comprehension Skills

- How to guess the meaning of a word: كيفية تخمين معنى كلمة:

1. Read the passage well. اقرأ القطعة جيدًا

2. Look for Clues: Point to words around the unfamiliar word that might help understand its meaning.

ابحث عن دليل يساعدك لفهم الكلمة - اقرأ الكلمات حول الكلمة غير المألوفة لتحاول فهم المعنى يمكن أن تجد كلمات متشابهة للمعنى.

3. Make a Guess: حاول تخمين معنى الكلمة فى النص:

Example: - The city of Petra is awesome! It's really amazing! I enjoyed visiting it.

What does the underlined word "awesome" mean?

بعد قراءة الجملة جيدًا نستنتج أن كلمة awesome تشابه معنى amazing فتكون الإجابة كالتالى:

- The underlined word "awesome" means amazing/beautiful/wonderful.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is a place that has very strong walls.
   a) hut b) castle c) hill d) ruin
2. There is an important football game at the ..... . WB
   a) museum b) mosque c) castle d) stadium
3. At the park, we had a ....., and it was so much fun running with my friends.
   a) race b) view c) rule d) stone
4. Can you ..... a good book for me to read at the weekend?
   a) behave b) touch c) recommend d) take
5. Don't ..... litter on the ground, it's not good for the environment.
   a) plan b) drop c) get d) respect
6. Muslims ..... five times a day.
   a) buy b) behave c) pray d) protect
7. We will go to the park and find the entrance ..... the playground.
   a) from b) at c) for d) to
8. The Karnak ..... is visited by millions of tourists every year.
   a) Race b) Castle c) Temple d) Theatre
9. Good students should ..... properly for their future.
   a) plan b) get c) arrive d) behave
10. The scientists found an object that ..... to the ancient Egyptians.
    a) arrives b) dates c) drops d) reaches
11. Our teacher told us not to forget our ..... lunch for the trip.
    a) excited b) interested c) historic d) packed
12. I am excited ..... going to the park with my family this weekend.
    a) about b) of c) to d) with
13. Young people should ..... old people.
    a) dislike b) leave c) respect d) behave
14. For my birthday, my parents surprised me with a long drive .....
    the amusement park الملاهى.
    a) in b) out c) to d) at
15. My brother is interested ..... playing football like me.
    a) at b) in c) on d) of

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An ..... can be an entrance to another place. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) wall b) arch c) ruin d) castle
2. It is important to learn about ..... places around the world. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) historian b) history c) funny d) historic
3. Polite people always ..... well. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
   a) behave b) read c) shout d) take
4. The broken parts that are left of a building or a city are ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) ruins b) fun c) fans d) runs
5. Good students should follow the school ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) roles b) rules c) lines d) ruin
6. The ..... is the building where you can pray. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
   a) park b) mosque c) hospital d) school
7. You can enjoy watching different plays at the ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) hospital b) theatre c) castle d) garden
8. Visiting the museum was really ..... . We all enjoyed our time. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) tiring b) awesome c) boring d) terrible
9. The Pyramids are important to the history and ..... of our country. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) culture b) fall c) take d) random
10. There is an amazing ..... of the city from the hill. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
    a) review b) site c) view d) sight
11. You must buy your ..... before you enter the theatre. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
    a) scarf b) mask c) ticket d) paper
12. Last year, I visited Karnak with my family. We saw the ..... temples. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
    a) ancient b) new c) difficult d) careless
13. When we arrived at the museum, a ..... was waiting for us. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
    a) statue b) camel c) guide d) guest
14. The word "awesome" means "..... ". المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
    a) boring b) amazing c) terrible d) dangerous

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

must/ mustn't — يجب/ يجب ألا

e.g. We must **listen** carefully to the teacher during class.

Usage and form — الاستخدام والتكوين

Affirmative — الإثبات

We use (must) to talk about necessity and obligation.

تستخدم (must) للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام (ما يجب علينا فعله).

Subject الفاعل + **must** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

I, We, They, You
He, She, It
اسم مفرد، اسم جمع

e.g. - You must **eat** your vegetables to stay healthy.
- Hossam must **finish** his homework before going out to play.

Negative — النفى

We use (mustn't) to say that it is important not to do something.

نستخدم (mustn't + inf.) بمعنى (لا يجب أن) للتعبير عن شىء من المهم ألا نفعله.

Subject الفاعل + **must not (mustn't)** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. - We mustn't **talk** loudly in the library. - Soha mustn't **go** to the club today.

must not (mustn't) = must never

e.g. - Students must never **run** inside the building.

Question — السؤال

Yes/No questions: — السؤال بمعنى هل:

Must + **subject** الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل?

e.g. **A:** Must we **put** rubbish in the bin? **B:** Yes, you must.

Wh- questions: — السؤال بأداة استفهام:

Q. word أداة استفهام + must/mustn't + **subject** الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل?

e.g. **A:** What must/mustn't I **do** in the classroom?
B: You must **listen** to your teachers. / You mustn't **make** noise.

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 You ..... (mustn't) be kind to other people.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (must) لأنه شىء مرغوب فيه.

2 Must we ..... (doing) our homework in the afternoon?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (do) لوجود Must التى يأتى بعدها مصدر الفعل.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Students ..... follow their school rules. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤
   a) mustn't b) doesn't c) must d) shouldn't
2. You ..... do the housework. Our mother is ill. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) have b) mustn't c) must d) shouldn't
3. ..... climb on the wall?
   a) I must b) Must I c) You must d) I mustn't
4. You must always ..... honest and helpful.
   a) am b) is c) are d) be
5. We ..... eat too many crisps. They have too much salt and fat. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) mustn't b) must c) should d) doesn't
6. You ..... swim here. It's against the law. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤
   a) mustn't b) must c) should d) can
7. When ..... get up every morning?
   a) Laila must b) must Laila c) Laila mustn't d) mustn't Laila
8. ..... clean up his room before going outside?
   a) Has he b) He has c) He must d) Must he
9. Kids ..... play with matches.
   a) have b) should c) mustn't d) must
10. You mustn't stay or ..... on this road.
    a) run b) to run c) ran d) running

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You ..... (mustn't) wear a helmet when you ride your bike.
2. Tamer must ..... (gets) ready for the exam. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
3. You ..... (not/must) make noise during the lesson. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
4. If you feel sick, ... (must/you) see a doctor.
5. I must ..... (talking) to you about the new project.
6. What must you ..... (did) before the exams? سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about a historic place

كيفية الكتابة عن مكان تاريخى

- I visited one of the greatest historic places in (اسم المكان/المدينة/البلد).
- It's (وصف المكان).
- I studied about it in my history lessons.
- It was built by (اسم صاحب المبنى).
- It was built in (تاريخ البناء).
- It was built to (سبب البناء).
- It is one of the most awesome historic places.

Writing tips

Use capital letters at the beginning of a sentence, for names, cities, countries and touristic sites.

استخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع بداية الجملة وأسماء الأشخاص والمدن والدول والمعالم السياحية.

Example

A historic place you visited

I visited one of the greatest historic places in India, the Taj Mahal in Agra. I went there with my mum and dad. It is very huge in size. I studied about the Taj Mahal at school, I also saw its pictures. But watching it with my eyes was like a dream that came true. It was built by Shah Jahan around the 1630s. He built it as a gift to his wife, Mumtaz Mahal. It took around 22 years to build. People think that Shah Jahan cut off the hands of the workers who built it so that no similar building could be built. Therefore, this is one of the most awesome historic places.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"An ancient place"

I visited one of the greatest historic places in .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Take a test

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 4 Lessons (1 & 2)

19.5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. Where are they going?
   a) Aswan. b) Luxor.
   c) The Pyramids. d) Alexandria.
2. When are they going?
   a) On Saturday. b) On Sunday.
   c) On Monday. d) On Tuesday.
3. What must they bring?
   a) Snack. b) Dinner.
   c) Breakfast. d) Lunch.
4. Why must they bring a hat?
   a) It's hot. b) It's cool.
   c) It's cold. d) It's good.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Maher is asking Omar about his visit to the Karnak Temple.

Maher : How was your visit to the Karnak Temple?
Omar : (1)..... .
Maher : Great! (2).....?
Omar : I went with my friends.
Maher : I am going there next weekend. What must I do?
Omar : (3)..... . We took a lot of photos.
Maher : (4).....?
Omar : You mustn't touch the objects.
Maher : How can I go there?
Omar : (5)..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When we are out, we must ..... all of our rubbish home with us.
   a) behave b) bring c) protect d) respect
2. A ..... is what you can see from the top of something. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   a) preview b) tourism c) review d) view
3. We collected colourful ..... and made a beautiful design in the sand.
   a) stones b) tickets c) castles d) ruins
4. It's important to ..... our historic places. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤
   a) damage b) prevent c) protect d) cut
5. During the weekend, we're going to the stadium to watch a ..... .
   a) play b) film c) match d) temple

6. We had a long walk ..... the park to play on the swings.
a) of b) out c) to d) back
7. When we get lost, we always use a map to go ..... to the starting point.
a) bake b) back c) away d) way
8. When we are at a museum, we ..... touch the objects. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
a) should b) must c) doesn't d) mustn't
9. She ..... wear a jacket because it's cold outside.
a) mustn't b) must c) must to d) mustn't to
10. Students mustn't ..... their mobile phones during the lessons.
a) use b) used c) using d) uses

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Children mustn't ..... (drawing) on the walls.
2. My friends ..... (must) talk during the film in the cinema.
3. You ..... (mustn't) brush your teeth three times a day. It's good for your teeth.
4. ..... (Hala must) sleep eight hours a day to feel better?

5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"The rules of visiting historic places"

.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1 We're going to be ..... from school for the whole day.
a) way b) way a c) a way d) away
2 I'm interested in the programmes that talk about ..... .
a) history b) historic c) historically d) historian
3 This is a good book. I ..... it to you.
a) order b) ask c) recommend d) advise
4 Do you think ..... meet after school?
a) have we b) we have c) must we d) we must

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK					

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

Watch a video

SB pages 38 - 40 | WB pages 97 & 98

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bowl (n)	سلطانية	mix (ed) (v)	يخلط
chemical (adj/n)	كيميائى/مادة كيميائية	necklace (n)	عقد/قلادة
clay (n)	الطين/الصلصال	oil (n)	البترول/الزيت
coin (n)	عملة معدنية	papyrus (n)	ورق/نبات البردى
design (ed) (v/n)	يصمم/تصميم	pot (n)	إناء/وعاء
figure (n)	شكل (بشرى)	ring (n)	خاتم
huge/ large (adj)	ضخم	repair (ed) (v)	يصلح
ingredients (n)	مكونات/مقادير	tool (n)	أداة
insect (n)	حشرة	vase (n)	زهرية
mask (n)	قناع	web page (n)	صفحة ويب

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

adult (adj/n)	بالغ	mosquitos (n)	ناموس/بعوض
customer (n)	زبون	museum (n)	متحف
decide (d) to (v)	يقرر أن	opening times	مواعيد العمل
doorbell (n)	جرس الباب	popular (adj)	محبوب/شائع
equipment (n)	معدات	station (n)	محطة
except (prep)	ما عدا	ticket office (n)	مكتب التذاكر
mirror (n)	مرآة	ticket officer (n)	موظف التذاكر

Check Point

Choose and complete: customers - oil - stations - web page

1. Mum puts some ..... in the pan to cook eggs for breakfast.
2. The shop is full of ..... because there is a big sale.
3. On the ....., there are colourful pictures and fun stories to read.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

look	> good	يبدو جيدًا	make	> bread/food	يعد خبزًا/طعامًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a ticket for	تذكرة لـ	protect from	يحمى من
run through	يجرى عبر	What's on?	ماذا يُعرض؟
keep away	يُبعِد	take off	يخلع ملابسه/حذاءه
look around	يتجول حول	thanks for	شكرا على

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.	Present		Past simple	P.P.
cost	يكلف	cost	cost	hold	يمسك/يحفظ	held	held
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn	ring	يرن	rang	rung

Check Point

Choose and complete: through - makes - takes - cost

1. The River Nile runs ..... Egypt.
2. Planting flowers in the garden doesn't ..... much, just some soil and seeds.
3. My grandma ..... the best bread.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 "be" made of / "be" made from

يصنع من (المادة الخام موجودة)
يصنع من (تغيرت المادة الخام تمامًا)

- Tables are made of **wood**.
- Glass is made from **sand**.

2 What + is/are + الشىء + made of?

مِمَّ يُصنع...؟ (تسأل عن مادة التصنيع الخام)

- What is this mirror made of?

3 What + (is/are)/(was/were) + الشىء + (used) for?

من أجل ماذا ....؟ (تسأل عن سبب الاستخدام)

- What are mirrors used for?

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Paper is made ..... trees.
   a) at b) out c) from d) of
2. What ..... this chair made of?
   a) does b) do c) are d) is
3. What is clay used .....?
   a) for b) at c) of d) from

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

coins	عملات معدنية	pieces[1] of money made of metal
figure	شكل (بشرى)	a model[2] of a person
mask	قناع	something people wear to cover or protect their face
necklace	عقد/قلادة	jewellery you wear around your neck
tool	أداة	a piece of equipment[3] you can use to make or repair[4] things
vase	زهرية	a pot used for holding[5] flowers

(1) قطع (2) نموذج (3) معدات (4) يصلح (5) تحمل

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة		Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة	
equip (v)	يُعد/يُجهز	-ment	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	equipment (n)	معدات

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word الكلمة		The new word الكلمة الجديدة	
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	popular	شعبى/محبوب	unpopular	غير شعبى/غير محبوب

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 3

SB page 39

Listen to Ahmed's talk about a museum visit. What did he leave at the museum?

Ahmed Last Tuesday, I went to the Museum of Islamic Art[1] with my family. While we were waiting to go into the museum[2], I saw my friend Amir with his mum and dad! While my parents were buying the tickets, Amir and I decided what we wanted to see first.



(1) متحف الفن الإسلامى (2) متحف (3) تصميمات

While we were looking around the museum, Amir and I found some tall doors with amazing designs[3] on them. They were very interesting, so I wanted a photo. I put my bag on the floor while I was taking the photo.

We stayed in the museum for two hours before we went home. While we were travelling home, Amir phoned me. He had my bag – I left it in the museum! We got home an hour later. Amir arrived while I was taking off my shoes! He gave me my bag.

Lesson 3

Put the dialogue in the correct order. *WB page 97*





Ticket officer Good morning, City Museum. How can I help you?

Customer Good morning. Can you tell me what times the museum is open?

Ticket officer Certainly. We open from 9:30 to 6:30 every day except Friday. We close then.

Customer I'd like to know how much a ticket for two adults and one child is, please.

Ticket officer Of course. Adults are 150 pounds and children under 12 are 75 pounds.

Customer Can I buy the tickets at the museum?

Ticket officer Yes, or you can buy them online.

Customer Thank you for your help. Goodbye.

Lesson 4

Listen and match these modern objects a–d to the descriptions 1–4. *WB page 98*

1 **Speaker** These are made of wood. People use them to play a game.

2 **Speaker** These are usually made of plastic. They help to protect your eyes from the sun.

3 **Speaker** These are made of glass or wood. They help to keep away insects.

4 **Speaker** This is made of metal and plastic. People use it to mix ingredients when they are cooking.

Note:

ingredient /ɪngri:diənt/ تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:









Pre-reading question:

- Name three things that the Ancient Egyptians used and we also use them nowadays.

Read about objects in Ancient Egypt. Why did people draw squares on the floor?

SB page 40

Objects from Egypt's past

Objects[1] from the past can help us to understand what life was like many years ago. They can also show us that we use many of the same objects today!

In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors[2] to help them paint around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good: the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects[3]. The mirrors were metal and had interesting designs[4]. Where do you have mirrors in your home?

The Ancient Egyptians used pots[5] and bowls[6] for making food such as bread. These objects were made of clay[7], which came from the River Nile. While some people were mixing[8] ingredients[9] for bread in bowls, other people used large stones to mix the ingredients in a bowl. How do we make bread today?

Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like senet[10]. Senet boxes have 30 squares. This box is made of wood and is about 3,500 years old. Some people did not have senet boxes, but they still played the game. They drew the squares on the floor. What games are popular[11] in Egypt today?

(1) أشياء
(2) مرايا
(3) حشرات
(4) تصميمات
(5) أوان
(6) سلطانيات
(7) طين الصلصال
(8) يخلط
(9) مقادير/مكونات
(10) السينيت (لعبة تشبه الشطرنج)
(11) شعبي/مشهور







Post-reading question:

- Mirrors played an important role in Ancient Egypt. Explain.

Comprehension Skills

مهارة تخمين معنى كلمة:

Guessing meaning:

- Last week, I visited the Citadel in Cairo. It's an important monument. It has very tall towers.

What does the underlined word "monument" mean?

اقرأ الجمل جيدًا واهتم بقراءة الجملة التى تسبق الكلمة والتى تليها وفسر لما تشير الضمائر فستستنتج أن:

- The Citadel is an important monument.

ومن هنا نستنتج أن الكلمة ربما تشير إلى مبنى قديم.

Answer: The underlined word "monument" means something which was built a very long time ago.

لاحظ: يمكن أن يسألك أيضًا على عكس معنى كلمة فقم بقراءة السؤال جيدًا.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We visited the museum and the guide took us to look ..... it.
   a) for b) at c) between d) around
2. The ..... of the book cover caught my eye. It's wonderful.
   a) pot b) design c) figure d) oil
3. There is a huge statue in front of the museum. It's very ..... .
   a) fast b) chemical c) large d) small
4. Some ..... even have a camera, so you can see who is at the door.
   a) doorbells b) equipment c) masks d) squares
5. I phoned to ask about the ..... times of the museum.
   a) open b) opens c) opened d) opening
6. I go to school every day ..... Friday and Saturday.
   a) through b) except c) around d) off
7. Mum always uses healthy ..... for cooking our food.
   a) sports b) coins c) ingredients d) chemicals
8. Bees and ants are ..... . WB
   a) insects b) birds c) animals d) stones
9. Football is the most ..... sport all over the world.
   a) open b) adult c) huge d) popular
10. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... and bowls for making food in.
    a) bits b) pots c) bats d) puts
11. My mother always asks me to take my shoes ..... before going into the flat.
    a) off b) of c) at d) from
12. I wanted to buy a ticket, so I went to the ticket ..... .
    a) box b) square c) office d) state
13. Doctors and scientists use ..... to create medicines that help us feel better when we're sick.
    a) papyrus b) chemicals c) mosquitos d) masks
14. My grandma used a wooden ..... to mix the ingredients for the cake.
    a) mirror b) coin c) insect d) bowl
15. We went to the ..... to take the train.
    a) station b) square c) museum d) doorbell

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... are pieces of money made of metal. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) Cans b) Pots c) Coins d) Bowls
2. She ..... the ingredients in big bowls yesterday. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤
   a) mixed b) fixed c) painted d) covered
3. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... for writing. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤
   a) papyrus b) wood c) wool d) paper
4. Rana looks at the ..... to see herself in the new dress. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) ward b) carpet c) curtain d) mirror
5. This chemical helps to keep ..... mosquitos. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
   a) away b) with c) by d) up
6. A ..... is a piece of jewellery you wear on your finger. قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) vase b) necklace c) mask d) ring
7. The Ancient Egyptians made pots and bowls of ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) papyrus b) clay c) wood d) paper
8. Miss Amal used to wear a gold ..... around her neck. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) necklace b) ring c) mask d) bracelet
9. A/An ..... is a model of a person. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
   a) figure b) mask c) arch d) necklace
10. A ..... is a pot used for holding flowers. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
    a) vase b) mask c) tool d) necklace
11. Our phone is broken. Can you ..... it? الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
    a) make b) do c) mix d) repair
12. Girls prefer to wear modern clothes to ..... good. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) take b) do c) make d) look
13. A ..... is a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair things. الصوم ٢٠٢٢
    a) coin b) mask c) tool d) vase
14. You will frighten the baby by wearing that ..... . البحيرة ٢٠٢٤
    a) bowl b) mirror c) mask d) insect

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

e.g. Dalia was watching TV at 5 yesterday.

Usage الاستخدام

We use the past continuous to talk about events that were in progress at a certain time during the past.

- يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث كانت مستمرة فى وقت محدد فى الماضى.

e.g. • Ali was playing football all day yesterday.
• Dina and Hossam were playing tennis at 10:30 yesterday.

Form التكوين

I, He, She, It (اسم مفرد)	was (was not)	
You, We, They (اسم جمع)	were (were not)	

inf. مصدر الفعل **+ ing**

e.g. - I was playing in the park. - We were building a sandcastle.
- The bird was not (wasn't) singing. - The students were not (weren't) shouting.

يتم اختصار was not إلى wasn't و were not إلى weren't.

Question السؤال

1. Yes/No questions

- السؤال بمعنى (هل):

Was / Were	>	I/ he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد they/ we/ you/ اسم جمع	+ inf. مصدر الفعل + ing?

A: Was Aya sleeping? **B:** Yes, she was. / **B:** No, she wasn't.
A: Were they watching TV? **B:** Yes, they were. / **B:** No, they weren't.

2. Wh- questions

- السؤال بأداة استفهام:

Q.word أداة استفهام	> was / were	>	I/ he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد they/ we/ you/ اسم جمع	+ inf. مصدر الفعل + ing?

A: What were you doing at 5:00 yesterday? **B:** I was playing football.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

While/As أثناء - بينما / When عندما

- نستخدم (While/ As/ When) للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا فى الماضى (الماضى المستمر) حين قطعه حدث آخر (الماضى البسيط).

1. While/As:

While/ As	past continuous,	past simple
Past simple	while/as	past continuous

e.g. - As/While we were walking into the museum, we saw some old statues.
- Grandfather arrived while/as mum was cooking.

2. When:

When	past simple,	past continuous
Past continuous	when	past simple

e.g. - When it rained, I was cycling to school.
- My father was reading a book when my mum called him.

لاحظ

١- إذا استمر الفعلان معًا فى نفس الوقت، نستخدم الماضى المستمر للجملتين مع While.

While	past continuous,	past continuous

e.g. - While I was studying, my mother was cooking dinner.

٢- يمكن حذف الفاعل بعد (While) وكتابة الفعل مضافًا إليه (ing) إذا كان الفاعل واحدًا للجملتين.

While	v.ing,	subject الفاعل + past simple

e.g. - While playing, I fell down.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 I ..... (play) the guitar when he came home.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (was playing) لوجود when التى يأتى قبلها ماضٍ مستمر.

2 My kids ..... (not/cycle) all day yesterday. They were studying.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (weren't cycling) لوجود all day yesterday ويأتى معها ماضٍ مستمر.

3 While I was listening to music, my sister ..... (tidy) up her room.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (was tidying) لأن الفعلان مستمران فى نفس الوقت ولوجود While فنضع الأفعال فى الماضى المستمر.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. While I ..... for the bus, I saw my friend Amir with his mum.
   a) am waiting b) waited c) was waiting d) were waiting
2. My dad ..... while I was playing the piano.
   a) arrived b) was arriving c) arrives d) arrive
3. My sister ..... yesterday evening. She was reading a book.
   a) was sleeping b) wasn't sleeping c) slept d) didn't sleep
4. ..... we were looking around the museum, we saw amazing designs.
   a) After b) Before c) Until d) While
5. The children ..... all the afternoon yesterday.
   a) play b) playing c) were playing d) played
6. I was listening to music yesterday ..... the phone rang.
   a) when b) while c) as d) for
7. My parents were shopping when Amir and I ..... what we wanted to see first.
   a) were deciding b) was deciding c) decide d) decided
8. As I ..... for my maths test, my friend phoned me.
   a) were studying b) was studying c) studied d) studies
9. We ..... a film at seven last night.
   a) watch b) watching c) were watching d) watched
10. While ..... home, I met my friend, Taher.
    a) going b) was going c) went d) go

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mum ..... (cook) dinner while I was cleaning my room.
2. My father and I ..... (wash) our car all afternoon.
3. The cat was ..... (sleep) quietly on the floor.
4. I ..... (putting) my bag on the floor while I was taking the photo.
5. What ..... (you/do) at 5 o'clock yesterday?
6. The birds ..... (singing) happily when we went for a walk.

Time to Practise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. While he ....., he fell down. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) running b) was running c) is running d) ran
2. As I was reading the book, the phone ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) ring b) rings c) rang d) ringing
3. My mother was cooking ..... my father came. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) when b) while c) as d) which
4. The telephone rang while Tamer ..... doing his homework. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) was b) is c) were d) are
5. While I was watching the final World Cup match, Mum ..... a cake. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) makes b) made c) is making d) was making
6. While ..... to the park, I saw a terrible accident. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) going b) was going c) went d) goes
7. While we ..... the film, our uncle visited us. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
   a) watch b) were watching c) are watching d) will watch
8. While Sara ....., the doorbell rang. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) study b) studied c) studies d) was studying
9. As Kareem and I ..... photos, we lost his phone. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) were taking b) takes c) took d) taking
10. While he ....., a shark attacked him. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) was swimming b) swim c) swimming d) swam

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What were you doing when I ..... (phone) you? المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
2. As we ..... (walk) into the museum, we saw some huge statues. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
3. Heba was playing ..... (while) her mother called her. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
4. We were looking around the museum when Amir ..... (finds) some tall doors. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
5. I was reading a book while mum ..... (cook). الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣
6. While I ..... (eat), I heard a voice outside. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

D Skills

1. Speaking

Asking for information on the phone طلب معلومات عبر الهاتف

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف **Response** جملة الرد

online

١- عند عرض المساعدة:

How can I help you? كيف يمكننى مساعدتك؟

I'd like to know what time the museum is open.
أود معرفة موعد فتح المتحف.

٢- عند السؤال عن موعد فتح الأماكن:

Can you tell me what time the museum is open?
هل يمكن أن تخبرنى عن مواعيد المتحف؟

It's open daily from 8 a.m. to 3 p.m.
إنه مفتوح من الساعة الثامنة صباحًا إلى الثالثة عصرًا.

٣- عند السؤال عن السعر أو الثمن:

I'd like to know how much a ticket for two adults and one child is, please. أريد أن أعرف سعر التذكرة لفردين وطفل من فضلك.

It's 20 pounds for adults. Children under 5 are free.
إنها بعشرين جنيهًا للبالغين ومجانية للأطفال تحت سن خمس سنوات.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Khaled is talking to the ticket officer. ضباط ٢٠٢٤

Ticket officer : Good morning. City Museum. How can I help you?
Khaled : (1)..... ?
Ticket officer : We open from 9:30 to 6:30 every day, but we close on Friday.
Khaled : (2)..... ?
Ticket officer : The ticket is 120 pounds.
Khaled : Can I buy the tickets at the museum?
Ticket officer : (3)..... . You can also buy them online.
Khaled : Is it cheaper to buy the ticket online?
Ticket officer : (4)..... .
Khaled : (5)..... .

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about homes today

كيفية الكتابة عن منازل اليوم

- Our homes today are more (صفة) than they were before.
- I live in a/an .... (صفة) house.
- It's (موقعه).
- There are many objects which we use in the house.
- We use (اسم الشىء المستَخدَم).
- We use it to (السبب).
- Next to (الشىء), there is (شىء آخر).
- I like my house a lot.

Writing tips

Before writing, you need to think of ideas relevant to the topic.

- قبل البدء فى الكتابة، يجب أن تبحث عن أفكار مرتبطة بالموضوع.

Example

From : rawda@student.com
To : fatma@student.com
Subject : My home

Hi Fatma,

How are you? I want to tell you about my home. Our homes today are more modern than they were before, and they will get smarter. I live in a quite small but beautiful home. My home is near the river, so fresh and cool air comes to our home. There are many important objects which we use in our home. In the centre of my bedroom, there is a large bed. Next to the bed, there is a table with a vase of flowers. There is a large wardrobe to the left of my bed with a computer table, cupboards and shelves built into it. The kitchen is a place where there are many objects. A mixer is used for mixing food. The mixer is made of metal and plastic. A kettle is a metal container which is used for boiling water. I really love my home.

Write soon.
Rawda

Check Point

Write an email to your friend Tarek telling him about your home. Your name is Malek and your email address is malek@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is tarek@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The Ancient Egyptians made many amazing and interesting objects. These objects help us learn about the people who lived long ago. One of the most famous objects is the Sphinx. It is a statue which has the body of a lion and the head of a pharaoh. People believe that the Ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx to protect the Pyramids!

The Ancient Egyptians had mirrors too! But **theirs** were made of shiny metal. People used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes to protect their eyes from the sun and keep away insects.

They also loved to make pots and bowls. They were made out of clay which came from the River Nile and painted with ***bright*** colours. People used them to make food such as bread.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. Why do you think the Ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx?

.....

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**theirs**" refer to?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The head of the Sphinx is of a ..... .
   a) statue b) lion c) man d) bird
5. The Ancient Egyptians took the clay from the ..... .
   a) river b) ocean c) lake d) sea
6. The opposite of "***bright***" is "..... ".
   a) shiny b) awesome c) nice d) dark

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors to ..... around their eyes.
   a) mend b) fix c) paint d) mix
2. ..... teach children important life lessons to help them grow up happy and strong.
   a) Kids b) Infants c) Adults d) Babies
3. We ..... tidy up our room before going out to play with friends.
   a) took off b) thanked for c) decided to d) protected from
4. A chef uses cooking ....., like pots and pans to make delicious meals.
   a) coin b) mask c) tool d) equipment

5. The Ancient Egyptians made pots ..... clay. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
a) of b) from c) off d) about
6. The ..... at the theatre helps you buy tickets to watch your favourite plays.
a) ticket officer b) customer c) buyer d) adult
7. Thanks ..... being kind and making me smile.
a) to b) of c) for d) with
8. While ..... my homework, I fell asleep. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
a) was doing b) did c) doing d) do
9. Why were you ..... on a chair when I came into the room?
a) standing b) stand c) stood d) to stand
10. ..... texting her friends when you went in?
a) Did she b) She did c) She was d) Was she

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What ..... (did) your mother doing this morning?
2. I ..... (not/read) a book yesterday evening.
3. While we were shopping in the market, I ..... (see) my friends. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
4. My sisters ..... (watch) TV while I was listening to music.

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Asmaa to tell her about objects from the past. Your name is Huda and your email address is huda@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is asmaa@gmail.com.

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. I got ..... after we spent good time.
a) home b) at home c) to home d) the home
2. Objects from the past can help us to understand what life was ..... .
a) a like b) such as c) as d) like

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The children were laughing and ..... (play) together.
2. While ..... (sleep), I had a bad dream.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4
TACKLES	Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK				

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

Watch a video

SB pages 41 & 42 | WB pages 99 & 100

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	pharaoh (n)	فرعون
damage (d) (v)	يدمر/يضر/يتلف	report (n)	تقرير
debate (n)	مناقشة/مناظرة	ruler (n)	حاكم
environment (n)	البيئة	stone (n)	حجر
holiday company (n)	شركة لتنظيم الإجازات	tourism (n)	السياحة
local people (n)	السكان المحليون	valuable (adj)	قيّم
monuments (n)	آثار	war (n)	حرب
needle (n)	إبرة/مسلة		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

across (prep)	عبر	nearly (adv)	تقريبًا
area (n)	منطقة	pollute (d) (v)	يلوث
cause (d) (v)	يسبب	special (adj)	خاص/مميز
electric bus (n)	أتوبيس كهربائي	storm (n)	عاصفة
fact (n)	حقيقة	tourist (n)	سائح
injure (d) (v)	يصيب/يؤذي/يؤلم	weigh (ed) (v)	يزن

Check Point

Choose and complete: weighed - wars - polluted - Pharaohs

1. ..... built huge pyramids as tombs مقابر for themselves.
2. I bought a fish that ..... two kg.
3. People get hurt in ....., so it's important to find ways to make peace السلام.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

follow > rules/signs	يتبع القواعد/اللافتات	make > pollution	يسبب تلوثًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

forms of transport	أشكال/أنواع النقل	plan for	خطة لـ
get to	يصل إلى	walk up	يصعد
happen to	يحدث لـ	watch out	يحترس من

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
agree	يتفق	disagree	لا يتفق
war	حرب	peace	سلام

Check Point

Choose and complete: disagree - for - to - make

1. Using too many plastic bags can ..... pollution in the soil.
2. Families might ..... on what TV show to watch on TV.
3. They are discussing their plan ..... the next trip.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر والكلمات وعكسها.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
agree	يوافق	accept	يقبل
remain	يظل/يبقى	stay	يظل/يبقى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
pollute (v)	يلوث	-ion		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		pollution (n)	تلوث
value (n)	قيمة	-able		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		valuable (adj)	قيّم

Places and Countries — أماكن وبلاد

Cleopatra's Needle	مسلة كليوباترا	the River Gambia	نهر جامبيا
Gambia	جامبيا (دولة إفريقية)	the River Thames	نهر التايمز
Senegal	السنغال (دولة إفريقية)	the Stone Circles of Senegambia	الدوائر الحجرية فى سينجامبيا

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question: - Why do you think tourism is important?

Listen again and complete the conversation. *SB page 41*



Amira What do you think, Hana? Is tourism (1) good for historic (2) places?

Hana Yes, Amira, **I think it is**. Tourists bring money to an area (3). This helps the local people (4).

Amira **I don't think so**. A lot of the money goes to big companies, not local people.

Hana **Maybe**, but some holiday companies help the environment (5) and the local people.

Amira **I don't agree** that tourism helps the environment. Tourists drop litter (6) and damage (7) places in other ways, like sitting on ancient ruins.

Hana **I see what you mean**, but most tourists behave (8) well. They know it's important to protect historic places.

(1) السياحة
(2) تاريخى
(3) منطقة
(4) السكان المحليون
(5) البيئة
(6) القمامة
(7) يدمر/يتلف
(8) يتصرف

Post-listening question:

- From your point of view, how can we protect historic places?

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- Where do you stay when you travel to another country?

Listen to check your answers, then role-play the conversation. *WB page 99*



Fady Do you think this plan for a new hotel is a good idea, Baher?

Baher I don't think so. It only has jobs for people in the city.

Fady I don't agree. More tourists in the area can help the local people.

Baher Maybe, but what about the water? Taking water from the lake will damage the environment.

Fady I see what you mean. It's important to protect the environment.

Post-listening question: - Who do you agree with, Fady or Baher? Why?

Read the email and write the missing sentences a-c in the right places.

Lesson 5

WB page 99



While we were visiting the beach last month, we decided it was a great place to build a new hotel. *The hotel will give work to a lot of people.* We are a big company, so we can ask people from our city hotels to work here in the summer. *We can use the water from the lake for the new hotel.* There is not much water near the beach at the moment, but while we were driving to the area, we saw a big lake. *This is the time when the hotel will be busy.* Let me know what you think of our plan.

Pre-reading question: - What do you know about the stone circles?

Lesson 6

Read the report and look at the photos. Where are the stone circles and what do you think they can tell us?

SB page 42

Report on the Stone Circles of Senegambia

Where are the stone circles?

- There are more than 1,000 Stone Circles[1] of Senegambia. They follow the River Gambia for 350 kilometres across two countries: Senegal and Gambia.



Stone circles at Sine Ngayene, Senegal

Why are the stone circles important?

- The stone circles are very important to the history of Senegal and Gambia. They tell us about the people who made them and how they lived.

How old are the stone circles?

- The oldest stone circles are around 2,300 years old and the youngest are around 500 years old. This means that people were building the circles for more than 1,800 years.

Can tourists visit them?

- Tourists can visit them, but they must not damage[2] them. Money from tourism[3] helps to pay for local people[4] to look after the stones. It is important to protect[5] the stones.

(1) الدوائر الحجرية
(2) يتلف/يضر
(3) السياحة
(4) السكان المحليون
(5) يحمى

Post-reading questions:

1. Do you think the stone circles are important? Why/ Why not?
2. How can tourism help local people?
3. How old are the stone circles?

Pre-reading question: - Have you ever heard about Cleopatra's Needle?

Read the report and match the parts 1-5 with the headings a-e.

WB page 100

Report on Cleopatra's Needle

Where is Cleopatra's Needle?

Cleopatra's Needle[1] is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it. You can see it next to the River Thames in London, England.

(1) مسلة كليوباترا

(2) يزن

(3) عاصفة

How old is it?

The Ancient Egyptians made the stone for Pharaoh Thutmose III and it is about 3,500 years old.



How big is it?

The stone is more than 20 metres high and weighs[2] about 200,000 kilograms.

How did it get to this country?

The British made a special ship for the stone in 1877. While the ship was travelling to London, it nearly sank in a storm[3]. Another ship helped the stone to arrive in England a year later.

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Thames /temz/ Pharaoh /'feərəʊ/

Post-reading questions:

1. Why do you think the first ship sank?
2. What is Cleopatra's Needle?
3. How high is the stone?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can have a ..... about how we can help clean our beaches.
   a) complaint b) date c) debate d) disagreement
2. The last ..... was from the year 1900 to the year 1999.
   a) century b) area c) hotel d) storm
3. Money from tourism helps to pay for ..... people. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) cultural b) global c) world d) local
4. Save energy by turning off lights to help the ..... .
   a) pharaoh b) report c) tourism d) environment
5. Factories need to be careful to avoid ..... the water with chemicals.
   a) causing b) injuring c) polluting d) weighing
6. Egypt has many ..... that tourists like to visit. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) rules b) bakeries c) rivers d) monuments
7. It's important to ..... rules, so we can stay safe.
   a) behave b) follow c) flow d) break
8. Stop playing here or you might ..... that car. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) hurt b) injure c) damage d) collect
9. Mohammed Ali was the ..... of Egypt in the past. He was very important. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) ruler b) roller c) baker d) waiter
10. Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important ..... with beautiful designs on it. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) stone b) sand c) wool d) cotton
11. ..... brings a lot of money to our country. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
    a) War b) Damage c) Tourism d) Pollution
12. A lot of ..... information can be found in this book. It's very useful.
    a) bad b) valuable c) strange d) useless
13. Ali's uncle works for a big oil ..... in Saudi Arabia. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
    a) work b) company c) job d) coffee
14. My mother cooked a ..... meal to my grandpa. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) busy b) local c) private d) special
15. We sew clothes using a ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
    a) stone b) map c) needle d) debate

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Asking for and giving opinions السؤال عن وإبداء الرأى

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

online

١- السؤال عن الرأى وكيفية الرد:

What do you think, Abbas? Is tourism good for historic places?
ما رأيك يا عباس؟ هل السياحة مفيدة للأماكن التاريخية؟

I don't think so. Tourists often travel by car. This makes more pollution.
لا أعتقد ذلك. يسافر السائحون غالبًا بالسيارة، وهذا يؤدى إلى زيادة التلوث.

Do you think it's important to protect historic places?
هل تعتقد أنه من المهم حماية الأماكن الأثرية؟

Yes. I think so.
نعم. أعتقد ذلك.

٢- التعبير عن الرأى والرد:

I think that tourists damage places in other ways.
أعتقد أن السائحين يسببون ضررًا للأماكن بطرق مختلفة.

I agree/don't agree with you.
أتفق/لا أتفق معك فى ذلك.

I see what you mean.
أفهم ما تعنيه.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Lora and Andy are talking about the new hotel.

Lora : What do you think about building a hotel in our city?
Andy : I'm not sure. (1).....?
Lora : Yes, I think so. This hotel is very important for our city.
Andy : (2).....?
Lora : Because a hotel will bring more tourists to our city.
Andy : (3)..... .
Lora : Why don't you agree?
Andy : (4)..... .
Lora : Maybe it will make our city busy, but I think it will also bring more jobs.
Andy : (5)..... . But I think our city is already beautiful the way it is.

Take a test

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 4 Lessons (5 & 6)

7.5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Amira and Hana are having a discussion about the importance of tourism. SB

Amira : What do you think, Hana? Is tourism good for historic places?
Hana : Yes, I think it is.
Amira : (1)..... ?
Hana : Because tourists bring money to an area. This helps the local people.
Amira : (2)..... .
Hana : Why not?
Amira : (3)..... .
Hana : Maybe, but some holiday companies help the environment and the local people.
Amira : (4)..... . Tourists drop rubbish and damage places.
(5)..... ?
Hana : I see what you mean, but most tourists behave well.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Choose a topic you love, and then write a ..... about it.
a) report b) debate c) ruler d) war
2. Playing with matches can ..... a fire, so it's not safe.
a) damage b) cause c) injure d) pollute
3. I want to know what happened ..... your father last night.
a) to b) in c) under d) with
4. The opposite of "war" is "..... ".
a) peace b) love c) silence d) quietness
5. While I ..... out rubbish, my father came. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) take b) took c) was taking d) taking
6. I was doing my homework and my mother and father ..... at work. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
a) were b) was c) are d) is

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Dad ..... (repair) my bike last weekend.
2. I ..... (painting) when it started to rain.
3. Mum ..... (cleaned) the house all day yesterday.
4. You ..... (must) hit or hurt others.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3
TACKLES	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language
MARK			

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 4

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع
فى نهاية الكتاب.

الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

1. What game did the Ancient Egyptians like?
   a) Football. b) Basketball.
   c) Handball. d) Senet.
2. How many squares do senet boxes have?
   a) 60. b) 30.
   c) 40. d) 50.
3. What is the senet box made of?
   a) Metal. b) Plastic.
   c) Wood. d) Glass.
4. Where did they draw the squares?
   a) On the wall. b) On the floor.
   c) On the door. d) On the window.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sandy asks Maya to help her with the school project.

Sandy: Can you help me with my project? We have a class debate.
Maya : Yes, of course! (1).....?
Sandy: It's about technology and our world.
Maya : (2).....?
Sandy: I think it wastes our time.
Maya : (3)..... . It makes our world better.
Sandy: (4).....! But some people use it badly.
Maya : Maybe. We must advise people how to use it.
Sandy: Do you think they will listen to us?
Maya : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

Cleopatra's Needle is the obelisk that stands on the Thames Embankment in London. They moved it from Egypt to London in 1877. While the ship was travelling to London, it nearly sank in a storm. Another ship helped the stone to arrive in England a year later. It is one of three similar ancient Egyptian obelisks, with the other two in Paris and New York. The obelisk was erected on 12 September 1878. They built two bronze sphinxes beneath it in 1881. The Sultan of Egypt and Sudan, Mohammed Ali, presented the obelisk to the British in 1819. However, it was not until 1877 that Cleopatra's Needle finally arrived in the UK. The Ancient Egyptians made it for the pharaoh Thutmose II and it is about 3,500 years old. The Needle weighed over 200 tons.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text? .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to? .....
3. Do you think it's right to present one of our monuments to another country? Why? Why not? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Cleopatra's Needle arrived in London in ..... .
   a) 1877 b) 1878 c) 1881 d) 1890
5. There are ..... statues next to Cleopatra's Needle in London.
   a) no b) two c) three d) four
6. A ton is one ..... .
   a) hundred kg b) hundred gm
   c) thousand kg d) thousand gm

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should ..... well when you visit historic places in other countries. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) behave b) enter c) imagine d) recommend
2. A ..... is a person who can show you round a place. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) cook b) waiter c) tourist d) guide
3. Muslims build ..... to pray in. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) statues b) ruins c) castles d) mosques

4. Rulers used to live in ..... and have a lot of guards.
a) castles b) mosques c) stadiums d) theatres

5. Tourists often travel by cars. It causes more ..... .
a) tourism b) population c) pollution d) environment

6. Dropping rubbish into the river ..... the wildlife. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
a) protects b) cleans c) damages d) recycles

7. Some projects in the area help ..... people to find jobs easily.
a) cultural b) local c) historical d) natural

8. You ..... eat inside the castle. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
a) have b) must c) should d) mustn't

9. My family and I ..... dinner at 8 pm last night.
a) ate b) was eating c) were eating d) eat

10. While he ..... to school, he saw his friend. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) walked b) walks c) was walking d) walk

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You must ..... (are) polite to your teachers. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
2. Where ..... (you/go) when I met you?
3. As Karim ..... (take) photos of the animals, he lost his phone. WB
4. Samar and Nadia were watching TV when they ..... (hear) a loud noise.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Ancient Egyptians' objects" WB

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5	6
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Reading	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK						

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

An interviewer is asking Abdullah about his job.

Interviewer : What must you do at home when you are free?

Abdullah : (1).....

a) I mustn't sleep. b) I must help Mum.

c) I could visit dad. d) I couldn't see.

Interviewer : (2).....

a) Were you working at night? b) Are you working at night?

c) Did you work at night? d) Must you work at night?

Abdullah : Yes, I must work at night once every three weeks.

Interviewer : How many hours must you work a day?

Abdullah : (3).....

a) Five hours. b) Five days. c) Five months. d) Five years.

Interviewer : Did you have any training before you started?

Abdullah : (4)..... . I had lots of training before I started work.

a) No, I didn't b) Yes, I did c) Yes, I must d) No, I wasn't

Interviewer : (5).....

a) Where is your job? b) How is your job?

c) What's the most difficult part of your job?

d) What's the least difficult part of your job?

Abdullah : Well, the most difficult part of my job is that I must get up very early.

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... (we/must) go to the cinema tonight?

a) Must we b) We must c) We mustn't d) Mustn't

2. We ..... (must) forget our books.

a) haven't b) weren't c) didn't d) mustn't

3. Gamal ..... (not/work) in the garden at 10 pm last night.

a) isn't working b) wasn't working c) doesn't work d) didn't work

4. Was it raining when you ..... (go) out?

a) goes b) went c) were going d) gone

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a) (b) (c) (d)	2 (a) (b) (c) (d)	3 (a) (b) (c) (d)	4 (a) (b) (c) (d)	5 (a) (b) (c) (d)
Q 2	1 (a) (b) (c) (d)	2 (a) (b) (c) (d)	3 (a) (b) (c) (d)	4 (a) (b) (c) (d)	

Module 2 Question Bank On Units 3&4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A) Mr Ahmed is calling the Egyptian Museum. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

A man : Good morning, how can I help you?
Mr Ahmed : Hello! (1).....?
A man : Sure, we open at 9:00 a.m. and close at 5:00 p.m. every day.
Mr Ahmed : (2).....?
A man : A ticket costs 30 pounds.
Mr Ahmed : (3).....?
A man : Yes, and the tickets are cheaper on the museum website, too.
Mr Ahmed : Can I use my camera?
A man : (4)..... . But you have to buy a ticket of 50 pounds for that.
Mr Ahmed : (5)..... .

B) Hana and Nada are talking about the summer holiday. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

Hana : Where did you go last summer?
Nada : (1)..... .
Hana : Where did you stay?
Nada : (2)..... .
Hana : (3).....?
Nada : We travelled by car.
Hana : Did you swim in the sea?
Nada : (4)..... .
Hana : (5).....?
Nada : We stayed there for a week.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should ..... our temples and ruins. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) protect b) destroy c) steal d) damage
2. We can see plays at the ..... . الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) castle b) mosque c) temple d) theatre
3. I bought a ..... to put flowers in it. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) necklace b) statue c) mask d) vase
4. Dropping rubbish ..... the environment. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) behaves b) damages c) collects d) cleans
5. She helped to look ..... poor children in Egypt from 1920 to 1969. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) for b) in c) from d) after
6. I should arrive ..... London at 6 tomorrow morning. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) of b) in c) to d) at

7. A ..... is an organisation that helps the poor. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤

a) hospital b) school c) bank d) charity

8. The nurse is a ..... . She saved a lot of people. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤

a) hero b) beggar c) manager d) servant

9. Earthquakes and volcanoes are natural ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) disasters b) lakes c) floods d) rivers

10. I watch the matches at the ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

a) school b) theatre c) cinema d) stadium

11. Yasser ..... work in a factory when he was in Italy. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

a) use to b) use c) used d) used to

12. You ..... climb on the wall. It's dangerous. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

a) mustn't b) must c) should d) can

13. While we ..... to Alexandria, Omar phoned us. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) travelled b) were travelling c) travel d) travels

14. Last summer, my family ..... a fantastic holiday in Morocco. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) have b) had c) has d) are having

15. There ..... a supermarket here. Now there is. القليوبية ٢٠٢٤

a) used to be b) didn't use to be c) didn't used to be d) use to be

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Did you ..... (saw) the film last week? الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
2. I ..... (not/ use) to like fish when I was young. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
3. I used to play basketball, but I ..... (didn't) now. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
4. When I was 10, I used to ..... (was) funny. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
5. Did you visit the pyramids when you ..... (are) young? الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
6. I must (going) ..... shopping today. I have got nothing at home to eat. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
7. He was painting ..... (while) the phone rang. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
8. When I phoned Soha, she ..... (is having) dinner. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
9. They ..... (drink) tea when the doorbell rang. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
10. He saw the castle while he ..... (travel) to Alexandria. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

MODULE 3

مقرر الشهور نوفمبر وديسمبر



Unit 5 Helping you, helping me

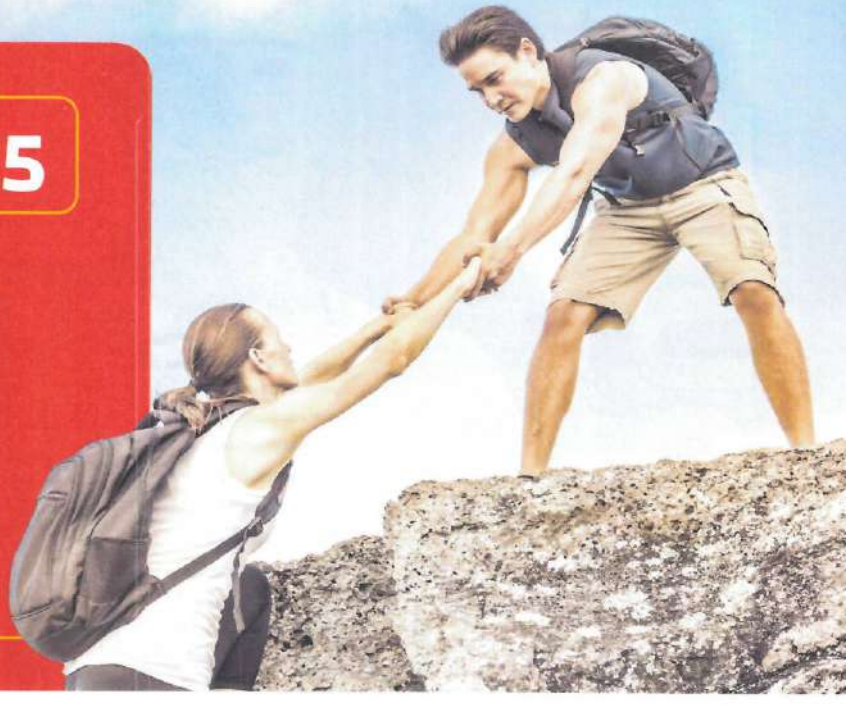
Unit 6 Different environments

Module 3 Question Bank

Selected from Previous Exams

Unit 5

HELPING YOU, HELPING ME



OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	An article about kindness; blogs about volunteering for charities; *A Little Princess*; a news report about a charity; a blog about a project
Writing	A blog post on how to help your community
Listening	Conversations about jobs in the house; descriptions of photos; stories about people who helped; people making suggestions
Speaking	A discussion about jobs in the house; discussing random acts of kindness; making suggestions
Language	who, which, that, where
Life Skills	Participation; Collaboration
Values	Coexistence values; Sharing; Random acts of kindness
Issues	Community participation

SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video

SB pages 44 - 47 | WB pages 102 & 103

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

acts (n)	أفعال/أعمال	smile (n)	ابتسامة
advertisement (n)	إعلان	stranger (n)	غريب
apartment = flat (n)	شقة	teenager (n)	مراهق
kindness (n)	لطف/عطف	thief (n)	لص/حرامى
random (adj)	عشوائى	tips (n)	تلميحات/نصائح

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

address (n)	عنوان (منزل)	practise (d) (v)	يمارس
bin (n)	سلة القمامة	rubbish (n)	قمامة/زبالة
check (ed) (v)	يفحص/يتحقق/يراجع	shape (n)	شكل
fantastic (adj)	رائع	shopkeeper (n)	البائع
lift (n)	مصعد	short distance	مسافة قصيرة
messy (adj)	فوضوى/غير مرتب	wheelchair (n)	كرسى متحرك

Check Point

Choose and complete: random - bin - stranger - kindness

1. Sharing toys with friends is an act of ..... .
2. The ..... is where we put our rubbish.
3. Let's tell a story with ..... words and see what happens.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do > kind things	يفعل أشياء لطيفة	make > a model	يصنع نموذجًا
do > the cooking	تقوم بالطهى	make > the bed	يرتب الفراش
get > his bag ready for	يجهز حقيبته لـ	practise/do acts	يمارس/يقوم بأعمال
get > on the bus	يركب الأتوبيس	take > the lift/stairs	يأخذ المصعد/السلالم
give > a seat to	يعطى المقعد لـ		

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Prepositions — حروف الجر

busy with	مشغول بـ/مع	on the ... floor	فى الطابق ... (رقم الطابق)
care about	يهتم/يعتنى بـ	spend money on	ينفق مالًا على
give back	يُرجع/يُعيد	take out	يُخرج/يزيل شيئًا
go/get on a boat	يذهب فى قارب	tidy up	يرتب
kind to	عطوف/طيب مع	wash up	يغسل الأطباق

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
put away	يضع شيئًا فى مكانه	put away	put away
stand	يقف	stood	stood

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
borrow	يستعير	lend	يُسلف
full	ممتلئ	empty	فارغ
lucky	محظوظ	unlucky	غير محظوظ
messy	فوضوى/غير مرتب	tidy	مرتب
right	صحيح	wrong	خطأ
surprised	مندهش	unsurprised	غير مندهش

Check Point

Choose and complete: stand – about – get – empty – back

1. When you finish reading the book, give it ..... to the library.
2. Let's line up and ..... on the bus one by one.
3. This bottle is full. It isn't ..... .
4. In a race, everyone has to ..... behind the starting line.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **spend + time + (v + ing)** - يقضى وقتًا فى ...

- I usually spend two hours **watching** TV.

2 **on time** فى الوقت المحدد / **in time** فى الوقت المناسب

- I usually arrive at school on time.
- We arrived at the theatre in time. The play starts soon.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Let's leave the house early, so we can get to work ..... time.

a) of **b)** for **c)** on **d)** at

2 We spent the afternoon ..... books at the library.

a) to read **b)** read **c)** to reading **d)** reading

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions التعريفات

fantastic رائع	very good
kindness لطف/عطف	when you do things to help others[1] and show you care about them
random عشوائى	happening[2] without[3] a plan
smile ابتسامة	the shape of your mouth that shows you are happy
strangers أشخاص غرباء	people you don't know

(1) الآخرون

(2) يحدث

(3) بدون

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) مرادفها
right صحيح	correct/true صحيح
surprised مندهش	amazed مندهش

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
kind (adj) عطوف/طيب	-ness	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	kindness (n) لطف/عطف
luck/noise (n) حظ/ضوضاء	-y	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	lucky/noisy (adj) محظوظ/ صاخب

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word الكلمة	Similar word الكلمة المشابهة
bin سلة قمامة	pin دبوس
left شمال	lift يرفع/مصعد
tip نصيحة	tap صنبور

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - How do you help around your house?

Lesson 1

Listen to four teenagers doing the jobs on page 44. What do they do to help in the house? Listen and match the names with the jobs. *SB page 45*

Hala I'm Hala. I have to make my bed[1] every day and tidy up[2] my bedroom once a week. My mother isn't happy about how messy[3] I am, but I always tidy up once a week on Saturday morning. It takes a long time. I have to put away[4] all my clothes[5].



Munir My name's Munir. During the week, my sister and I take turns to wash up[6] after meals. I wash up after dinner on Mondays and Wednesdays and she washes up after dinner on Tuesdays and Thursdays. Sometimes, I help my grandmother to do the cooking. I love making koushari.



Adam I'm Adam. I help with different things at home but my most difficult job is taking out[7] our rubbish. I don't have to do this every day; only when the bins are full. I usually take out the bins in the evening on Wednesdays and Sundays. Our apartment[8] is on the third floor, so I have to go down to the street in the lift[9]. The bins are heavy when they are full!



Nader I sometimes have to look after my brother after school, but I like doing this. We play games and I give him a snack to eat. He doesn't have to do any homework yet, but he has to get his bag ready for school and I make sure he has the right books.



(1) يرتب السرير
(2) ينظم
(3) غير مرتب
(4) يضع الشيء في مكانه
(5) ملابس
(6) يغسل الأطباق
(7) يخرج
(8) شقة
(9) مِصْعَد

Post-listening questions:

1. Which job do you think is the easiest? Why?
2. On which floor does Adam live?

Pre-reading question: - What do you have to do every day?

Lesson 1

Complete the text with the correct form of have to: *WB page 102*

We're going on a boat today. It's going to be hot, so you **have to** wear sunglasses and a hat. Boats are fun but they can be dangerous. Dina uses a wheelchair (1), so she **has to** go on the boat first. You all have to be careful when you get on the boat. You also **have to** sit down when the boat is moving, but you **don't have to** sit when the boat stops. You can stand up then. Finally, if you see a dolphin (2), you **have to** tell us! That is why we are going!



(1) كرسى متحرك

(2) دولفين

Post-reading question:

- Why do you think boats can be dangerous?

Pre-listening question: - How was your first day at school?

Lesson 2

Listen to two people talking about the photos. Do they have the same ideas as you? *SB page 46*



Adel The girl looks sad to be alone. I think she's new in the school and doesn't have any friends yet. The other students shouldn't forget how it feels when you start school. They should try to make friends with her.

Samir A man forgot his bag. Someone should run after him and give the bag back to him. Or they should look inside the bag to find his name and address.

Adel The woman looks really tired! I think someone in her family should make her a cup of tea and she should have a rest. They should take the children outside and play with them.

Samir She shouldn't carry all those things. Someone should carry some of the things for her.

Post-listening questions:

1. How can the other students help the girl who looks sad?
2. Why do you think people in Egypt drink tea when they are tired?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 2

- Why should we all be kind?

Read the article. What happens on Random Acts of Kindness Day? *SB page 47*

Random acts of kindness



In 1982, some friends were in a restaurant in California, USA. They wanted to make the world better. One of the friends, Anne Herbert, wrote down her idea: *Practise random acts of kindness* (1).

A random act of kindness is a kind thing that you do for someone, for no reason (2). You can do random acts of kindness for the people you know: for example, buy flowers for your mother. You can also be kind to strangers (3): for example, give your seat to someone on a bus.

(1) أعمال لطف عشوائية

(2) سبب

(3) الغرباء

(4) يوم اللطف العالمى

(5) ابتسامة

(6) رائع

Now, February 17th is Random Acts of Kindness Day (4). All over the world, people do kind things for the day: not because they have to, but because they want to see a smile (5) on a person's face. Isn't that a fantastic (6) idea?

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

reason /ˈriːzən/ because /bɪkɒz/

Comprehension Skills

Giving a title to the passage: إعطاء عنوان للفقرة:

1. Focus on the main idea. ركز على الفكرة الرئيسية (يجب أن يعطى العنوان تلميحًا عليها).
2. Use descriptive words. استخدام كلمات وصفية تصف الموضوع بشكل جيد.
3. Make it interesting. اجعله شيقًا ليجذب القارئ.
4. Keep it short and simple. اجعله قصير وبسيط.

- Can you think of another title for the previous passage?

Examples: "Friends Making the World Better"/
"Smile Makers: Adventures in Kindness".

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An ..... is someone you don't know, and it's important to be careful when talking to them.
   a) friend **b)** stranger **c)** relative **d)** cousin
2. When you play your favourite game on the tablet, sometimes there's a quick ..... between levels.
   a) advertisement **b)** act **c)** meal **d)** model
3. The police officer chased the ..... through the city streets. He stole a bag from a woman.
   a) thief **b)** shopkeeper **c)** teenager **d)** volunteer
4. Before the exam, the teacher gave some ..... to the students.
   a) acts **b)** problems **c)** meals **d)** tips
5. A/An ..... is the person who works at a shop and sells things.
   a) buyer **b)** customer **c)** engineer **d)** shopkeeper
6. When people feel happy, they give a big ..... .
   a) address **b)** smile **c)** bin **d)** problem
7. My school is near my house. It's just a short ..... .
   a) distance **b)** address **c)** meal **d)** snack
8. Mum ..... the cooking tonight and made us a delicious dinner.
   a) had **b)** got **c)** took **d)** did
9. I can't read you a story now, Mayar. I'm busy ..... cleaning up.
   a) in **b)** on **c)** with **d)** at
10. Can I ..... your book to read for my school project?
    a) lend **b)** borrow **c)** forget **d)** write
11. You should ..... your bed every morning.
    a) take **b)** practise **c)** do **d)** make
12. On the crowded bus, a man decided to ..... a seat to the elderly woman.
    a) give **b)** take **c)** do **d)** get
13. I want to visit you. Could you tell me your home .....?
    a) address **b)** style **c)** price **d)** apartment
14. We should care ..... the environment and help to protect it.
    a) at **b)** about **c)** out **d)** up
15. Students should ..... their answers before leaving the exam room.
    a) take **b)** practise **c)** carry **d)** check

Time to Practise



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They give the footballer a ..... test to check his health. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤
   a) random **b)** normal **c)** cultural **d)** historic
2. Something ..... means extremely good or excellent. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) hard **b)** difficult **c)** boring **d)** fantastic
3. The room is untidy. This means it is ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) tidy **b)** unhappy **c)** messy **d)** large
4. We all remember my grandfather's ..... . He always helped us when we were children. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
   a) unkind **b)** unkindness **c)** darkness **d)** kindness
5. Mother does the cooking and I ..... up after having lunch. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) wash **b)** give **c)** look **d)** watch
6. Adam ..... the rubbish when the bins are full. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) puts away **b)** looks after **c)** takes out **d)** washes up
7. We can go to the top of a tall building in the ..... . القليوبية ٢٠٢٤
   a) attic **b)** left **c)** right **d)** lift
8. In my opinion, ... random acts of kindness is fantastic. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) taking **b)** making **c)** doing **d)** having
9. I live with my family in a small ..... . الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
   a) fat **b)** flat **c)** shop **d)** park
10. Nader helps his brother ..... his school bag ready. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) leave **b)** get **c)** stay **d)** spend
11. You should ..... your things after using them. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
    a) take out **b)** look after **c)** put away **d)** give up
12. Nader has got a ..... because he can't walk. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
    a) table **b)** ladder **c)** pool **d)** wheelchair
13. Don't drop ..... . Put it in the bin. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
    a) water **b)** money **c)** letter **d)** rubbish
14. A random ..... of kindness is a kind thing that you do for no reason. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
    a) act **b)** acting **c)** contact **d)** active



لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

1 HAS TO/ HAVE TO يضطر أن

Usage & Form الاستخدام والتكوين

① Affirmative الإثبات

We use (has to/have to) when it's necessary to do something: you have no choice.

- نستخدم (has to/have to) يضطر أن (عندما يكون من الضروري فعل أمر ما: ليس لديك اختيار.)

I, You, We, They, اسم جمع + **have to** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. - I have to **wear** the school uniform. - Children have to **go** to school.

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + **has to** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. - My father has to **get up** at six o'clock every day to go to work.

② Negative النفى

We use (don't/doesn't have to) to talk about things that are not necessary.

- نستخدم (don't/doesn't have to) عندما يكون فعل شىء غير ضرورى (ليس هناك إجبار، لديك اختيار).

I, You, We, They, اسم جمع + **don't have to** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. - We don't have to **get up** early. It's Friday.

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + **doesn't have to** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. - My mother doesn't have to **go** to work today because it's a holiday.

③ Question السؤال

A) Yes/No questions السؤال بمعنى هل

Do + I, we, they, you, اسم جمع + **have to** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل?

Does + he, she, it, اسم مفرد + **have to** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل?

e.g. • Do you have to **go** to school?
- Yes, I do./ No, I don't.

e.g. • Does Ola have to **go** to work?
- Yes, she does./ No, she doesn't.

B) Wh- questions السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. word (أداة استفهام) + **do** + I, we, they, you, اسم جمع + **have to** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل ?
does + he, she, it, اسم مفرد + **have to** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل?

e.g. • What do kids have to **do** after school?
- They have to **do** their homework.

e.g. • What does he have to **do** today?
- He has to **study** for the exam.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 You ..... (have to) drive so fast. We have a lot of time.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (don't have to) لأنه غير ضرورى أن يقود بسرعة لوجود وقت كافٍ لديهم.

2 Does Hala have to ..... (visits) her grandma this weekend?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (visit) لأن have to يتبعها مصدر الفعل.

3 Morad ..... (have to) have a ticket or he can't travel.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (has to) لأنه ضرورى أن يملك تذكرة للسفر (إجبارى)، والفاعل هنا He.

2 Giving advice using (SHOULD & SHOULDN'T) إعطاء النصح

Usage الاستخدام

- We use should to express advice (to talk about what is the ideal or best thing to do in a situation).
- نستخدم should بمعنى (ينبغى) للتعبير عن النصائح (للحديث عن الأمور المثلى أو الأفضل للقيام بها فى موقف معين).

Form التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + **should** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g.
- You should **go** now. The bus leaves in ten minutes.
- Ghada should **sleep** early. She has a meeting tomorrow.

Negative النفى

Subject الفاعل + **shouldn't** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g.
- Children shouldn't **watch** too much television.
- Amir shouldn't **carry** all those things.

Yes/ No Questions السؤال بهل

Should + subject + inf. مصدر الفعل?

e.g. **A:** Should we study hard for our exams? **B:** Yes, we should.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Your brother is ill. He ..... (should) go to school today.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (shouldn't) لأنها نصيحة بعدم فعل شىء.

2 This film is fantastic, you should ..... (watching) it.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (watch) لأن (should) يأتى بعدها الفعل فى المصدر.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You ..... go to bed early. It's a good and healthy habit. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) mustn't **b)** has to **c)** should **d)** shouldn't
2. Does she ..... to take this medicine? It is terrible. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) should **b)** has **c)** must **d)** have
3. You ..... wash the clothes. I washed them this morning. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) don't have to **b)** must **c)** should **d)** have to
4. You should ..... hard to get high marks. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) to studying **b)** to study **c)** studying **d)** study
5. ..... we have to be at the airport two hours before the flight?
   a) Do **b)** Does **c)** Must **d)** Should
6. What time do you have ..... up tomorrow?
   a) to wake **b)** to waking **c)** wake **d)** waking
7. Teachers ..... go to school at 7 o'clock. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤
   a) have to **b)** doesn't have to **c)** don't have **d)** has to
8. He isn't late; he doesn't ..... take a taxi. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
   a) has **b)** have **c)** have to **d)** has to
9. You ..... have a reason to do a random act of kindness. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) have to **b)** don't have to **c)** must **d)** should
10. We ..... keep our environment clean. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) has to **b)** don't have to **c)** should **d)** shouldn't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sally ..... (have) to do her homework before watching TV.
2. You should ..... (starts) running short distances. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
3. Mr Hamdi ..... (not/ have to) hurry as it is still early. البحيرة ٢٠٢٤
4. You ..... (should) drink water from the canal; it's dirty. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
5. **A:** ..... (Shouldn't) we eat lots of vegetables?
   B: Yes, you should. البحيرة ٢٠٢٤
6. You ..... (has to) show your passport when you leave the country. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

1. Speaking

A discussion about jobs in the house

مناقشة عن المهام المنزلية

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

online

- What sort of jobs do you have to do at home?
ما نوع المهام التى تضطر أن تؤديها بالمنزل؟

I have to tidy up my bedroom. أضطر أن أرتب غرفة نومى.

- Does your best friend have to walk to school?
هل يضطر صديقك المفضل للمشى إلى المدرسة؟

Yes, he does. نعم.

- How much homework do you have to do this evening?
كم كمية الواجب المنزلى التى ينبغى عليك فعلها الليلة؟

I have to do the English homework. أضطر إلى عمل واجب اللغة الإنجليزية.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Basmala and Kady are talking about jobs in the house.

Basmala : Can we talk about jobs in the house?

Kady : (1)..... .

Basmala : (2).....?

Kady : I have to make my bed. What about you?

Basmala : I have to tidy up my bedroom? Do you have to help in the kitchen?

Kady : (3)..... . My mother likes to cook alone.

Basmala : What else do you have to do?

Kady : (4)..... .

Basmala : Perfect! I also have to take out rubbish. (5).....?

Kady : No, I don't have to wash up. My sister does it.

2. Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about random acts of kindness

كيفية الكتابة عن أفعال اللطف العشوائية/التلقائية

- It's important for us all to do random acts of kindness.
- When you do something kind to someone, they will take that act of kindness and move it to other people.
- We should help strangers.
- We should do random acts of kindness every day.
- Random acts of kindness can make the world better.

Writing tips

A paragraph has:
- a topic sentence.
- supporting sentences.
- a concluding sentence.

يجب أن تحتوى الفقرة على:
- جملة رئيسية.
- جمل مساعدة وموضحة للموضوع.
- جملة تلخيصية (تلخص الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة).

Example

Random acts of kindness

It's important to do random acts of kindness. The smallest things can make others smile. I think that if you do something kind to someone, they will take that act of kindness and move it to people they come across during their day. The smallest things always make the biggest differences. For example, holding the door for someone who has hands full or smiling at strangers as they pass by — these little things let people know that someone cares about them. A random act of kindness can be to someone you know or someone who is a complete stranger, but it has to be random. Someday, you will receive a random act of kindness in return.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Kindness"

Take a test

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 5 Lessons (1 & 2)

19.5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.
الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

1. How is Hala?
   a) Tidy. **b)** Messy. **c)** Ugly **d)** Clean.
2. How often does she have to make her bed?
   a) Twice a week. **b)** Never. **c)** Once a week. **d)** Every day.
3. When does she tidy up?
   a) On Thursday. **b)** On Friday. **c)** On Saturday. **d)** On Sunday.
4. How often does she have to tidy up her bedroom?
   a) Twice a week. **b)** Never. **c)** Once a week. **d)** Every day.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤

Ali and Ayman are talking about random acts of kindness.

Ali : What are you doing, Ayman?
Ayman : (1)..... .
Ali : (2).....?
Ayman : This book is about random acts of kindness.
Ali : Should we always do random acts of kindness?
Ayman : (3)..... .
Ali : How?
Ayman : (4)..... .
Ali : (5).....?
Ayman : Yes, I will take part in a charity. You can join me.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you finish your snack, put the ..... in the bin.
   a) rubbish **b)** wheelchair **c)** hat **d)** flat
2. At music class, we ..... playing different kinds of musical instruments.
   a) practise **b)** borrow **c)** put away **d)** act
3. ..... like to hang out with each other and enjoy their favourite activities.
   a) Thieves **b)** Strangers **c)** Teenagers **d)** Shopkeepers
4. Our ..... is on the second floor, so we can take the stairs or the lift.
   a) address **b)** street **c)** apartment **d)** villa
5. The pizza slices are usually in the ..... of triangles.
   a) medal **b)** tip **c)** shape **d)** act
6. Try making a ..... aeroplane by folding and connecting the paper parts.
   a) model **b)** port **c)** stop **d)** station

7. It's important to be kind ..... animals, so always treat them gently and with love.
a) to b) at c) in d) of

8. You ..... buy a ball. I will give you mine. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
a) must b) should c) can't d) don't have to

9. You ..... eat fruit and vegetables. They're healthy. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
a) should b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) has to

10. Does Shereen ..... go to work early? الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
a) have to b) has to c) must d) should

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You should ..... (cleans) your teeth in the morning. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
2. What ..... (Mahmoud have) to get for the trip? الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
3. You ..... (doesn't) have to shout. I can hear you. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
4. My grandfather ..... (have to) go for a walk every day.

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Some acts of kindness"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1. I borrowed my friend's book and I have to give it ..... him.
a) back b) back to c) up d) away

2. We should ..... random acts of kindness.
a) practise b) make c) get d) go

3. Everyone ..... to feel sorry for every drop of water that falls carelessly.
a) has b) have c) should d) must

4. Most people don't care about what ..... eat for each meal.
a) have they b) they have c) should they d) they should

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK					

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

Watch a video

SB pages 48 - 50 | WB pages 104 & 105

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

beggar (n)	متسول/شحاذ	extracts (n)	مقتطفات
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف	feed (v) (fed/fed)	يطعم
boarding school (n)	مدرسة داخلية	generous (adj)	كريم/سخى
community (n)	مجتمع/جماعة/جالية	owner (n)	مالك
cruel (adj)	قاسٍ	servant (n)	خادم
disabled (adj)	معاق	surprised (adj)	مندهش
donate (d) (v)	يتبرع		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

act (ed) (v)	يمثل	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلى
babysitting (n)	مجالسة الأطفال	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير/تصنيع
baker (n)	خباز	secondary (adj)	ثانوى
baker's (n)	مخبز	sports person (n)	شخص رياضى
chemist (n)	صيدلى	strange (adj)	غريب
headteacher (n)	مدير المدرسة	trainers (n)	حذاء رياضى
neighbour (n)	جار		

Check Point

Choose and complete: chemist - fed - reached - servant

1. During our picnic, we ..... the ducks by the pond with pieces of bread.
2. The friendly ..... helped us find the right vitamins to stay healthy.
3. The ..... helps clean the house and make everything neat and tidy.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

behave > like a princess	تتصرف كأميرة	do > charity work	يؤدى عملًا خيريًا
give > directions	يعطى الاتجاهات	get/be > lost	يضل الطريق

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a home for	دار/موطن لـ	polite to	مؤدب مع
ask for	يطلب	throw away	يلقى بعيدًا
cruel to	قاسٍ على	volunteer for	متطوع لدى
difficult for	صعب لـ	work as	يعمل كـ
for the first time	للمرة الأولى	work for	يعمل لدى
pick up	يلتقط		

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
cruel	قاسٍ	kind	طيب/عطوف
delicious	لذيذ	horrible	فظيع/كريه
real	حقيقى	false	مزيف
win	يفوز/يكسب	lose	يخسر/يفقد

Check Point

Choose and complete: lose - for - gets - gave

1. Sarah asked ..... a piece of cake because she loves it.
2. Whether you win or ....., the important thing is to have fun playing with your friends.
3. Dad ..... me directions to the park, so I knew which way to go.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر والكلمات وعكسها.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions — التعريفات

beggar	متسول/شحاذ	a poor[1] person who asks others for money, etc.
behave	يتصرف	do something in a certain[2] way
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	a school where students live all the time
community	مجتمع/جماعة/جالية	a small area[3] and the people who live in it
cruel	قاسٍ	not kind
disabled	معاق	when you cannot use part of the body in the way most people can
donate	يتبرع	give something useful[4] to a person or charity that needs help
feed	يطعم	give food to a person or animal
pick up	يلتقط	lift someone or something
servant	خادم	a person who works in a house, cooking, cleaning, etc.
princess	أميرة	the daughter[5] of a king or queen

(1) فقير
.....
(2) محدد
.....
(3) منطقة
.....
(4) مفيد
.....
(5) ابنة

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
rich	غنى	wealthy	ثرى
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	لذيذ

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
direct (v)	يوجه	-ion		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		direction (n)	اتجاه

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 3

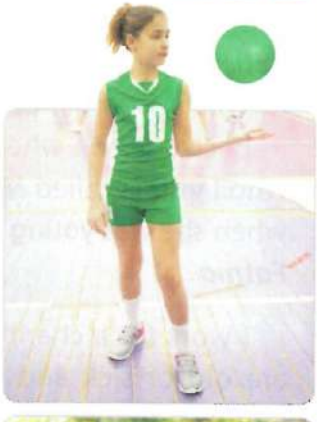
Pre-listening question:

- Mention one person who helped you. How did he/she help you?

Listen to Amal, check your answers to Exercise 1 and complete the sentences.

SB page 48







Amal Our neighbour, Mr Osman, is the person who helped me pass my maths exams. He's 70 and doesn't work now, but he was a maths teacher before. The books which he used to help me were his old schoolbooks from when he was teaching at secondary school.

My aunt Dalia is a person who's always very kind to me. She bought me the trainers that I wore when I played in the school volleyball team for the first time. We won the match!

My little cousin Rana helped me last week when I lost my watch. I was sad because it was the watch that my father gave me for my birthday. The place where I lost it was the garden. I took it off when I was playing and it fell. Rana found it under a plant. Because her hand is so small, she could put it under the plant and reach the watch.

Comprehension Skills

Give a title: وضع عنوان:

When you give a title to something like a book, article or story, you usually capitalise the important words. But, you don't need to capitalise small words like "the", "a" or "of" unless they are the first words of the title.

عندما تقوم بإعطاء عنوان لشىء مثل كتاب أو مقال أو قصة، عادة ما تكون الكلمات الرئيسية مبنية بحروف كبيرة ولكن لا نضع للكلمات الصغيرة مثل the/a/of حروف كبيرة إلا إذا كانت هى الكلمات الأولى فى العنوان.

Example: Give a title to the previous passage.

Answer: The Importance of Helping People

Pre-reading question: - What voluntary work would you like to do?

Read the extracts from the blogs of three teenagers and complete the sentences. *SB page 49*



I work as a volunteer(1) for a charity(2) which helps to clean our local(3) beach. At the weekend, we go to the beach and pick up the rubbish(4) that people left behind. We always pick up lots of plastic bottles!

Samir



It is good to help people in the community(5). I visit a home for old people who are disabled(6), so it's difficult for their families to look after them. I go there after school on Thursdays. The volunteers have a special person who we visit and talk to. The woman who I visit is called Mrs Nahla. She worked as a nurse when she was young and she is a fantastic(7) person. I love talking to her.

Fatma



I work for a charity which looks after animals that are old or sick and cannot work any more. People donate(8) money to the charity to buy food for the animals such as horses and camels. We help to feed(9) the animals and look after them. This camel is very old and she is my favourite animal.

Ahmed

(1) متطوع
(2) جمعية خيرية
(3) محلى
(4) قمامة
(5) مجتمع
(6) معاق
(7) رائع
(8) يتبرع
(9) يطعم

Note: تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

volunteer /vɒlənˈtɪə(r)/
community /kəmjuːnɪti/

Post-reading questions:

1. Why do you think helping people in the community is good?
2. Who is Mrs Nahla?
3. Why does Samir help clean the beach?

Pre-reading question: - What's your favourite story?

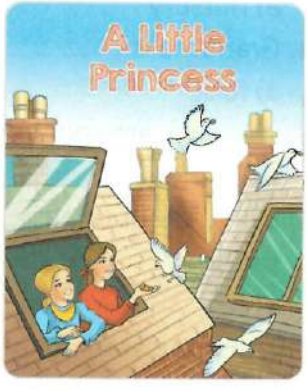
Lesson 4

Read part of *A Little Princess* and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 50

A Little Princess

by Frances Hodgson Burnett



Everyone at Sara Crewe's boarding school[1] calls her "a little princess" because her father is very rich. After Sara's father dies, the headteacher[2], Miss Minchin starts being cruel[3] to Sara because she has no money. She makes Sara work as a servant[4]. Sara has to work very hard and does not get much food. However, Sara decides to behave[5] like a real princess[6], so she is always kind and polite[7] to everyone.

One day, Sara finds a coin in the street. She can't find the owner. She goes to the baker's to buy some cakes. When she comes out, she sees a beggar[8] and gives the girl most of her cakes. Sara can see that this girl is cold and hungry. Sara thinks that a real princess should always be kind and generous[9] like this. When the baker sees this, she is surprised. "This girl is very strange. She is very poor, but she is kind to beggars," she thinks.

(1) مدرسة داخلية
(2) مديرة المدرسة
(3) قاسٍ
(4) خادمة
(5) تتصرف
(6) أميرة
(7) مهذب
(8) متسول/شحاذ
(9) كريم

Post-reading question:

- What have you learnt from this story?

Read what the baker said about Sara Crewe and answer the questions.

Lesson 4

WB page 105



I think that the girl who came into my baker's shop today was a servant because she didn't have very new clothes. The money that she had was enough to buy a few cakes. I often see a beggar in the street where I work. She usually asks for money, but when the young girl left my shop, she gave her most of her cakes! I was very surprised[1].
I feel that this servant girl behaved like a princess[2]!

(1) مندهش
(2) أميرة

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Students go to university after they finish ..... school.
   a) nursery **b)** primary **c)** preparatory **d)** secondary
2. Grandma is .....; she bakes cookies for us and our neighbours.
   a) false **b)** full **c)** cruel **d)** generous
3. ..... are special shoes you wear for playing sports or running.
   a) Trainers **b)** Sports **c)** Bakers **d)** Volunteers
4. Don't forget to pick ..... your books from the floor and put them on the shelf.
   a) for **b)** down **c)** up **d)** out
5. The noise coming from the empty room was ..... and scary.
   a) kind **b)** strange **c)** real **d)** poor
6. Eman and her friends plan to ..... charity work by cleaning up a nearby park at the weekend.
   a) do **b)** make **c)** get **d)** lose
7. I volunteered for a charity that helps ..... people find good work.
   a) horrible **b)** real **c)** surprised **d)** disabled
8. He was ..... to see his friend after a long time.
   a) strange **b)** generous **c)** surprised **d)** disabled
9. The dog ran happily when it saw its ..... return home.
   a) volunteer **b)** baker **c)** owner **d)** headteacher
10. It's polite ..... wait your turn in line at the store.
    a) to **b)** at **c)** for **d)** on
11. The little boy ..... lost at the park, but a kind man helped him find his mum.
    a) made **b)** got **c)** did **d)** gave
12. We read ..... about space and planets in our science class.
    a) extracts **b)** sports **c)** trainers **d)** medicines
13. We often stopped by the ..... to buy fresh bread.
    a) chemist's **b)** doctor's **c)** baker's **d)** barber's
14. I get up early to ..... my school on time.
    a) reach **b)** arrive **c)** go **d)** get
15. I threw ..... the broken pen because I couldn't use it.
    a) off **b)** away **c)** on **d)** for

Time to Practise



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is a poor person who asks others for money. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

a) servant **b)** beggar **c)** waiter **d)** doctor

2. Sara decides to ..... like a princess in the party. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

a) swim **b)** have **c)** belong **d)** behave

3. He will go to a/an ..... school where he will live all the time. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

a) outside **b)** national **c)** boarding **d)** government

4. Good people always ..... to charities to help the poor. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

a) share **b)** feed **c)** donate **d)** start

5. She lives next door. She is my ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) patient **b)** classmate **c)** servant **d)** neighbour

6. Don't be ..... to animals. They feel like us. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

a) friendly **b)** gentle **c)** kind **d)** cruel

7. A ..... is a small area and the people who live in it. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) hospital **b)** school **c)** community **d)** bank

8. Nawal is a ..... . She works in my friend's house. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

a) servant **b)** headteacher **c)** beggar **d)** princess

9. What can you ..... at home? الغربية ٢٠٢٢

a) circle **b)** cycle **c)** recycle **d)** spend

10. A ..... is the daughter of a king or queen. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

a) princess **b)** secretary **c)** queen **d)** prince

11. The farmer doesn't need to ..... his goats as they can find their food in the mountains. الغربية ٢٠٢٢

a) eat **b)** feed **c)** play **d)** drink

12. Wow! Did you make that cake? It looks .....!

a) kind **b)** polite **c)** cruel **d)** delicious



لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين فى ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.

C Language

RELATIVE PRONOUNS ضمائر الوصل

Usage الاستخدام

- We use defining **relative clauses/pronouns** to help identify a person, thing or place.
- نستخدم ضمائر الوصل لتساعدنا على التعرف على شخص، شىء أو مكان.

Relative pronouns (who/which/where)

(1) who = that الذى/التى (للعاقل)

- نستخدم (who/that) بمعنى (الذى/التى) مع العاقل ويأتى قبلها اسم عاقل:

e.g. - This is the **police officer** (who/that) saved my life.

- The **teacher**, (who/that) is very kind, helps us learn new things in class.

(2) which = that الذى/التى (لغير العاقل)

- نستخدم (which/that) بمعنى (الذى/التى) مع غير العاقل (أشياء أو حيوانات) ويأتى قبلها اسم غير عاقل:

e.g. - This is the **cat** (which/that) ate the fish.

- The **present** (which/that) I bought for my grandmother is in my bag.

- يمكننا استخدام ضمير الوصل (who/which) بدلًا من (that) مع العاقل وغير العاقل كما لاحظنا فى الأمثلة.

(3) where حيث (للمكان)

- نستخدم (where) بمعنى (حيث) مع الأماكن بشرطين (أن تعبر عن مكان أو ما بداخله **ولا يوجد حرف جر لهذا المكان**):

e.g. - The zoo is a fantastic **place** where you can see different animals.

لاحظ

تستخدم (which) مع المكان فى حالتين:

١- إذا كنا نريد وصفه أو إعطاء معلومة عنه.

e.g. We bought a flat (which) is near the school.

٢- بدلًا من (where) فى حالة وجود حرف جر يعود على المكان.

e.g. Alexandria is the city where both my sisters are studying. (بدون حرف جر)

Alexandria is the city (which) both my sisters are studying in. (يوجد حرف جر)

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The mountain ..... (where) we climbed yesterday is very high.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (which) لأننا نتحدث عن الجبل كشىء غير عاقل وليس كمكان.

2. What's the name of the man ..... (which) lives next door?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (who) لأن the man اسم عاقل.

3. That's the house ..... (which) I lived when I was a child.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (where) لأنها تعبر عن مكان ولا يوجد حرف جر.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The baker's ..... mum buys fresh bread is just down the street.
   a) that **b)** where **c)** which **d)** who
2. We went to the mosque ..... is in the middle of the square.
   a) which **b)** where **c)** who **d)** whose
3. The stadium is the place ..... my favourite team plays. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) who **b)** what **c)** where **d)** which
4. The restaurant ..... I had lunch yesterday, is very big. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) who **b)** which **c)** when **d)** where
5. This is the doctor ..... examined my brother. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
   a) where **b)** who **c)** which **d)** when
6. Tanta is the city ..... I was born in. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) where **b)** who **c)** which **d)** when
7. This is Mr Khaled ..... teaches us social studies. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) which **b)** who **c)** where **d)** when
8. I saw Ahmed in the park ..... we often play football. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٤
   a) which **b)** who **c)** when **d)** where
9. This is the flat ..... I bought. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
   a) who **b)** which **c)** when **d)** where
10. Mr Othman is the person ..... helped me pass my maths exam. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) who **b)** which **c)** where **d)** what

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Airports are places ..... (who) we can see planes. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
2. I gave the shoes ..... (what) are too small for me to my cousin.
3. Omar is the boy ..... (which) can run fast. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
4. A chemist's is a place ..... (which) we buy medicine.
5. The money ..... (where) she had was enough to buy a few cakes.
6. That's the man ..... (which) bought our old car. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤

D Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.



Write it right

How to write about your favourite story

كيفية الكتابة عن قصتك المفضلة

- I like reading (نوع) stories.
- My favourite story is (اسم القصة).
- It's by (اسم الكاتب).
- It's about (فكرة القصة).
- It teaches us to (الدروس المستفادة).
- It's fantastic.

Writing tips

Use joining words to connect ideas:
and/ but/ because/ so/ however
استخدم كلمات الوصل للربط بين الأفكار.

Example

To : basmala@student.com
From : rahma@student.com
Subject : A story I read

Dear Basmala,

Greetings! How are you and your family? I hope you all are in good health. I'm very happy to write this email to you. I like reading very much. I read a story by Frances Hodgson Burnett. It's called *A Little Princess*. It's about a small girl whose father died and she became poor. She was in a boarding school. The headteacher made her a servant, but she behaved well like a princess. I recommend this story to you. It's really fantastic. I look forward to hearing from you.

Write soon.

Yours,
Rahma

Check Point

Write an email to your friend Nesma to tell her about your favourite story. Your name is Donia and your email address is donia@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is nesma@hotmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Samir works as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean our local beach. At the weekend, they go to the beach and **pick up** the rubbish that people left behind. Fatima visits a home for old people who are disabled, so it's difficult for their families to look after them. The volunteers have a special person who they visit and talk to. The woman who they visit is called Mrs Buda. She worked as a nurse when she was young and she is a fantastic person. Fatima loves **her**. Ahmed works for a charity which looks after animals that are old or sick and can't work anymore. People donate money to the charity to buy food for the animals, such as horses and camels. They help to feed the animals and look after them.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to this passage. .....
2. What is your opinion about charities? .....
3. Why do people donate money to the charity which Ahmed works for?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**her**" refers to ..... .
   a) Fatima **b)** Aya **c)** Mrs Buda **d)** Sara
5. It isn't nice for people to ..... on the beach.
   a) pick up rubbish **b)** help to clean
   c) leave rubbish **d)** pick up plastic bottles
6. The underlined verb "**pick up**" means to ..... something from a place.
   a) leave **b)** collect **c)** donate **d)** lend

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My cousin works as a volunteer ..... a charity.
   a) on **b)** to **c)** for **d)** at
2. ..... is the care of a child or children while the parents are busy.
   a) Advertisement **b)** Community **c)** Babysitting **d)** Extracts
3. Lily loves to ..... like a princess when she plays with her friends.
   a) act **b)** reach **c)** feed **d)** give
4. The family built a cool home ..... their pet rabbit in the backyard.
   a) off **b)** at **c)** for **d)** with
5. A ..... is someone who plays a sport and loves to have fun doing it.
   a) beggar **b)** servant **c)** sports person **d)** princess

6. The ..... of the school has a meeting with the teachers.
a) dentist b) officer c) worker d) headteacher
7. All people should help the ..... . They need our help. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
a) able b) strong c) abled d) disabled
8. That is the teacher ..... teaches us maths. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
a) which b) who c) what d) whose
9. The park ..... we play has a big playground.
a) who b) which c) where d) that
10. I went to the supermarket ..... is next to my house to buy cheese. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤
a) who b) when c) where d) which

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I want the book ..... (who) you finished reading yesterday.
2. This is the girl ..... (which) can sing well. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
3. We went to a nice restaurant ..... (who) we had a delicious meal.
4. This is the school ..... (which) we learn. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

4 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Helping the community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب

1 Because she is so small, she can't ..... the book on the high shelf.
a) reach b) get c) arrive d) go
2 My mother always puts away the books I leave ..... .
a) front b) behind c) under d) back
3 October is the month ..... I was born. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
a) when b) where c) which d) who
4 My aunt Dalia is a person ..... always very kind to me.
a) who's b) whose c) who d) that

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4
TACKLES	Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK				

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

Watch a video

SB pages 51 & 52 | WB pages 106 & 107

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bridge (n)	كوبرى/جسر	geography (n)	جغرافيا
bin (n)	سلة قمامة	laboratory (n)	معمل
businesswoman (n)	سيدة أعمال	messy (adj)	فوضوى
canteen (n)	مقصف/كانتين	snow (ed) (v)	تمطر ثلجًا
donation (n)	تبرع		

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

firefighter (n)	رجل الإطفاء	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
fisherman (n)	صياد سمك	soft (adj)	ناعم/طرى/لين
newspaper (n)	جريدة	title (n)	عنوان (موضوع)
share (d) (v)	يشارك/يتقاسم	wide (adj)	واسع

Adverbs of Sequence — ظروف التسلسل

first	أولًا	next	التالى
secondly	ثانيًا	then	ثم
after that	بعد ذلك	finally	أخيرًا

Check Point

Choose and complete: geography - soft - laboratory - donation

1. He likes ..... . He knows a lot about the weather in many countries.
2. We usually go to the ..... in the science class.
3. The fur of the cat is very ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

give	a big smile	يعطى ابتسامة كبيرة	make	a decision	يتخذ قرارًا
	an opinion	يعطى رأيًا		suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات
fight	fire	يحارب (يخمد) النار			

Prepositions — حروف الجر

think about/of	يعتقد/يفكر فى	on a project	فى مشروع
give away	يتبرع	on the street corner	على ناصية الشارع
in my opinion	فى رأيى	on the way home from	فى الطريق إلى البيت من

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word — الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym) — عكسها
agree — يوافق	disagree — لا يوافق
helpful — معاون/مساعد/مفيد	unhelpful — غير مفيد

Check Point

Choose and complete: about - on - disagree - fight

1. I ..... with you, I have another opinion.
2. We should ..... fires because they are very dangerous.
3. I couldn't sleep yesterday because I was thinking ..... moving to a new school.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر والكلمات وعكسها.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions — التعريفات

bins سلات القمامة	you put rubbish[1] in these
lift مِصْعد	this takes you to the top[2] of a building, without[3] using the stairs
messy فوضوى	not tidy

(1) قمامة
(2) قمة
(3) بدون

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word — الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning) — مرادفها
agree — يوافق	accept — يقبل
helpful — معاون/مساعد/مفيد	useful — مفيد

Suffix اللاحقة

Word — الكلمة	Suffix — اللاحقة	Function — الوظيفة	The new word — الكلمة الجديدة
donate (v) — يتبرع	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	donation (n) — تبرع
help (v) — يساعد	-ful	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	helpful (adj) — معاون/مساعد/مفيد

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - What do you think of charities?

Lesson 5

Listen to Leila and Amal talking about the article and answer the questions.

SB page 51



Amal I think that the charities should share[1] the money between them and help lots of different people.

Leila I'm not sure, Amal ... I think it would be better if one charity gets all the money and can do something big and important.

Amal OK, but which charity then?

Leila What about a charity that helps children ... or old people?

Amal I agree that it's very important to help children, but I also think it's important to look after old people. That's why I suggest[2] that they share the money.

(1) يشارك

(2) يقترح

Leila I see what you mean. OK, they should share the money between two or three important charities.

Post-listening questions:

1. Which charity do you prefer to donate money to? Why?
2. Who do you agree with, Leila or Amal? Why?

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

suggest /səˈdʒest/

Read and complete the newspaper article about another kind person.

SB page 51

Large charity donation

Fareeda Rashwan, age 32, has donated[1] two million pounds to charities in the city.

(1) يتبرع (2) سيدة أعمال (3) بقدر الإمكان

The businesswoman[2] says that she wants the charities to use the money to help people who need it. The charities can decide to share the money between them or give all the money to one charity. The important thing is to help as many people as possible[3].



Pre-listening question: - How can famous people help their community?

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 3, then role-play the dialogue. *WB page 106*



Malak I feel that famous people should work for a charity at the weekend.

Rawia I'm not sure. Some of them work very hard. I think it would be better if they gave some money to a charity. They don't need to work for a charity.

Malak I agree that it's important for them to donate money, but I also think it's important to work for the charity, too.

Rawia OK, but when? They don't have much time. Some of them work every day.

Malak I see what you mean. Perhaps they can help for a day or two in their holidays.

Rawia Good idea.

Post-listening question: - Who do you agree with, Malak or Rawia? Why?

Pre-reading question:

- When was the last time you did a random act of kindness?

Lesson 6

Read Hassan's blog and answer the questions. *SB page 52*

Hassan's Blog

Random Acts of Kindness Project

Our class decided to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days. This is what I did.

(1) أولًا (2) بعد ذلك (3) مقصف المدرسة (الكانتين) (4) في النهاية



First[1], on Monday, I bought my grandmother some of her favourite cakes at the baker's on the way home from school. She was surprised, but very happy! After that[2], on Tuesday, I let some younger students go into the canteen[3] in front of me. Finally[4], on Wednesday, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to the old man who often sits on our street corner. He gave me a big smile. In my opinion, doing random acts of kindness is fantastic. I don't want to stop!

Post-reading question: - What do you think of doing random acts of kindness?

Pre-reading question: - What jobs did you do at home today?

Put Fady's blog into the correct order. *WB page 107*

My helpful day

On Saturday, I decided that I wanted to help everyone in my family.



b. First, I made my mother breakfast.
She was surprised because she usually makes it!

e. Secondly, I helped my sister with her homework.
She always does it after breakfast!

a. After that, I took my grandfather a cup of tea in bed. He likes to get up late on a Saturday.

c. Then, I played football in the park with my little brother. He loves football.

d. Finally, I helped my dad with the jobs that he likes to do in the house. I feel that I made all my family happy!

Post-reading question: - What do you think of Fady?

Lesson 7

Complete the text with the words in the box. *SB page 53*

I share a bedroom with my sister and we are sometimes quite messy (1), so we usually tidy up (2) every evening before we go to bed. We put away (3) all our clothes and books. Twice a week, my brother and I take out (4) the rubbish. We do it together because the bins are quite heavy. My parents donate (5) money to a charity which helps a local school for disabled (6) people.



We think it is important to help people in the community (7).

(1) فوضوى (2) يرتب (3) يضع الأشياء فى مكانها (4) يخرج (5) يتبرع (6) معاق (7) مجتمع

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't forget to take your lunch money, so you can buy something from the ..... .
   a) laboratory **b)** library **c)** canteen **d)** chemist's
2. The ..... wears a big hat to protect himself from the sun when he fishes.
   a) firefighter **b)** fisherman **c)** corner **d)** baker
3. ..... my opinion, ice cream is the best dessert in the world.
   a) At **b)** From **c)** To **d)** In
4. I ..... my mum a big smile when she gave me a present.
   a) gave **b)** made **c)** fought **d)** did
5. We made a ..... of food to help people who don't have enough to eat.
   a) suggestion **b)** title **c)** newspaper **d)** donation
6. We walked across the ..... to get to the other side of the river.
   a) canteen **b)** laboratory **c)** bridge **d)** lift
7. Scientists do experiments in the ..... .
   a) canteen **b)** laboratory **c)** baker's **d)** shop
8. ..... are our heroes because they keep us safe from fires.
   a) Businesswomen **b)** Bakers **c)** Fishermen **d)** Firefighters
9. It ..... a lot last night and covered everything in white.
   a) snowed **b)** donated **c)** shared **d)** fought
10. Babies always have ..... skin.
    a) unhelpful **b)** messy **c)** soft **d)** sunny
11. Thank you for your advice. It's very ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
    a) useless **b)** polite **c)** tidy **d)** helpful
12. Hassan forgot his food, but we can ..... our food with him. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٤
    a) shake **b)** shade **c)** share **d)** save
13. My sister is ..... and never puts her books away. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
    a) messy **b)** cruel **c)** serious **d)** tidy
14. You shouldn't spend too much time on social ..... . الغربية ٢٠٢٢
    a) middle **b)** media **c)** match **d)** moon
15. Nelly had to ..... a decision about what to wear at the school party.
    a) make **b)** have **c)** do **d)** share

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Making suggestions

تقديم اقتراحات

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

online

I feel that we should do an act of kindness every day.
أشعر بأنه يجب علينا أن نعمل عملًا لطيفًا يوميًا.

I see what you mean. أفهم ما تعنيه.

I think it would be better if we donated money to charities.
أعتقد أنه من الأفضل أن نتبرع بالمال للجمعيات الخيرية.

- Good idea. فكرة جيدة.

I agree that it's important to give the money to one charity.
أتفق أنه من المهم أن نعطى المال لجمعية خيرية واحدة فقط.

- I'm not sure. لست متأكدًا من ذلك.
- Perhaps we should visit them every week.
ربما يجب زيارتهم كل أسبوع.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

▶ **Amal suggests playing outside, but Amira wants to watch a film.**

Amal : Hi Amira, do you want to play outside?
Amira : (1)..... . It's really hot today.
Amal : I understand. How about playing inside then?
Amira : (2)..... . But what should we play?
Amal : (3)..... .
Amira : I'm not good at playing chess.
Amal : (4).....?
Amira : Perhaps we should watch TV.
Amal : (5).....?
Amira : We can watch a film.

Take a test

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 5 Lessons (5 & 6)

7.5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Reem is doing a school project to help the community.

Reem : Why are you busy?
Aya : (1)..... .
Reem : (2).....?
Aya : It is about helping the community.
Reem : (3).....?
Aya : Perhaps we should work for a charity.
Reem : (4)..... . What jobs can we do in the charity?
Aya : We can help disabled people.
Reem : (5)..... . Helping disabled people is difficult.
Aya : We can donate money then.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father likes to read the ..... to know the news before going out.
   a) newspaper **b)** title **c)** story **d)** book
2. My sister made a ..... to visit the zoo.
   a) suggest **b)** suggestion **c)** donate **d)** donation
3. The book's ..... was "Alice Adventures in Wonderland". It's very attractive.
   a) writer **b)** bin **c)** title **d)** newspaper
4. We always ask our parents to ..... us their opinions about many things.
   a) borrow **b)** give **c)** donate **d)** make
5. We ..... cook more; there is enough food. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) doesn't have to **b)** has to **c)** have to **d)** don't have to
6. I usually tidy up the room ..... I study.
   a) where **b)** which **c)** who **d)** what

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The cat ..... (who) lives in my house is very nice.
2. You should ..... (buying) a new pen. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
3. My father ..... (have) to go to his work on time.
4. The market is a place ..... (which) I often get lost! الغربية ٢٠٢٢

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3
TACKLES	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language
MARK			

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 5

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

الشرفية ٢٠٢٢

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. What did you buy for your grandmother?
   a) Flowers. b) Cakes.
   c) Fruits. d) Bread.
2. Where did you buy them?
   a) At the baker's. b) At the market.
   c) At the chemist's. d) At the butcher's.
3. When did you do that?
   a) On Saturday. b) On Sunday.
   c) On Friday. d) On Monday.
4. How was your grandmother?
   a) Sad. b) Surprised.
   c) Happy. d) b and c.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: SB

Nasser and Omar are talking about their jobs at home after school.

Nasser : Do you have to study this evening, Omar?
Omar : (1)..... .
Nasser : (2).....?
Omar : Geography! I have a geography test tomorrow.
Nasser : What about your brother? Does he have to study, too?
Omar : No, he doesn't.
Nasser : What does he have to do then?
Omar : (3)..... . His room is really messy.
Nasser : It's nearly the end of the break. (4).....?
Omar : The laboratory! (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last week, Hani came home very angry. He told his parents that the streets around his school were **crowded** with cars and people. They were dirty, too. People threw rubbish in the streets, not in bins. Hani is a very good pupil. He decided to make a team of pupils to make the streets clean and tidy. **They** cleaned the streets and grew some flowers there. Hani's team advised people to keep the streets clean. Teachers and parents helped the pupils by giving them advice and the money they needed. Other pupils in other schools liked the idea and decided to keep the streets around their schools clean. They also grew flowers everywhere.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?.....
2. What would happen if we all did like Hani and his friends?.....
3. How did teachers and parents help the pupils? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ..... .
   a) cars **b)** pupils **c)** streets **d)** schools
5. Hani is a ..... boy.
   a) lazy **b)** bad **c)** helpful **d)** stupid
6. The underlined word "**crowded**" in the passage means ..... .
   a) busy **b)** free **c)** clean **d)** dirty

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My aunt has many companies all over the world. She is a ..... .
   a) businesswoman **b)** beggar **c)** headteacher **d)** princess
2. There are lots of plastic bottles in the rubbish ..... .
   a) bean **b)** pen **c)** bin **d)** pin
3. The book is ..... . You should read it. WB
   a) fantastic **b)** ugly **c)** bad **d)** boring
4. How much time did you spend ..... this project?
   a) at **b)** in **c)** of **d)** on

5. Mohamed Salah is very ..... . He donates some money to charities.
a) generous b) unkind c) stupid d) cruel

6. You're very ..... . Your father will take you to the cinema.
a) busy b) relaxed c) cruel d) lucky

7. This charity has got a lot of ..... from rich people.
a) pollution b) equipment c) donations d) developments

8. At the weekends, I ..... get up early; I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock. WB
a) mustn't b) must c) have to d) don't have to

9. The museum ..... I visited last week had a big entrance. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
a) which b) who c) when d) where

10. It's cold. You ..... wear your jacket.
a) shouldn't b) should c) have d) haven't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (you/ have to) use a computer?
2. We ..... (has to) leave now or we'll miss the plane.
3. A good friend is someone ..... (which) helps others. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤
4. Children ..... (should) play in the street. المنوفية ٢٠٢٤

E Writing

6 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Nesma to tell her about charity work. Your name is Rahma and your email address is (rahma@student.com). Your friend's email address is (nesma@gmail.com).

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5	6
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Reading	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK						

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Rodina and Toka are talking about charities.

Rodina: What are you doing for the next mid-year holiday?

Toka : (1)..... .

a) I worked for a charity **b)** I'm going to stay home

c) I'm going to work for a charity **d)** I don't know

Rodina: Working for a charity is a good way to help our community.

Toka : (2)..... . We can do many things to help other people.

a) Maybe **b)** Perhaps **c)** I don't agree **d)** I agree with you

Rodina: (3).....?

a) What should we do **b)** Where can we go

c) When should we do **d)** How should we go

Toka : I feel that we should help disabled people.

Rodina: (4).....?

a) Did you work for a charity **b)** Can I stay home

c) Do I have to share something with you **d)** Can I work for a charity with you

Toka : Yes, you can work for a charity with me.

Rodina: I think it would be better if we donated money to charities.

Toka : (5)..... . Donation can help poor people.

a) I'm not sure **b)** Good idea **c)** Maybe **d)** I don't know

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother ..... (has) to cook today. There's lots of food in the fridge.

a) haven't **b)** hasn't **c)** don't have **d)** doesn't have

2. We ..... (shouldn't) not use water carelessly.

a) hasn't **b)** have **c)** should **d)** mustn't

3. This is the beach ..... (who) I like very much.

a) which **b)** where **c)** what **d)** whose

4. The woman ..... (whose) I visited is called Mrs Nahla.

a) why **b)** where **c)** which **d)** who

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)
Q 2	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	

Unit 6

DIFFERENT ENVIRONMENTS



OBJECTIVES OF THE UNIT

Reading	A presentation about climate change graphs; city profiles; a newspaper report
Writing	A profile about where you live; a paragraph on how to use less water; a short report for a school newspaper; a presentation about the climate
Listening	Radio news reports; a podcast about tourism
Speaking	Solving environmental problems; suggesting solutions to a problem
Language	(not) as + adjective + as; present simple passive
Life Skills	Negotiating; problem solving
Values	Coexistence values
Issues	Environmental and developmental issues

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video

SB pages 54 - 57 | WB pages 109 & 110

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

average (adj)	معدل/متوسط	line graph (n)	رسم بيانى خطى
bar chart (n)	رسم بيانى شريطى	polluted (adj)	ملوث
canal (n)	قناة	pollution (n)	تلوث
cause (d) (v)	يسبب	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمى
climate change (n)	التغير المناخى	rainfall (n)	سقوط الأمطار
drought (n)	جفاف	recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير (التصنيع)
electric (adj)	كهربائى (يدار بالكهرباء)	temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة
electricity (n)	الكهرباء	warn (ed) (v)	يحذر
flood (n/v)	فيضان/ يفيض	x-axis (n)	المحور السينى
green energy (n)	الطاقة الخضراء/النظيفة	y-axis (n)	المحور الصادى

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

area (n)	مساحة/منطقة	mountain (n)	جبل
ever before	من أى وقت مضى	planet (n)	كوكب
fire (n)	نار/حريق	recently (adv)	حديثًا
fuel (n)	وقود	user (n)	مستخدم

Check Point

Choose and complete: planet – cause – presentation – pollution

1 Eating too many sweets can ..... a stomachache.

2 The ..... we live on is called Earth.

3 We plant more trees to help reduce air ..... .

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Prepositions — حروف الجر

careful about	حريص بشأن	on top of	على قمة
in English	باللغة الإنجليزية	report from ... for	يقدم تقريرًا من ... لـ
on a programme	فى برنامج	known for	معروف بـ

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition

(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
drought	جفاف	flood	فيضان
melt	ينصهر	freeze	يتجمد

Check Point

Choose and complete: for – at – freeze

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك لحروف الجر والكلمات وعكسها.

1 The opposite of "melt" is "……".

2 Monkeys are known …… their love of climbing trees.

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

climate (على مدار العام) المناخ (لفترة طويلة/ **weather** (على مدار فترة قصيرة) الطقس

- Egypt's climate is fine.
- This week's weather is good for sailing.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
drought	جفاف	dryness	جفاف
melt	ينصهر	dissolve	يذوب

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
danger (n) خطر	-ous	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	dangerous (adj) خطير
electric (adj) (كهربائى) يدار بالكهرباء	-ity	تحويل الصفة إلى اسم	electricity (n) الكهرباء
pollute (v) يلوث	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	pollution (n) تلوث

Places

أماكن

Australia	أستراليا	Mount Catherine	جبل سانت كاترين
Europe	أوروبا	Mount Kenya	جبل كينيا
Iraq	العراق	Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كليمنجارو
Jabal Mousa	جبل موسى	Saudi Arabia	المملكة العربية السعودية

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Pre-listening question: - What could we do to help reduce pollution?

Lesson 1

Listen to two reports on a radio news programme for students. Which of the photos on page 54 are they talking about?

SB page 55

Girl Hello, this is Jomana reporting[1] for Student Radio in Cairo. Recently, volunteers who were working to clean a canal[2] say they are finding more rubbish[3] in the water. They say the canal is dirtier and more polluted than ever before. They are warning[4] people who live in the city to be more careful about where they put their rubbish to try to help the canal become cleaner.

Boy This is Karim reporting from Alexandria for Student FM. Today our city started using new electric[5] buses. The buses will mean there is less air pollution[6] in the city, so they are greener and they are also cheaper to run. I spoke to some bus users who said that the new buses were quieter than the old buses and also the seats were more comfortable.

(1) يخبر
(2) قناة مائية
(3) قمامة
(4) يحذر
(5) كهربى
(6) تلوث الهواء





Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

electric /ɪlektrɪk/ pollution /pə'lu:ʃən/

Comprehension Skills

- Extract information: استخراج المعلومات:

عليك قراءة السؤال جيدًا والتركيز على أداة الاستفهام لمعرفة المطلوب جيدًا ثم العودة للنص.

Example: أجب على السؤال التالى (خاص بالقطعة السابقة)

What did the bus users say about the new buses?

- They said that the new buses were quieter than the old buses, and the seats were also more comfortable.

Pre-reading question:

- What do you know about climate change?

Read the presentation. Does it talk about the problems you discussed in Exercise 1?

SB page 56

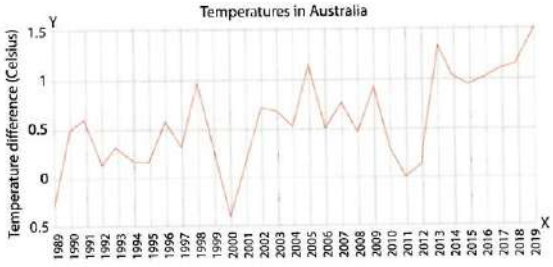
A changing world

Today's presentation[1] is about climate change[2]. This means our planet is changing. Here are two places that are different now.

(1) عرض تقديمى
(2) التغير المناخى
(3) رسم بيانى خطى
(4) المحور السينى
(5) المحور الصادى
(6) درجة الحرارة
(7) جفاف
(8) رسم بيانى شريطى
(9) ينصهر
(10) منطقة

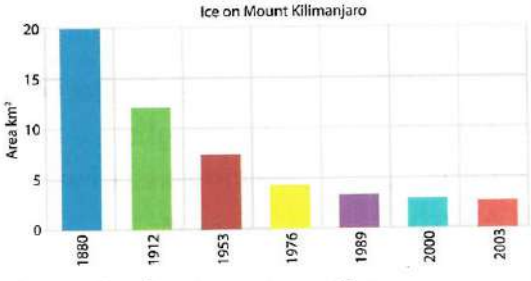
Australia

In this line graph[3], the x-axis[4] shows the year and the y-axis[5] shows the change in temperature[6]. You can see that the climate in Australia is becoming hotter and drier. More droughts[7] mean worse fires than ever before. Climate change means Australia is a more dangerous place to live.



Mount Kilimanjaro

This bar chart[8] shows that warmer and drier weather is melting[9] the ice on top of Africa's highest mountain, Mount Kilimanjaro. You can see that the area[10] of ice is much smaller than 140 years ago. The good news is that the ice is not melting as fast as before. However, the ice is continuing to get smaller.



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

drought /draʊt/ temperature /temprətʃər/

Post-reading questions:

1. How is the weather in Australia?
2. What causes climate change?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In winter, the ..... can be really cold, so we wear heavy clothes.
   a) rainfall b) temperature c) presentation d) electricity
2. We should use ..... buses because they are cleaner for the environment.
   a) comfortable b) heavy c) electric d) careful
3. There was no rain for three months this winter, so now there is a ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) flood b) storm c) pollution d) drought
4. I ..... my little sister not to touch the hot pot.
   a) changed b) spoke c) caused d) warned
5. One of the greatest dangers that faces people on earth is ..... change. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
   a) electric b) climate c) green d) forest
6. The plane needs ..... to fly up into the sky.
   a) rainfall b) graph c) seat d) fuel
7. The ..... temperature for this month is 22°C.
   a) comfortable b) electric c) average d) polluted
8. The heavy ..... last night caused many streets to flood.
   a) rainfall b) pollution c) recycling d) fuel
9. Many countries try ..... things to help the environment.
   a) recycling b) cycling c) damaging d) throwing
10. Using green ..... can protect the environment from pollution.
    a) flood b) drought c) energy d) smoke
11. A/An ..... is a long area of water made for ships or boats. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
    a) arch b) castle c) canal d) statue
12. The bus ..... like the new buses because they are quieter and more comfortable.
    a) seats b) users c) fires d) charts
13. When ice is heated, it ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
    a) freezes b) cools c) melts d) burns
14. We need to be careful ..... the food we eat.
    a) of b) on c) about d) at
15. The river doesn't have many fish because it is very ..... . الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
    a) clear b) clean c) pure d) polluted

C Language

1 Comparative Adjectives صفات المقارنة (المقارنة بين شيئين)

e.g. - A plane is faster than a train. - Cars are more expensive than bikes.

Usage الاستخدام

We use comparative adjectives to compare two things, people or places.

نستخدم صفات المقارنة للمقارنة بين شيئين، شخصين أو مكانين.

وتنقسم الصفات حسب النطق إلى:

Short adjectives: صفات قصيرة		Long adjectives: صفات طويلة	
وهى صفات تنطق على مقطع واحد: (one syllable)		وهى صفات تنطق على مقطعين أو أكثر: (two or more syllables)	
cheap	رخيص	attractive	جذاب
dirty	متسخ/قذر	beautiful	جميل
fast	سريع	careful	حريص
high	مرتفع	comfortable	مريح
large	ضخم/كبير	dangerous	خطير
noisy	صاخب	important	هام
old	كبير السن/قديم	interesting	شيق
quiet	هادئ	polluted	ملوث
safe	آمن	relaxing	مريح
warm	دافئ	serious	خطير/جاد

Form التكوين

1. Short adjectives: ... adj. + er + than + ... إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد

e.g. Mount Everest is higher than Mount Kilimanjaro.
The Nile is longer than the Amazon.

2. Long adjectives:

... more/ less + adj. + than ... إذا كانت الصفة بها أكثر من مقطع

e.g. Cairo is more crowded than Aswan. Dogs are less dangerous than lions.

لاحظ

١ الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) وقبلها حرف ساكن نقلب (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (er):

e.g. noisy ➡ noisier than heavy ➡ heavier than

٢ بعض الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الأخير ثم نضيف (er):

e.g. hot ➡ hotter than big ➡ bigger than

Common exceptions: استثناءات شائعة:

- good ..... **better than**
- bad ..... **worse than**
- far ..... **further than**

e.g. I'm better than Ali at maths.
e.g. Today's weather is worse than yesterday's.
e.g. Which Pyramid is further from the centre of Cairo?

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 She is ..... (happy) today than she was yesterday.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (happier) لوجود than والصفة happy قصيرة وتنتهى بـ (y + حرف ساكن) فتحول (y) إلى (i) ونضيف er.

2 The film is ..... (interesting) than the story.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (more/less interesting) لوجود than الدالة على المقارنة بين شيئين والصفة interesting طويلة نضع قبلها more/less.

3 The pollution in the city is getting ..... (bad) than it was a few years ago.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (worse) لوجود than الدالة على المقارنة بين شيئين.

2 (not) as ..... as (ليس) تمامًا مثل.....

e.g. Shahenda is as **tall** as her older sister.

Usage and form الاستخدام والتكوين

- We can use (as + **adj.** + as) to talk about things being the same:
- نستخدم(as + **adj.** + as) عند تساوى اثنين/شيئين فى صفة:

(not) as + adj. + as

e.g. - Droughts are as **serious** as floods.
- Australia is not as **dry** as Africa.

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 The good news is that the ice is not melting as ..... (faster) as before.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (fast) لوجود as ... as فنضع الصفة كما هى.

2 You're as ..... (beautiful) your mother.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (beautiful as) لوجود as قبل الصفة.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Maths is ..... than English. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) difficult b) difficult than c) as difficult d) more difficult
2. Zeinab is as beautiful ..... Hassnaa. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) than b) as c) to d) more
3. Mount Everest is ..... than any other mountain in the world.
   a) more higher b) more high c) higher d) highest
4. Egyptian food is ..... delicious than Chinese food.
   a) much b) more c) many d) most
5. The library is quieter ..... the class.
   a) than b) then c) so d) as
6. The coffee is ..... I prefer.
   a) warm as b) warm c) warmer d) warmer than
7. He is a ..... driver than his sister.
   a) carefully b) most careful c) more careful d) careful
8. Pollution in the countryside is not as ..... as pollution in cities. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) worse b) worst c) most d) bad
9. Her dress made her look even more ..... .
   a) large b) attractive c) small d) big
10. This bed is ..... comfortable than the one in the other room.
    a) some b) very c) much d) less

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The desert is ..... (dry) than the beach.
2. The canal is ..... (polluted) than it was before. SB
3. Which is ..... (far) to walk to, the park or the museum? الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
4. The city streets are ..... (noisier) the countryside's.
5. Fruits are ..... (good) for you than sweets. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
6. Today is not ..... (windy) as yesterday.

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about climate change

كيفية الكتابة عن تغير المناخ

- Climate change means the change in the world's temperature.
- There are many causes of climate change such as pollution and cutting down trees.
- Climate change causes (الآثار المترتبة عنه).
- We should (ما يجب فعله للحد من الظاهرة).
- We should stop (ما يجب أن نتوقف عن فعله).

Writing tips

Remember to check your writing for mistakes. Make sure that grammar, spelling and punctuation are correct.

تذكر مراجعة فقرتك لاكتشاف الأخطاء. تأكد من صحة القواعد اللغوية والهجاء وعلامات الترقيم.

Example

Climate change

Climate change means a change in the world's climate and temperature. Climate change is causing different kinds of unusual acts in the world's climate. It is the most discussed topic at the moment all over the world. There are many causes of climate change. Firstly, global warming is the main reason for it. Secondly, environmental pollution also causes climate change. Thirdly, cutting down trees is another cause of the problem. Climate change causes a rise in temperature, floods, droughts and ice melting which will seriously affect farming and all living things. We should reduce the bad results of climate change. Planting trees can reduce global warming. We should stop using bad chemicals which can reduce environmental pollution.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Changes of the climate"

It's very important to look after the environment. .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. What is Jomana reporting for?
   a) Cairo Radio. b) Student Radio. c) Teacher Radio. d) School Radio.
2. What are volunteers cleaning?
   a) A canal. b) A sea. c) A river. d) A lake.
3. What are they finding in the water?
   a) Grass. b) Plants. c) Flowers. d) Rubbish.
4. What should people do about their rubbish?
   a) Be worried. b) Be ugly. c) Be careful. d) Be careless.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Khaled and Emad are talking about climate change. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٤

Khaled : Good evening, Emad. What are you doing?
Emad : (1)..... .
Khaled : What is this book about?
Emad : (2)..... .
Khaled : (3).....?
Emad : It's a change in weather temperature and rainfall.
Khaled : Is it a serious problem?
Emad : (4)..... .
Khaled : (5).....?
Emad : Because it affects the environment.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... change means that the Earth is getting warmer and causing big changes in the weather.
   a) Recycling b) Climate c) Electricity d) Graph
2. The Nile used to ..... every year before building the High Dam. الغربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) feed b) rain c) finish d) flood
3. A line ..... is a special kind of picture that shows how something changes over time.
   a) fire b) graph c) fuel d) energy
4. I don't like going to work on my bike in wet ..... .
   a) storm b) climate c) weather d) breeze
5. I made a good ..... in class and showed them my project.
   a) fire b) user c) temperature d) presentation

6. Bikes are a ..... form of transport because they use no fuel. WB
a) pollution b) drought c) flood d) green
7. The water in the river was ....., so we couldn't swim in it.
a) careful b) polluted c) large d) comfortable
8. Football is ..... popular than handball.
a) more b) much c) most d) very
9. She is not as ..... as her mother.
a) most beautiful b) more beautiful c) less beautiful d) beautiful
10. Swimming in the sea is more ..... swimming in a pool.
a) as dangerous b) dangerous as c) dangerous than d) dangerous

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Is today ..... (hot) than yesterday? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
2. Health is more ..... (important) money.
3. I think pollution in big cities is ..... (bad) than pollution in the countryside.
4. The new trainers are ..... (as) comfortable than the old ones.

5 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Climate change"

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. The ..... of this bus are comfortable.
a) seats b) chairs c) armchairs d) wheelchairs
2. The ..... in Australia is becoming hotter and drier.
a) environment b) air c) climate d) weather

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. People hope there will be ..... (fewer) air pollution in the city.
2. ..... (Less) people speak Arabic than Chinese.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK					

STUDY Lessons 3 & 4

Watch a video

SB pages 58 - 60 | WB pages 111 & 112

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

black honey (n)	عسل أسود	Ministry of Tourism	وزارة السياحة
canal (n)	قناة مائية	cotton (n)	قطن
focus (n)	تركيز	podcast (n)	بث إذاعى
introduce (d) (v)	يقدم	position (n)	مكانة/موقع (جغرافى)
locate (d) (v)	يقع (جغرافيًا)	produce (d) (v)	ينتج
main (adj)	رئيسى/أساسى	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

believe (d) (v)	يعتقد/يصدق	scuba diver (n)	غواص
coral reef (n)	شعب مرجانية	scuba diving (n)	رياضة الغطس
home city (n)	موطن	tourism company (n)	شركة سياحة
matters (n)	أمور/شئون	travel company (n)	شركة سفر
nature reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية	turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية
particular (adj)	معين/محدد	wheat (n)	قمح
presenter (n)	مذيع/مقدم برنامج	winner (n)	الفائز

Check Point

Choose and complete: winner – wildlife – owner – introduced

1 Mum ..... me to our new neighbour, Mr Said.
2 We played a game and I gave the right answer, so I was the .....!
3 The zoo is a great place to see all kinds of different ....., like lions and giraffes.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

as > a result/usual	كنتيجة لـ/كالمعتاد	do > water sports	يمارس رياضات مائية
catch > fish	يصطاد سمكًا	go > scuba diving	يذهب للغطس

Prepositions — حروف الجر

along the river	على امتداد النهر	interested in	مهتم بـ
by the Suez Canal	عن طريق قناة السويس	on local farms	فى المزارع المحلية
closed to	مغلق أمام	on the Red Sea Coast	على ساحل البحر الأحمر
connected to	متصل/مرتبط بـ	rules for	قواعد لـ
famous for	مشهور بـ	spotlight on	تسليط الضوء على
important to/for	هام لـ	stop from	يمنع من

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
grow	ينمو	grew	grown

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها	Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
lovely	جميل	ugly	قبيح	positive	إيجابى	negative	سلبى

Check Point

Choose and complete: lovely – at – along – did – grow

1. Let's go for a walk ..... the river and see boats.
2. Last summer, we ..... water sports like swimming.
3. The flowers in the garden are ..... . I like them a lot.
4. Farmers always ..... lots of cotton in this area.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر وتصريفات الأفعال والكلمات وعكسها.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

canal	قناة مائية	a long area of water made for ships or boats
cotton	قطن	a plant used for making clothes[1]
locate	يقع (جغرافيًا)	find the position[2] of something
mosque	مسجد	a building where people can pray[3]

(1) ملابس

(2) موقع

(3) تصلى

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
funny	مضحك	amusing	مسلٍّ/ممتع
positive	إيجابى	hopeful	متفائل

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
introduce (v)	يقدم	-tion		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		introduction (n)	مقدمة

Similar Spelling - Different Meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
man	رجل	main	رئيسى/أساسى
rule	قانون/قاعدة	role	دور

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-reading question: - Where's your home city located?

Lesson 3

Look at the photos and titles in the article below. Then ask and answer the questions in pairs.

SB page 58

Spotlight on ... Port Said



- Port Said is located[1] in the north-east[2] of Egypt.
- The city is known for its ships, which come and go from around the world.
- Port Said is connected to[3] Suez by the Suez Canal.
- Many fish are caught in the sea near Port Said.

Spotlight on ... Tanta





- Tanta is located in the north of Egypt.
- Lots of cotton is grown in the area.
- The city is known for its delicious[4] sweets.
- Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmadi mosque is visited by thousands of people every year.

(1) تقع (جغرافيًا)
(2) شمال شرق
(3) متصلة بـ
(4) لذيذ/شهى

Post-reading question: - What's Tanta famous for?

Complete the sentences with the present simple passive form of the verbs in brackets. *SB page 59*

My home city[1] is Minya. It **is located** near the Nile. Lots of food **is grown** in the local area like potatoes, wheat and sugar. The city **is known** for its delicious "black honey[2]".

The honey **is made** from sugar. Many ancient monuments[3] and buildings **are found** in the city.

My city is very beautiful and interesting!

(1) موطن
(2) عسل أسود
(3) آثار

Listening Text

Lesson 4

SB page 60

Listen to the introduction to the podcast and choose the correct topic.



Podcast Presenter Today on Environment Matters, we're looking at tourism[1] on the Red Sea Coast[2]. Salma Fawzy from the Ministry of Tourism[3] is here to talk about how we can have tourism in Egypt that doesn't damage the environment[4].

Salma Hello, Salma. You're interested in helping both tourism and the environment, is that right? Exactly. Tourism is very important to Egypt. Our beautiful coast is visited by people from around the world - which is great! But the coast also has coral reefs and lots of important wildlife[5]. The coral reefs are important for our sharks, dolphins and turtles.

(1) السياحة
(2) ساحل البحر الأحمر
(3) وزارة السياحة
(4) البيئة
(5) الحياة البرية
(6) محميات طبيعية

Podcast Presenter So, what are you doing to protect the environment?

Salma Well, the islands on the Red Sea Coast are all nature reserves[6]. We are also working with hotels and travel companies. We have rules for new buildings to make them greener. We also give prizes to companies that are the best at looking after the environment.

Podcast Presenter Good idea!

Salma We also think that it's important to teach tourists about how to look after our special environment when they are on the beaches or doing water sports like scuba diving.

Pre-reading question: - What's meant by green energy?

Complete the text about three hotels with the correct form of these verbs:

WB page 112

The North Hotel



The North Hotel is located on a lovely beach and every year, the hotel is visited by more and more tourists. However, the hotel owner(1) said that last year, there were not as many turtles(2) on the beach as usual. As a result, the hotel is helping the turtles. Parts of the beach are closed to tourists so that turtles are safe. And at night, when the turtles leave their eggs in the sand, the hotel workers stop any tourists from visiting the beach.



The South Hotel



The South Hotel is near the coast, and every year, it takes tourists scuba diving(3). However, workers on the boats believe that coral reefs(4) are often damaged by scuba divers.

The hotel is now working with a charity that helps the coral reefs. Now some of the money that tourists pay for the boat trips is used to help protect the coral reefs.

The East Hotel

The East Hotel is very new. Only green energy(5) from the sun and wind is used at the hotel. The hotel also produces(6) very little rubbish(7); most of it is recycled. All the fruit and vegetables at the hotel restaurant are grown on local farms, and the people working at the hotel are all from the local villages.

(1) مالك
(2) سلاحف بحرية
(3) الغطس
(4) الشعاب المرجانية
(5) الطاقة الخضراء (النظيفة)
(6) ينتج
(7) قمامة

Comprehension Skills

Extract information: استخراج المعلومات

عليك قراءة السؤال جيدا والتركيز على أداة الاستفهام لمعرفة المطلوب جيدًا ثم العودة للنص.

اقرأ الأسئلة وحاول الإجابة بمفردك ثم تأكد من إجاباتك. الأسئلة خاصة بالقطعة السابقة.

Answer the following questions:

1. What kind of energy is used in the East Hotel?
2. Why do hotel workers stop tourists from visiting the beach in the North Hotel?

Answers:

1. Only green energy from the sun and wind is used at the hotel.
2. Because the turtles leave their eggs in the sand.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should make sure your computer is ..... to the internet.
   a) contacted b) communicated c) tied d) connected
2. Minya has delicious black ..... made from sugar.
   a) honey b) rose c) flower d) cotton
3. Our farm ..... a lot of tasty fruits and vegetables.
   a) introduces b) produces c) catches d) connects
4. Can you find our ..... on this map?
   a) position b) pollution c) podcast d) introduction
5. We are going on a trip with a tourism ..... to a new city to see all the amazing sights!
   a) position b) company c) podcast d) ministry
6. Healthy cereals include ..... .
   a) macaroni b) ice cream c) sugar d) wheat
7. The ..... asked Mohamed Salah a question, but he didn't want to answer.
   a) owner b) winner c) diver d) presenter
8. I ..... scuba diving and saw colourful fish swimming all around me.
   a) located b) did c) went d) caught
9. Magdy Yacoub is ..... for his kindness.
   a) opened b) famous c) closed d) spent
10. She tried to be more ..... about her new job.
    a) passive b) hopeless c) positive d) negative
11. I'm interested ..... playing football and reading.
    a) with b) at c) to d) in
12. The park is closed ..... visitors during the rainy weather.
    a) at b) of c) to d) on
13. Port Said is ..... in the north-east of Egypt. بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢
    a) located b) connected c) stood d) built
14. I look for a/an ..... toy for my son. He wants a certain one.
    a) negative b) ugly c) particular d) main
15. We use ..... for making clothes. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) wheat b) cotton c) hummus d) rice
16. I visit my grandparents on Friday, ... usual.
    a) so b) like c) such d) as

C Language

The Present Simple Passive المبنى للمجهول فى زمن المضارع البسيط

e.g. The museum is visited by many tourists.

Usage الاستخدام

We use the passive form when the action is more important than who does it or we don't know who does the action.

نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عندما يكون الحدث أهم ممن فعله/ عندما نكون لا نعرف الفاعل.

Form التكوين

لمراجعة زمن المضارع البسيط
يرجى العودة لصفحة (14)

He / She / It (اسم مفرد) + inf. مصدر الفعل + s/es/ies < **Active** المبنى للمعلوم > I / You / We / They (اسم جمع) + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. Farmers grow lots of cotton in the area.
فاعل — فعل — مفعول

للتحويل من المبنى للمعلوم للمبنى للمجهول نبدأ بالمفعول ويليه (am - is - are) ثم التصريف الثالث للفعل ويمكن أن نضيف (by) يليه الفاعل فى النهاية.

Passive المبنى للمجهول > Object (مفعول) + (am - is - are) + past participle **(P.P.)** التصريف الثالث للفعل

e.g. Lots of cotton is grown in this area by farmers.
مفعول — is (P.P.) — by + الفاعل

Negative النفى

Object (مفعول) + (am/ is/ are) + not + P.P. (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

e.g. In my home city, we don't grow rice. (Active)
Rice isn't grown in my home city. (Passive)

Question السؤال

(Is/ Are) + object + P.P. (التصريف الثالث للفعل)?

e.g. Do you grow much rice in your country? (Active)
Is much rice grown in your country? (Passive)

Got it ?

تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Tanta ..... (know) for its delicious sweets.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (is known) لأن الجملة تبدأ بالمفعول أى انها فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول.

2 Where is your home city ..... (locate)?
- الإجابة الصحيحة (located) لأن السؤال فى صيغة المجهول فى المضارع البسيط ولوجود is ويأتى بعدها التصريف الثالث.

3 We ..... (playing) football every day.
- الإجابة الصحيحة (play) لأن الجملة فى صيغة المعلوم فى المضارع البسيط والفاعل We.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egypt ..... by more and more tourists every year.
   a) visited b) is visited c) visits d) visit
2. Alexandria ..... in the north of Egypt.
   a) is located b) locate c) locating d) locates
3. Some people believe that coral reefs are often ..... by scuba divers.
   a) damage b) damages c) damaging d) damaged
4. Some of the money that tourists pay ..... to help protect the environment.
   a) use b) used c) is used d) uses
5. This hotel ..... tourists scuba diving every year.
   a) take b) takes c) taking d) is taken
6. The walls aren't ..... by my mother.
   a) painted b) painting c) paint d) paints
7. Doors ..... by the carpenter. الصوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) makes b) are made c) made d) make
8. ..... the thief caught by the police officer?
   a) Is b) Has c) Does d) Will
9. Vegetables ..... to make our bodies healthy. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
   a) eat b) is eaten c) are eaten d) eats
10. Children always ..... a lot of water. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
    a) drink b) drinks c) drinking d) are drinking

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (ask) to clean my room by my parents.
2. Furniture isn't ..... (making) in Luxor. الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢
3. People ..... (are played) football all around the world. WB
4. Hundreds of photos of the Pyramids ..... (are taking) every day. WB
5. English ..... (speak) all over the world. الصوفية ٢٠٢٢
6. Only green energy from the sun and wind ..... (use) at this hotel.

D Skills

Write it right

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

1. How to write about your home city

كيفية الكتابة عن مدينتك

Example

To : paul@gmail.com
From : nader@gmail.com
Subject : My home city
Hello Paul,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about my home city. I come from a beautiful city called Hurghada on the Red Sea. It's very green and has many beaches and mountains. It is not polluted and the people are very friendly. It also has a small city centre area and you can find many shops and restaurants, for example, seafood restaurants and supermarkets. My home city is on the coast, so there are many boats and ships. You can see turtles there. There are many fishermen around, so you can eat many kinds of cheap fish. It's very hot in the summer and warm in the winter. There are many parks and museums in my home city. Many tourists visit it in the wintertime because it has lovely weather. You should come and visit it one day.

Write soon.
Nader

2. How to write about "recycling"

كيفية الكتابة عن «إعادة التصنيع»

Example

Recycling

Recycling is important in today's world if we want to keep this planet clean for our future grandchildren. It is good for the environment because we are making new products from the old products which aren't used anymore. Recycling begins at home. If you are not throwing away any of your old products and instead reusing them for something new, then you are recycling. Recycling can benefit your community and the environment. It helps to reduce air and water pollution. Try to buy products that are made from recycled materials. There are some examples of paper, metal and plastic. Before throwing anything, think about how to reuse it.

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

القليوبية ٢٠٢٤

Our planet is in danger because of the increasing temperature. This is called global warming. Climate change causes floods, drought and ice melting. It affects all living things. We should face climate change. Planting trees helps to reduce carbon dioxide. We should stop pollution by using renewable energy. On the other hand, recycling rubbish is more necessary. We must stop bad chemicals, we also should save water to turn the desert into green lands. It's important to save the earth and help the environment to live safely.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. .....
2. Why do you think global warming is dangerous? .....
3. How can we stop climate change? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "also" means ..... .
   a) too b) to c) two d) we
5. We get renewable energy from the ..... .
   a) flood b) drought c) sun d) desert
6. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ..... .
   a) climate change b) the desert
   c) the environment d) carbon dioxide

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can you tell me the ..... reason for coming late?
   a) lovely b) main c) local d) closed
2. The heavy rain stopped us ..... going for a walk outside.
   a) of b) at c) from d) to
3. Some engineers came with machines to dig a new ..... .

السنوية ٢٠٢٢

   a) crop b) house c) canal d) box
4. The wildlife on the Red Sea Coast is all nature ..... .
   a) reserves b) laboratories c) monuments d) deserts
5. They went fishing and ..... enough fish for a delicious dinner.
   a) located b) caught c) did d) went
6. The scuba ..... took underwater photographs of coral reefs.
   a) driver b) driving c) diver d) diving

7. Alexandria is ..... the north of Egypt.
a) in b) on c) of d) at
8. Most of the rubbish we produce ..... .
a) is recycled b) recycled c) recycling d) recycles
9. A lot of fruit and vegetables ..... on our local farms.
a) grow b) grows c) are grown d) are growing
10. New houses ..... every year in our city.
a) builds b) build c) are building d) are built

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Do) you driven to your school by anyone?
2. Dogs are fed ..... (with) my brother every day.
3. Millions of emails ..... (send) every day in the world.
4. Giza ..... (knows) for its ancient pyramids. WB

4 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Hisham to tell him about a famous city you visited. Your name is Samy and your email address is (samy@gmail.com). Your friend's email address is (hisham@hotmail.com).

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

1. We can produce ..... energy from the sun and wind.
a) fuel b) green c) oil d) gas
2. The shoe shop ..... at nine every day.
a) opens b) open c) is opening d) opening

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Meat is cut ..... (in) a sharp knife.
2. My grandparents ..... (visited) every Friday.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4
TACKLES	Comprehension	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK				

STUDY Lessons 5 & 6

Watch a video

SB pages 61 - 62 | WB pages 113 & 114

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

aim (ed) (to) (v)	يهدف (إلى)	including (prep)	مشتملًا على/متضمنًا
air pollution (n)	تلوث الهواء	lead to (led) (v)	يؤدى إلى
burn (burnt) (v)	يحرق	melt (ed) (v)	ينصهر/ يذوب
climate change (n)	تغير المناخ	remind (ed) (v)	يذكّر
diagram (n)	رسم توضيحى/بيانى	reuse (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام
event (n)	حدث	riverbank (n)	ضفة النهر
global (adj)	عالمى	vote (d) (v)	يدلى بصوته/يصوّت
importance (of) (n)	أهمية (لـ)	water (ed) (v)	يروى/يسقى

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

billion	مليار	gas (n)	غاز
city centre (n)	وسط البلد	solution (n)	حل
coloured (adj)	ملون	ton (n)	طن
expressions (n)	تعبيرات	washing (n)	الغسيل

Check Point

Choose and complete: burn – importance – suggestion – coloured

1. Don't touch the hot pot or it will ..... you!
2. Let's draw a picture using ..... pencils.
3. The ..... of eating fruits and vegetables is to help us stay healthy.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

get > warmer	يصبح أكثر دفئًا	solve > a problem	يحل مشكلة

Prepositions — حروف الجر

check for mistakes	يتحقق من الأخطاء	lie/lying on a beach	يستلقى على الشاطئ
clean up	ينظف	report for	تقرير لـ
for example	على سبيل المثال	vote on	يصوت على

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
interesting	شيق	boring	ممل
true	صحيح/حقيقى	untrue	غير حقيقى

Check Point

Choose and complete: on – boring – for – solve

1. When you finish your homework, remember to check ..... mistakes.
2. You should think well to be able to ..... the problem.
3. The antonym of "interesting" is "..... ".

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر والكلمات وعكسها.

Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions — التعريفات

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	It happens when[1] there is too much smoke from factories[2].
climate change	تغير المناخ	It happens when the planet gets warmer.
drought	جفاف	It happens when there is not enough rain[3].
flood	فيضان	It happens when there is too much rain.
melt	ينصهر/ يذوب	It happens when ice warms[4].

(1) يحدث عندما
(2) مصانع
(3) مطر
(4) يدفء

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
interesting	شيق	amazing	مدهش
true	صحيح/حقيقى	real	حقيقى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix	اللاحقة	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
colour (n)	لون	-ed		تحويل الاسم إلى صفة		coloured (adj)	ملون
express (v)	يعبر	-ion		تحويل الفعل إلى اسم		expression (n)	تعبير

Prefix البادئة

Prefix	البادئة	Function	الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
re-		بمعنى يعيد عمل شىء		use (v)	يستخدم	reuse (v)	يعيد استخدام

B Reading & Listening Skills

Listening Text

Lesson 5

SB page 61

Listen and check your answers.



Aya The problem is that we all use too much water.
Reem That's true. So, how can we use less water?
Aya Well, why don't we try recycling water?
Reem How could we do that?
Aya For example, we could use the water from washing to water the plants.
Reem That's an interesting idea! The plants would like that!

Listen to Dina talking about her school and answer the questions.

WB page 113



Dina Our school project this week is to think about rubbish at school. In our school, we have a rubbish bin in every room. The students are very good and they always put their rubbish in the bins. At the moment, the rubbish is collected every week and goes to a special place in the city. But when we look inside the bins, we can see that most of the rubbish is made of paper or plastic. We can recycle a lot of this rubbish. So now, before students put things in the rubbish bin, we ask them to think: Can I recycle that? If the answer is yes, they can now put it in a special bin so it can be used again.

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2, then role-play the dialogue.

WB page 113



Dina Look at all the plastic water bottles in the rubbish bin. The problem is that we use too many of them.
Leila How can we stop people using them?
Dina Why don't we ask people to use them again?
Leila How could we do that?
Dina People could take home the bottles, wash them, and bring them to school the next day.
Leila That's an interesting idea. We can see what the teacher thinks.

Pre-reading question:

- What do you do to help protect the environment?

Lesson 6

Read the article and answer the questions: *SB page 62*

Students help to clean river

By Khadeeja El-Maghrabi



(1) ضفة النهر
(2) قمامة
(3) الحياة البرية
(4) المتطوعون

Last weekend, ten students from Class 7 helped clean up the part of the riverbank[1] near the city centre. The students collected 15 bags of rubbish[2]. Their teacher, Mr. Hassan, said the students were sad to find so much rubbish.

"There were lots of plastic bags and bottles," he said. "We even found an old shoe!"

One of the students said, "It was great to clean the riverbank, but we need to teach people to be more careful with their rubbish. Rubbish in the river damages the wildlife[3].

Well done to the volunteers[4]!

Post-reading question: - What do you think of the students?

Read the article again and match the paragraphs 1-3 with the headings a-c.

WB page 114

1. *What's Global Recycling Day?*

Global Recycling Day[1] is an event[2] in March. It aims to[3] remind people of the importance of recycling things including paper, plastic, metal, water and even gas[4] and oil[5]. It was started in 2018 and there are now recycling events in many different countries.

(1) اليوم العالمي للتدوير
(2) حدث
(3) يهدف لـ
(4) الغاز
(5) البترول
(6) مليار

2. *So why is recycling so important?*

In 2018, people produced about 11 billion[6] tonnes of rubbish around the world. At the moment, a lot of our rubbish is burnt and this can lead to climate change.



3. *What are countries doing about the problem?*

No country recycles as much rubbish as Germany: It recycles more than 56% of it. In 1991, it recycled about 3%. South Korea recycles more than 53% of its rubbish. Coloured plastic bottles and some plastic cups are not used anymore, because you can recycle them. Most countries hope to recycle more in the future.

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Climate change happens when the planet ..... warmer.
   a) aims b) falls c) gets d) feels
2. Let's have a picnic lunch, ... sandwiches, fruits and sweets.
   a) melting b) solving c) including d) checking
3. My father helps a lot to ..... my problems.
   a) bring b) have c) get d) solve
4. I had so much fun ..... on a beach and feeling the warm sand.
   a) lying b) reusing c) cleaning d) including
5. Taha ..... to finish his homework before dinner, so he could have time to play.
   a) burnt b) aimed c) brought d) led
6. Remember to ..... your water bottle instead of throwing it away.
   a) bring b) clean c) reuse d) vote
7. Look at all the beautiful flowers growing along the ..... .
   a) riverbank b) diagram c) event d) solution
8. Studying hard can ..... to good work in school.
   a) remind b) melt c) vote d) lead
9. The smoke of old cars and factories causes ..... pollution. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) air b) water c) soil d) plant
10. When the planet gets warmer, it is called ..... change. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
    a) pilot b) climate c) plate d) global
11. Drier weather is ..... the ice on top of the mountains. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
    a) sinking b) trying c) leaving d) melting
12. Soha ..... her sister to visit her aunt last Monday. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) remembered b) reminded c) revised d) repeated
13. When there is no rain for a long time, there is a ..... . الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
    a) flood b) rain c) volcano d) drought
14. When there is too much rain, there is often a ..... . الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
    a) sea b) river c) drought d) flood

C Skills



Speaking

Making suggestions

تقديم اقتراحات

online

The problem is that we use too much water.
المشكلة أننا نستخدم كميات كبيرة جدًا من المياه.

That's true. هذا حقيقي.

Why don't we try recycling water? لم لا نجرب إعادة تدوير المياه؟

- That's an interesting idea! - إنها فكرة شيقة!
- How can/could we do that? - كيف يمكننا فعل ذلك؟

We could use the water from washing to water plants.
يمكننا استخدام مياه الغسيل لنروى بها النباتات.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Asmaa and Norhan are talking about the problem of using too much water.

Asmaa : Hello, Norhan. How are you?

Norhan : Hi! (1)..... .

Asmaa : We had a debate at school this morning.

Norhan : (2).....?

Asmaa : It was about the water we use.

Norhan : (3).....?

Asmaa : The problem is that we use too much water.

Norhan : How can we solve this problem?

Asmaa : (4)..... . We can use this water to plant trees.

Norhan : (5)..... .

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test



Unit 6 Lessons (5 & 6)

7.5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hatem and Hussein are talking about the school project.

Hatem : What are you thinking of?
Hussein : (1) .....
Hatem : What is the school project about?
Hussein : (2) .....
Hatem : Why don't we recycle this rubbish?
Hussein : (3) .....
Hatem : We could collect rubbish every week.
Hussein : (4) .....?
Hatem : This rubbish goes to a special place in the city. (5) .....?
Hussein : I think we could reuse plastic bottles again.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. By looking at a ....., we can understand the lesson better.
   a) riverbank b) diagram c) solution d) suggestion
2. We can make friends with people from all over the world because we are part of a ..... community.
   a) coloured b) warm c) global d) true
3. My mum decided that we should ..... on which film we would watch.
   a) vote b) melt c) bring d) reuse
4. When the sun came out, it ..... warmer outside.
   a) did b) got c) made d) led
5. Sitting on the beach is ..... than anything else.
   a) relaxing b) most relaxing c) much relaxing d) more relaxing
6. The plants are usually ..... by the farmer.
   a) watered b) watering c) waters d) water

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The library is ..... (quiet) than the playground.
2. She is ..... (careful) than her sister.
3. Rubbish ..... (collects) every day.
4. This hotel room is not as comfortable ..... (than) the one we stayed in before.

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3
TACKLES	Speaking	Vocabulary	Language
MARK			

Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test On Unit 6

24

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع
فى نهاية الكتاب.

القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

1. What should we do for the environment?
   a) Pollute it. b) Protect it.
   c) Waste it. d) Burn it.
2. How could we reduce the global warming?
   a) Save energy. b) Waste energy.
   c) Use hot water. d) Take long shower.
3. What should we do?
   a) Plant trees. b) Cut trees.
   c) Buy trees. d) Sell trees.
4. Trees give us ..... .
   a) oil b) water
   c) oxygen d) air

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona and Dina are talking about their cities.

الشرقية ٢٠٢٤

Mona : Hello! Dina. Where do you live?
Dina : Hello! Mona. (1)..... .
Mona : (2).....?
Dina : Giza is located near Cairo.
Mona : (3).....?
Dina : Yes, I like my city very much.
Mona : How do you go to school?
Dina : (4)..... . Any other questions?
Mona : (5)..... . You are really my best friend.
Dina : You're welcome.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We all know that water is very important in our life. We need water for drinking, washing, cooking, watering the fields and getting electricity. We should not use it carelessly. Many careless people use water in a very bad way. Some of **them** use too much water to wash their cars. Others leave taps open day and night. Children must learn how and when to use water carefully. Parents and teachers have to teach their children that water means our life because it can help us to turn the desert into green land to grow more crops. Nowadays, **modern** ways are used to water plants to save water. Without water nothing on our planet can live, so we should all keep water clean.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about? .....
2. Why do you think we use modern ways to water plants? .....
3. What do teachers and parents have to teach children? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Water can help us to ..... more crops.
   a) build b) grow c) tell d) drink
5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ..... .
   a) fields b) children c) careless people d) taps
6. The underlined word "**modern**" in the passage is the opposite of "..... ".
   a) fast b) big c) new d) old

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's important to keep our ..... clean by recycling our rubbish.
   a) flood b) diagram c) mountain d) environment
2. ..... means the animals and plants that live in nature.
   a) A podcast b) Pollution c) Wildlife d) A monument
3. ..... is important because it helps plants and animals have water to drink and grow.
   a) Rainfall b) Drought c) Electricity d) Energy
4. I like listening to songs ..... English.
   a) on b) in c) at d) with

5. I want to work on TV. I want to be a ..... .

a) diver b) presenter c) winner d) swimmer

6. Elephants are known ..... their big size ears.

a) in b) by c) for d) at

7. To ..... is to find the position of something.

a) solve b) collect c) respect d) locate

8. You need to be ..... careful when you carry heavy things.

a) more b) most c) many d) as

9. The beach seems ..... than it really is.

a) far b) farther c) more far d) most far

10. My father is ..... my mother.

a) old b) older c) oldest d) as old as

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Milk ..... (produces) by cows on the farm.
2. The Pyramids ..... (is visited) by thousands of people every day.
3. Reading books is ..... (good) than watching TV.
4. This dress is as cheap ..... (than) the one I saw yesterday.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"How to help clean the environment"

.....

.....

.....

.....

QUESTION SURVEY

هذا الجدول يوضح درجاتك فى كل مهارة من مهارات الامتحان لتحديد نقاط القوة والضعف لديك.

QUESTION	1	2	3	4	5	6
TACKLES	Listening	Speaking	Reading	Vocabulary	Language	Writing
MARK						

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Alaa and Sara are talking about climate change.

Alaa: Hello, Sara. How are you?

Sara: (1)..... .

a) I'm a student b) I'm fine, thanks c) I don't know d) I'm ten

Alaa: Did you have science yesterday?

Sara: (2)..... . It was interesting.

a) Yes, I did b) No, I didn't c) Yes, I do d) No, I don't

Alaa: (3).....?

a) When was the lesson b) How was the lesson

c) What was the lesson about d) What time was the lesson

Sara: The lesson was about climate change.

Alaa: (4).....?

a) How does climate change happen b) When does climate change happen

c) What did climate change mean d) What does climate change mean

Sara: Climate change means our planet is changing.

Alaa: Do you think we can stop climate change?

Sara: (5)..... .

a) Yes, I think so b) Yes, I did c) Yes, I have d) Yes, I will

2 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. Electric buses are ..... (good) than old buses.

a) as good b) more good c) better d) best

2. Nader runs as ..... (fast) his brother.

a) more fast b) fastest c) faster d) fast as

3. Lots of food ..... (grows) in the local area.

a) is grown b) grown c) grow d) growing

4. Coral reefs are often ..... (damage) by scuba divers.

a) damaging b) damaged c) damages d) to damage

ANSWER HERE

Q 1	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	5 (a)(b)(c)(d)
Q 2	1 (a)(b)(c)(d)	2 (a)(b)(c)(d)	3 (a)(b)(c)(d)	4 (a)(b)(c)(d)	

Question Bank On Units 5&6

1 Complete the following dialogue:

1. Said and Asmaa are talking about cities. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

Said : What is Tanta famous for?
Asmaa : (1)..... .
Said : (2).....?
Asmaa : Black honey is made in Minya.
Said : What do people plant in Minya?
Asmaa : (3)..... .
Said : (4).....?
Asmaa : Port Said is famous for ships and delicious fish.
Said : Where is Port Said located?
Asmaa : (5)..... .

2. Khaled is talking to Sami who is reading a book about pollution. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

Khaled : Hi Sami. What are you doing?
Sami : Hi Khaled. (1)..... .
Khaled : What is this book about?
Sami : (2)..... .
Khaled : (3).....?
Sami : We can stop pollution by planting more trees.
Khaled : (4).....?
Sami : Because trees keep the air clean.
Khaled : (5)..... .
Sami : I agree. Recycling our rubbish can also solve this problem.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mazen is 15 years old, he is a ..... . القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
a) baby b) kid c) child d) teenager

2. I work for a charity which ..... after poor people. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
a) takes b) makes c) looks d) goes

3. ..... means happening without a plan. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤
a) Random b) Freedom c) Kindness d) Sorrow

4. I always give money to a/an ..... that helps poor children. دمياط ٢٠٢٤
a) emergency b) charity c) airport d) prison

5. A ..... is the person who asks others for money as he is poor. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) volunteer b) liar c) beggar d) bigger

6. This building is very tall, but we can go to the top in the ..... . الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

a) steps b) left c) lift d) bins

7. I ..... the same room with my sister. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

a) share b) sure c) shore d) shear

8. The ..... made the whole city covered with water. الجيزة ٢٠٢٤

a) drought b) volcano c) flood d) pollution

9. Good children should ..... their parents and teachers. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤

a) predict b) respect c) protect d) expect

10. If you are tired, why don't you ..... a rest? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) have b) be c) become d) do

11. When the planet ..... warmer, it is called global warming. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) brings b) does c) gets d) solves

12. You don't ..... travel now because the flight was delayed. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢

a) has to b) has c) have to d) have

13. Hamdi went to the baker's ..... he could get bread. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) who b) where c) which d) when

14. He ..... to wash his hands. It's necessary. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢

a) has b) have c) should d) must

15. Paper ..... from trees. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) makes b) is made c) made d) make

16. Vegetables ..... to make our bodies healthy. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢

a) eat b) is eaten c) are eaten d) eats

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. That is the temple ..... (who) the students visited last year. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
2. You ..... (should) spend too much time on social media. كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢
3. We should ..... (are) kind to poor people. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
4. Who is as ..... (taller) as you in the class? الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
5. Honey ..... (make) from sugar. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
6. What does Hala ..... (has to) do? القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
7. Most of the food we eat ..... (cook) by my sister. الشرقية ٢٠٢٤
8. You ..... (not/have) to take out the rubbish; I did it this morning. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
9. Cotton clothes ..... (sell) all over the world. القاهرة ٢٠٢٤
10. Alexandria is not hotter ..... (then) Sudan. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

Review B On Units 4,5&6

Listening Text

Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- Do you like visiting historic places? Why?

Listen to the telephone conversation. What place is the teacher calling and why?

SB page 64



Mrs. Saki Good afternoon, Luxor Museum, how can I help you?

Mr. El-Baz Hello, I'm a teacher and I want to bring my class to visit the museum next week. Can you tell me what time you are open, please?

Mrs. Saki Of course. We're open every day from 9 a.m. to 2 p.m. and then 5 p.m. to 9 p.m.

Mr. El-Baz Can I buy tickets at the museum?

Mrs. Saki Yes, certainly. Or you can buy them online before your visit.

Mr. El-Baz How much are the tickets?

Mrs. Saki They're 120 pounds for adults and 60 pounds for children and students.

Mr. El-Baz OK, thank you. Can you tell me where the museum is exactly?

Mrs. Saki It's located in the north of Luxor on Corniche El Nil.

Mr. El-Baz Thank you so much for your help!

Mrs. Saki You're welcome. Bye!

Post-listening question:

- How much are the tickets?

Pre-listening question:

- What places do like visiting?

Listen and match the three telephone conversations 1–3 with the places the callers want to visit a–c. *WB page 116*

1

Woman Good morning, how can I help you?

Man Hello, I'd like to know some of the things I can see and do if I visit today.



Woman Yes, you can usually see lots of wildlife, or you could go scuba diving.

2

Man 1 Hello, how can I help you today?

Man 2 Good morning. Can you tell me how much a ticket costs?

Man 1 Of course. Adults are 160 pounds and children are 80 pounds.

Man 2 Can I buy the tickets online?

Man 1 Yes, and the tickets are cheaper on the museum website, too.

3

Woman 1 Good afternoon, how can I help?

Woman 2 I'd like to know what time you close today.

Woman 1 Certainly. We close at 3 p.m., so if you want to visit the castle today, you'll have to get here soon.

Woman 2 Thank you for your help.

Post-listening question:

- Which one of the three places would you like to visit?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 2

- Do you like visiting ancient places?

Read the text quickly. Which objects did Hamid see at the museum?

SB page 64

A trip to Luxor Museum

By Hamid



Last week, I went to Luxor Museum with my class. The museum is further from my home than our school. We were travelling for a long time! We arrived at 10.30 a.m. As we were walking into the museum, we saw some big statues. My favourite was the statue of Ramses II. There were also rings and necklaces that once belonged to rich Egyptian families. There were a lot of small coins from the same time, too.

The museum has some very old objects. My favourite objects were the metal bowls from the fourteenth century. The oldest objects in the museum were the tools. Some were made of metal and some were made of stone. While I was reading the information, my friend found a tool that was 10,000 years old.

Post-reading question:

- What were the tools made of?

Pre-reading question: - What's the most famous temple in Luxor?

Read and complete the article.

WB page 116



The city of Edfu, which is **located** to the west of the River Nile, is **known** for the famous Temple of Horus. For hundreds of years, people forgot about the temple until 1860, when a French man, Auguste Mariette, found part of an **arch** in the sand. He realised that there were 12 metres of sand on top of the ancient building. People carefully took the sand off the temple and today, it is one of the **biggest** temples in Egypt. Tourists **have to** buy a ticket to look around the temple, **which** is more than 2,000 years old. Tourists **who** go to the temple always remember this **awesome** building.

Post-reading question: - Who discovered the Temple of Horus?

Listening Texts

Unit 1

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Walid is my best friend. He is very active. He usually gets up at six o'clock. He gets dressed and goes to school with his twin brother. They have breakfast at school. Walid likes English and he's very good at it. His brother likes Arabic.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 1

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Samira's daily routine is the same every day. She usually gets up at half past six. She has breakfast and her parents drive her to school while they're going to hospital. In the afternoon, Samira has lunch alone and then does her homework. In the evening, she likes to watch TV on the sofa.

Unit 2

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My sister, Karima, and I always like to do new things at the weekend. She learns how to use sign language. This weekend, I am painting my bedroom and my sister is sewing new curtains.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Rania is a dentist. She is married and has two children. She works in London. She always advises her patients to look after their teeth.

Unit 3

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Egyptian Handball Team are heroes! They won the Handball Africa Cup of Nations in Tunisia in 2020. They won the final against Tunisia 27-23.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 3

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

This is a photo of my sister. She is 50 years old. She works as a nurse in a big hospital in Cairo. She always helps ill people. She used to study hard when she was young.

Unit 4

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The teacher decided to take the children on a trip to Luxor next Monday. They must bring lunch with them because they will spend all the day out. They must bring hats with them because it will be very hot. They mustn't touch the objects there and they must follow the rules.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like senet. Senet boxes have 30 squares. This box is made of wood and is about 3,500 years old. Some people did not have senet boxes, but they still played the game. They drew the squares on the floor.

Unit 5

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I'm Hala. I have to make my bed every day and tidy up my bedroom once a week. My mother isn't happy about how messy I am, but I always tidy up once a week on Saturday morning. It takes a long time. I have to put away all my clothes.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 5

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

On Monday, I bought my grandmother some of her favourite cakes at the baker's on the way home from school. She was surprised, but very happy!

Unit 6

Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Hello, this is Jomana reporting for Student Radio in Cairo. Recently, volunteers who were working to clean a canal say they are finding more rubbish in the water. People should be careful about their rubbish.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 6

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

We should all do our best to help protect our environment. We should save energy to help reduce global warming. We should plant more trees as they give us oxygen.

Challenging Questions Answers

Unit 1

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. 1. b) don't 2. a) is

2. 1. are 2. eats

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. 1. a) minute 2. b) verb

2. 1. isn't 2. went

Unit 2

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. 1. d) tired 2. d) be

2. 1. is staying 2. having

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. 1. b) to 2. b) middle

2. 1. really 2. happy

Unit 3

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. b) to win 2. d) later

3. wasn't 4. was

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. 1. b) health 2. a) healthy

2. 1. be 2. isn't

Unit 4

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. d) away 2. a) history

3. c) recommend 4. d) we must

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. 1. a) home 2. d) like

2. 1. playing 2. sleeping

Unit 5

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. b) back to 2. a) practise

3. a) has 4. d) they should

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. a) reach 2. b) behind

3. a) when 4. a) who's

Unit 6

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. 1. a) seats 2. c) climate

2. 1. less 2. Fewer/More

Lessons (3 & 4)

1. 1. b) green 2. a) opens

2. 1. with 2. are visited

ALADWAA
Gem

New Hello!

الصف الثانى الإعدادى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

Final Revision & Exams booklet

8

Prepared by
Said Darahem
&
A Group of Experts in Teaching English

راجع إجاباتك

نزل اجابات الكتاب بصيغة PDF

هنا تجد كودك الشخصى

NAHDET MISR

www.aladwaa.com | Follow Us —

CONTENTS

Part 1 Final Revision 3

1. Vocabulary Revision on Each 2 Units
مراجعة على أهم الكلمات الخاصة بكل وحدتين

2. Language Revision on Each 2 Units
مراجعة على أهم القواعد الخاصة بكل وحدتين

3. Skills Revision on Each 2 Units
- Speaking Skills — مراجعة على أهم مهارات التحدث
- Writing Skills — مراجعة على أهم مهارات الكتابة

4. Al-Adwaa Monthly Models on Each 2 Units
نماذج الأضواء الشهرية على كل وحدتين

Part 2 SB & WB General Exercises 22

1. SB & WB General Exercises
مجموعة مختارة من أهم الأسئلة فى كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات.

2. End of Term Practice — اختبار نهاية الفصل الدراسى

Part 3 Final Exams & Listening Texts 38

1. 20 Schools & Directorates Exams — اختبارات المدارس والإدارات وعددها ٢٠
2. 8 Al-Azhar Exams — اختبارات الأزهر وعددها ٨
3. 2 Inclusive Exams — اختبارات الدمج وعددها ٢
4. Final Exams Listening Texts — نصوص استماع الاختبارات النهائية.

Part 1 Final Revision



1 **Vocabulary Revision on Each 2 Units** مراجعة على أهم الكلمات الخاصة بكل وحدتين

2 **Language Revision on Each 2 Units** مراجعة على أهم القواعد الخاصة بكل وحدتين

3 **Skills Revision on Each 2 Units**

- Speaking Skills مراجعة على أهم مهارات التحدث
- Writing Skills مراجعة على أهم مهارات الكتابة

4 **Al-Adwaa Monthly Models on Each 2 Units** نماذج الأضواء الشهرية على كل وحدتين

Units 1 & 2

Vocabulary Revision

Unit 1

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

a block of flats عمارة سكنية	cupboard دولاب	penfriend صديق بالمراسلة
adventure مغامرة	curtains ستائر	picnic نزهة خلوية
armchair كرسى ذو ذراعين	cushions وسائد	prison سجن
interview مقابلة/ حوار	daily routine روتين/نظام يومى	railway line خط سكة حديد
basin حوض	feed يطعم	tap صنبور/حنفية
carpet سجادة	lamp مصباح	typical نموذجى/مثالى
chest of drawers خزانة ذات أدراج	nature reserve محمية طبيعية	wardrobe خزانة ملابس

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

get dressed يرتدى ملابسه	find out about يكتشف عن
belong to تخص/تنتمى لـ	help with يساعد فى
careful with حريص على	look for يبحث عن
do a job يؤدى وظيفة	share with يشارك مع
spend time on يقضى وقتًا فى	take turns يتبادل الأدوار

Unit 2

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

wave يلوح بيده	greetings تحيات	skill مهارة
calligraphy فن الخط	guest ضيف	street-food seller بائع طعام بالشارع
normal عادى	neighbour جار	striped مقلم/مخطط
crowds الحشد/الجمهور	park (ed) يركن السيارة	suitcase حقيبة سفر
deaf أصم	patients المرضى	teenager مراهق
food stall كشك الطعام	repair (ed) يصلح	treat (ed) يعامل/يعالج
friendly ودود	sewing الخياطة	ward جناح (فى مستشفى)
grateful ممتن/شاكر	sign language لغة الإشارة	wedding حفل زفاف

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

give a surprise يفاجئ	make friends يكوّن صداقات
communicate with يتواصل مع	make sure يتأكد
congratulations on مبروك على	get married يتزوج
look after يعتنى بـ	happy/ pleased about مسرور بخصوص
look forward to يتطلع إلى	smile at يبتسم أمام

Unit 1

1 The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage

It's used to express facts and habits. يستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق و العادات

e.g. - We write English from left to right. (Fact حقيقة)
- My father usually goes to work by car. (Habit عادة)

Form

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + inf./don't + inf.
He, She, It, اسم مفرد + inf. + (s,es,ies)/doesn't + inf.

e.g. - Ali and Omar play football at the weekends.
- Hala walks to school every day.
- I don't like spicy food.
- It doesn't snow in summer.

Question

Do/Does + subject + inf.?

e.g. - Do you play football? - Does Hadeer like music?

Q. word + do/does + subject + inf.?

e.g. - Where does Ali live? - How often do they walk to school?

Key words

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

always دائمًا – usually عادةً – often غالبًا – sometimes أحيانًا – never أبدًا

e.g. - I always get up at 11 o'clock. - Sally never plays tennis.

2 How often

How often + do/does + subject + inf.?

e.g. - How often do you go to the club?
- How often does he study French?

3 How to form a question

Helping verb + subject + ...?

e.g. - Have you got a laptop? - Did Aya make lunch?

Q.word + helping verb + subject + ...?

e.g. - What would you like to have? - What did Salma buy last week?

Unit 2

1 The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage

It's used to express things that are happening now.
يستخدم للتعبير عن أشياء تحدث الآن

e.g. - I can't go out with you because I'm doing my homework.

Form

Subject + am/ is/ are + (not) + inf. + ing.

e.g. - I am playing chess. I am not reading a book.
- Eslam is having lunch. He is not (isn't) watching TV.
- Lily and Fatma are sleeping. They are not (aren't) studying English.

Question

(Am/Is/Are) + subject + inf. + ing?

e.g. - Are you learning sign language? - Is Sara cooking lunch?

Q. word + (am/is/are) + subject + inf. + ing?

e.g. - What are you doing? - Where is Marawan going?

Key words

at the moment في هذه اللحظة – Look! انظر! – Listen! أنصت! – Watch out! احترس! –
now الآن – at present في الوقت الحاضر

e.g. - My grandfather is repairing his laptop now.
- Listen! The baby is crying.

2 Adverbs of manner الظروف

- نستخدم الصفة لوصف الاسم بينما نستخدم الظرف أو الحال لوصف الفعل.
- يمكن تحويل الصفة إلى ظرف بإضافة (ly) للصفة.

e.g. - Mr Said is kind. He treats his children kindly.

- إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (consonant + y) نحذف (y) ونضيف (ily).

e.g. - I can climb this tree easily.

هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هى):

fast	سريع	fast	بسرعة	hard	جاد	hard	بجدية	good جيد	well جيدًا
late	متأخر	late	متأخرًا	early	مبكر	early	مبكرًا		

Units 1 & 2

Skills Revision

1. Speaking

Unit 1

Discussing daily routines

مناقشة الروتين اليومى

What time do you get up?	متى تستيقظ؟
I always get up at six a.m.	أستيقظ دائمًا فى السادسة صباحًا.
How do you get to school?	كيف تصل للمدرسة؟
I usually get to school by bike.	عادة أصل بالدراجة.
Where do you live?	أين تعيش؟
I live in Alexandria.	أعيش فى الإسكندرية.

Unit 2

Responding to news

الرد على الأخبار

Good news الأخبار الجيدة	Bad news الأخبار السيئة
Well done! أحسنت!	I'm sorry to hear that. أنا حزين لسماع ذلك.
That's great news! إنها أخبار عظيمة!	I hope he gets better soon. أتمنى أن يتحسن قريبًا (تقال فى المرض).
Congratulations! مبروك/تهانينا!	It's a pity that you ... . من المحزن-الشفقة أنك ... .
I'm so happy for you. أنا سعيد جدًا من أجلك.	That must be difficult. But don't worry. من المؤكد أن هذا صعب، ولكن لاتقلق.
	Don't worry. لا تقلق.

2. Write it right

Unit 1

How to write about your family's daily routine

My family's daily routine

My name's Basmala. I live on the second floor of the new block of flats with my dad, mum, grandma and two brothers. I always get up at 6 o'clock on a school day. My mother always makes my breakfast. I walk to school with my two brothers. My father goes to work at 7:30 a.m. He works at a school. Sometimes, I walk to school with my father. I never go to school late. We usually have lunch at five together. In the evenings, I do my homework. I often play chess with my grandma before I go to bed. I sometimes listen to music. We often go to the park at the weekends. I like to play on the grass there. I really enjoy my routine.

Unit 2

How to write about the job you like

The job I like

There are many interesting jobs. I think the doctor's job is the most important one. A doctor helps people get better after being sick. That's why I look forward to becoming a doctor one day. I like helping the sick and looking after them. I want to help the poor to get good medical care رعاية طبية without paying any money. That will make me happy. I also want to make people aware واعٍ of the importance of living healthy. However, being a doctor isn't easy as it needs a lot of hard work. I think we should all study well to achieve our dreams.

Monthly Models on Units 1 & 2

Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People go to the ..... to fly to different cities and countries.
   a) port b) station c) airport d) metro
2. He lives next to my uncle. He is his ..... .
   a) neighbour b) tourist c) guest d) worker
3. I study ..... to make my handwriting better.
   a) maths b) geography c) calligraphy d) biography
4. After the game, ... of fans went to the players to take photos with them.
   a) skills b) crowds c) skins d) ports
5. I thanked the ..... for helping me choose the best colour for my new jacket.
   a) nurse b) shop worker c) police officer d) street-food seller
6. More girls ..... sports now than when I was younger.
   a) ride b) do c) make d) take
7. Fatma is deaf. She can use ..... language.
   a) signal b) sign c) happy d) sad
8. Could you please speak more .....?
   a) slowly b) slower c) slowest d) slow
9. Ali and Omar ..... their computer at the moment. They are watching TV.
   a) use b) don't use c) are using d) aren't using
10. Haidy ..... to the park every Friday.
    a) go b) goes c) going d) is going

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. **A:** Where ..... (Nader/ work)? **B:** He works at a hospital.
2. My dad works ..... (hardly).
3. **A:** ..... (it/ rain) in London tomorrow? **B:** No, it won't.
4. They ..... (never/ coming) late. They come on time.
5. I can't help you now. I ..... (do) my homework.

Model 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Jaylan suggests going shopping tomorrow.

Jaylan : Hi, Mira. How are you today?
Mira : (1) ..... .
Jaylan : (2) ..... .
Mira : I'm sorry, I can't come.
Jaylan : (3) ..... ?
Mira : My little brother is ill.
Jaylan : (4) ..... .
Mira : Thank you so much.
Jaylan : (5) ..... ?
Mira : Yes, of course. You can come at any time.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Every morning, I wake up at 6 am. I brush my teeth. Then, I go to the kitchen and make breakfast. I usually have eggs and some toast. At the weekend, I have cheese and milk. I usually read the news during breakfast. After I finish breakfast, I wash the dishes. I leave the house at 7:30. I usually take the train to work. It takes about 40 minutes. I arrive at work at *around* 8:10. I have lunch **there**. I usually finish work at 6:00. I arrive home at about 7:00. I cook dinner. I usually listen to music while eating dinner. After dinner, I read for about an hour on the sofa. I watch TV before I go to bed at 10:00.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the best title for this text?

.....

2. When does the writer like to read the news?

.....

3. Do you think the writer works in a school? Why/ Why not?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**there**" refers to ..... .
   a) work b) home c) train d) nothing
5. The writer reads on the ..... before watching TV.
   a) table b) bed c) sofa d) armchair
6. The underlined word "*around*" means ..... .
   a) by b) exactly c) about d) near

Model 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I got a letter from my friend, and I need to make a reply ..... it.
   a) to b) at c) in d) on
2. My cousin draws very well. He wants to be a/an ..... . المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) engineer b) doctor c) artist d) pilot
3. The bus driver will carefully ..... the bus at the station.
   a) catch b) hold c) park d) carry
4. When two young people get married, they give a ..... party. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
   a) pudding b) wedding c) weeding d) budding
5. ..... do you see your grandparents?
   a) How many b) How much c) How often d) How heavy
6. He can speak English ..... .
   a) good b) well c) better d) best

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. How can grandparents ..... (helping) young people in the family?
2. My brother ..... (always is) a clever tennis player.
3. Sandy ..... (not) watch videos every day.
4. Why are the children ..... (play) outside in the rain?

3 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your daily routine"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Units 3 & 4 Vocabulary Revision

Unit 3

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

successful	ناجح	education	التعليم	medicine	دواء
attack (ed)	يهاجم	nuclear	نووى	natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية
function	وظيفة	emergency	حالة طوارئ	nursing manager	مدير التمريض
bone	عظمة	firefighter	رجل إطفاء	organisation	منظمة
brain	مخ	patron	راع/كفيل	pump (ed)	مضخة/يضخ
brave	شجاع	heart surgeon	جراح قلب	rubbish collector	جامع القمامة
broken	مكسور	heroic	بطولى	scientist	عالم
charity worker	عامل فى جمعية خيرية	treatment	علاج	serious	خطير/جاد
confuse (d)	يتحير/يرتبك	improve (d)	يحسن	society	مجتمع
countryside	الريف	infect (ed)	يعدى/يصيب	sports coach	مدرب رياضى
discussion	مناقشة	jewellery	مجوهرات	statue	تمثال
earthquake	زلزال	lungs	الرئتان	volunteer	متطوع

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

do experiments	يجرى تجارب معملية	make a poster	يعد ملصقًا إعلانيًا
do a project on	يقوم بعمل مشروع فى	pay for	يدفع ثمنًا
take in air	يستنشق هواء	stop infections	يوقف العدوى/ الالتهابات
sew cuts	يخيط الجروح	useful for	مفيد لـ
make a hero	يصنع بطلًا	write down	يدون

Unit 4

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

ancient	أثرى/قديم جدًا	figure	شكل بشرى	protect (ed)	يحمى
arch	قوس/قنطرة	guide	مرشد	recommend (ed)	يرشح/يوصى بـ
awesome	رهيب/رائع	historic	تاريخى	ruins	أطلال
behave (d)	يتصرف	ingredients	مكونات/مقادير	ruler	حاكم
bowl	سلطانية	injure	يصيب/يؤذى	stadium	استاد
castle	قلعة	local people	السكان المحليون	statue	تمثال
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	monuments	آثار	temple	معبد
chemical	كيميائى/ مادة كيميائية	mosquitos	ناموس/بعوض	theatre	مسرح
clay	طين صلصال	national	قومى/وطنى	tool	أداة
coin	عملة معدنية	necklace	عقد/قلادة	tourism	السياحة
damage (d)	يدمر/يضر/يتلف	needle	إبرة/ مسلة	valuable	قيم
debate	مناقشة/مناظرة	pot	إناء/وعاء	view	منظر
environment	البيئة	pray (ed)	يصلى	war	حرب

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

date to	يرجع تاريخه إلى	go back to	يعود/يرجع إلى
drop litter	يلقى القمامة	happen to	يحدث لـ
entrance to	مدخل لـ	interested in	مهتم بـ
excited about	متحمس بخصوص	keep away	يبعد
follow rules/ signs	يتبع القواعد/اللافتات	make pollution	يسبب تلوثًا

Language Revision

Unit 3

1 The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Usage

- It's used to talk about actions that started and ended in the past.
تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى.

e.g. - I visited my uncle yesterday.

Form

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل /did not (didn't) + **inf.**

e.g. - They played football yesterday. - Adel bought a new car last year.
- I did not **arrive** late last night. - She didn't **win** the competition.

e.g. - We were in the cinema yesterday. - I wasn't at home two hours ago.
راجع استخدام Verb to be فى زمن الماضى البسيط من كتاب الشرح ص ٩٩

Question

Did + subject + **inf.**? e.g. - Did you **watch** TV last night?

Q. word + did + subject + **inf.**? e.g. - What time did you **go** to bed?

Key words

yesterday أمس - last ... الماضى - ... ago منذ - in the past فى الماضى - in + سنة فى الماضى

e.g. - We **visited** Luxor 2 years ago.

استخدام (when) بمعنى «عندما» مع زمن الماضى البسيط:

e.g. - My parents **lived** in Tanta when they were young.

2 (used to) for regular past habits and routines

Form

Subject + used to/ didn't use to + **inf.**

e.g. - You used to **live** in Tanta. - I didn't use to **drive** a car.

Question

Did + subject + use to + **inf.**?

e.g. - Did Ali and Omar use to **live** in Cairo?

Q. word + did + subject + use to + **inf.**?

e.g. - What did Sami use to **do** when he was six?

Unit 4

1 must/mustn't يجب أن/ يجب ألا

Subject + must + inf.	Subject + mustn't + inf.
e.g. - They must **arrive** on time. - You must **listen** to the teacher.	e.g. - You mustn't **be** late. - In a museum, you mustn't **touch** the objects.

Question

Must + subject + **inf.**? e.g. - Must we **put** rubbish in the bin?

Q. word + must + subject + **inf.**? e.g. - What must you **do** at school?

2 The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

Usage

- It's used to talk about an action that was in progress in a certain time in the past.
يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًا فى وقت محدد فى الماضى

e.g. - Dina and Hossam were playing tennis at 10:30 yesterday.

Form

Subject + was/were + (not) + inf. + ing

e.g. - Ghada was **reading** a book. - My parents were **swimming**.
- I wasn't **playing** football. - We weren't **watching** TV.

Question

Was/Were + subject + **inf.** + **ing**? e.g. - Was Kamal **doing** homework?

Q. word + was/were + subject + **inf.** + **ing**? e.g. - When were you **playing** football?

Key words

While/As بينما - When عندما

While/As + past continuous, past simple
Past simple + while/as + past continuous

e.g. - While/As I was reading my book, the phone rang.

When + past simple, past continuous
Past continuous + when + past simple

e.g. - When grandfather arrived, mum was cooking.

1. Speaking

Unit 3

1. Discussing family history مناقشة تاريخ العائلة

Where did your parents use to live when they were young?
أين اعتاد والداك أن يعيشا فى الماضى؟

They used to live in Tanta. اعتادا أن يعيشا فى طنطا.

When you were ten, did you use to live in a different house?
عندما كنت فى العاشرة، هل اعتدت أن تعيش فى منزل مختلف؟

Yes, I did. نعم.

2. Checking understanding التأكد من الفهم

Asking for clarification		Clarification	
What do you mean?	ماذا تعنى؟	I mean, ...	أنا أعنى ...
I'm not sure what you mean.	لست متأكدًا مما تعنيه.	In other words, ...	بمعنى آخر ...
Sorry, I don't understand.	آسف، لا أفهم.		

Unit 4

Asking for information on the phone طلب معلومات عبر الهاتف

How can I help you? كيف يمكننى مساعدتك؟

I'd like to know what time the museum is open.
أود معرفة موعد فتح المتحف.

Hello, can you tell me if the museum is open on Fridays?
هل يمكنك أن تخبرنى إن كان المتحف مفتوحًا أيام الجمعة؟

Certainly./Of course. It's open daily.
بالتأكيد/نعم بالطبع. إنه مفتوح يوميًا.

2. Write it right

Unit 3

How to write about someone you are proud of

To : mona@gmail.com
From : sara@gmail.com
Subject : Someone I'm proud of

Hello Mona,

Of all the members in my family, my mother is the person I am most proud of. She is 40 years old. She looks much younger than her age with short hair and a beautiful face. She works hard. At work, she is respected by all of her friends. She is a useful person in society. My mother always does the housework well. She is a very good cook. I really admire her for her wonderful dishes. She often spends her free time cooking delicious dishes for us, which makes everyone in my family happy. What's more, my mother is an excellent adviser. I will always love her and I will always be proud of her.

Write soon.
Sara

Unit 4

How to write about a historic place you visited

A historic place I visited

I visited one of the greatest historic places in India, the Taj Mahal in Agra. I went there with my mum and dad. It is very huge in size. I studied about the Taj Mahal at school, I also saw its pictures. But watching it with my eyes was like a dream that came true. It was built by Shah Jahan around the 1630s. He built it as a gift to his wife, Mumtaz Mahal. It took around 22 years to build. People think that Shah Jahan cut off the hands of the workers who built it so that no similar building could be built. Therefore, this is one of the most awesome historic places.

Monthly Models on Units 3 & 4

Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We're all excited to watch the ..... between the two best teams.
   a) primary b) brave c) national d) final
2. The plants will ..... if you don't water them.
   a) improve b) arrive c) die d) move
3. My mother did ..... work that made me proud of her.
   a) safe b) boring c) heroic d) scary
4. Some tourists drop litter and ..... historic places.
   a) improve b) protect c) save d) damage
5. My teacher asked me to ..... a poster about my project.
   a) do b) make c) stay d) collect
6. It's going to be hot, so you have to wear ..... and a hat.
   a) glass b) bowl c) sunglasses d) coat
7. Good students should follow the school ..... .
   a) rules b) lines c) ruins d) roles
8. Grandpa ..... us exciting stories about his childhood. We were amazed.
   a) tells b) doesn't tell c) told d) didn't tell
9. I met my friend while I ..... at the mall.
   a) am shopping b) was shopping c) shopped d) shop
10. The traffic light turned red, so we ..... stop the car.
    a) must b) must to c) mustn't d) mustn't to

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. It ..... (didn't) cold yesterday night.
2. Did you ..... (saw) any stars when you went for a walk yesterday?
3. We ..... (cycle) all day yesterday.
4. I ..... (use) be afraid of the dark, but now I am not.
5. Students mustn't ..... (using) their phones during the exam.

Model 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Eslam is telling Sayed how he spent his last summer holiday.

Sayed : Where did you spend your last summer holiday?
Eslam : (1)..... .
Sayed : (2).....?
Eslam : I went with my family.
Sayed : How did you go to Hurghada?
Eslam : (3)..... .
Sayed : Oh! (4).....?
Eslam : My father bought this car a year ago.
Sayed : Did you have a nice time in Hurghada?
Eslam : Yes, I did. (5)..... .

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Sandy. I used to work in a bank, but now I work as a secretary for a company. I left the bank and joined the company seven years ago. I enjoy working here and I have made lots of friends. I met my husband in this company and we got married last year. Our manager, Mr Medhat, is a very nice man. *He* gave us three weeks off and he bought us a very nice wedding gift. When I am not working, I love spending time in my garden. I grow plants and vegetables. When I was a little girl, I wanted to be a gardener. I always helped my parents in the garden. My husband likes gardening, too. We went to the garden centre last weekend and bought some new plants. My husband planted a new apple tree and some roses in the garden. I watered the tomato plants and the strawberries.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage? .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "*He*" refer to? .....
3. Why do you think Mr Medhat is a nice man? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Sandy used to help her parents in the ..... .
   a) park b) garden c) farm d) barn
5. Sandy wanted to ..... when she was young.
   a) get married b) work in a bank
   c) be a gardener d) plant apple trees
6. The underlined word "gift" means ..... .
   a) present b) prize c) price d) dress

Model 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ancient Egyptians made pots and bowls of ..... from the Nile.
   a) metal b) clay c) wool d) chemical
2. A ..... is an event when people try to get a prize.
   a) scientist b) competition c) scientist d) surgeon
3. When my mother was younger, she worked at a hospital and ..... her studies.
   a) continued b) explained c) saved d) kept
4. You mustn't touch the ..... in the museum.
   a) facts b) articles c) statues d) debates
5. I ..... enjoy reading, but I do now.
   a) used b) didn't use to c) didn't use d) didn't using
6. What ..... at 10 p.m. last night?
   a) were they doing b) did they do c) did they use to do d) are they doing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (not/do) my maths homework yesterday.
2. The phone rang while I ..... (have) dinner.
3. As I ..... (practise) for tomorrow's game, a neighbour came to visit me.
4. You ..... (mustn't) study hard if you want to pass your exams.

3 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"What you used to do"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Units 5 & 6 Vocabulary Revision

Unit 5

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

acts	أفعال/أعمال	disabled	معاق	messy	فوضوى/غير مرتب
advertisement	إعلان	donate (d)	يتبرع بـ	random	عشوائى
apartment = flat	شقة	donation	تبرع	servant	خادم
beggar	متسول/شحاذ	extracts	مقتطفات	stranger	غريب
bin	سلة قمامة	generous	كريم/ سخى	surprised	مندهش
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	head teacher	مدير المدرسة	teenager	مراهق
businesswoman	سيدة أعمال	helpful	معاون/مساعد/مفيد	tips	نصائح/بقشيش
chemist	صيدلى	kindness	لطف/عطف	trainers	حذاء رياضى
community	مجتمع/جماعة/جالية	laboratory	معمل	wheelchair	كرسى متحرك

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

a home for	موطن لـ	fight fires	يحارب (يخمد) النيران
give away	يتبرع	get his bag ready for	يجهز حقيبته لـ
care about	يهتم/يعتنى بـ	give a seat to	يعطى المقعد لـ
cruel to	قاس لـ	put away	يضع شيئا فى مكانه
pick up	يلتقط	tidy up	يرتب
difficult for	صعب لـ	wash up	يغسل الأطباق
do charity work	يؤدى عملاً خيريًا	work for	يعمل لدى

Unit 6

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

aim to	يهدف إلى	flood	فيضان	produce (d)	ينتج
canal	قناة مائية/ترعة	global	عالمى	recycling	إعادة التدوير/التصنيع
cause (d)	يسبب	green energy	الطاقة الخضراء (النظيفة)	remind (ed)	يذكر
climate change	التغير المناخى	introduce (d)	يقدم	reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام
diagram	رسم توضيحى/بيانى	locate (d)	يحدد موقع/مكان	riverbank	ضفة النهر
drought	جفاف	melt	ينصهر/يذوب	solution	حل
polluted	ملوث	podcast	بث إذاعى	temperature	درجة الحرارة
electricity	الكهرباء	position	مكانة	warn	يحذر
electric	كهربائى	presentation	عرض تقديمى	wildlife	حياة برية

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

along the river	على امتداد النهر	go scuba diving	يذهب للغطس
careful about	حريص بشأن	lie/lying on a beach	يستلقى على الشاطئ
check for mistakes	يتحقق من الأخطاء	on a programme	فى برنامج
connected to	متصل/مرتبط بـ	on top of	على قمة
famous for	مشهور بـ	vote on	يصوت على

Language Revision

Unit 5

1 has to/have to يضطر أن

Form

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + have to/ don't have to + **inf.**
He, She, It, اسم مفرد + has to/ doesn't have to + **inf.**

e.g. - I have to **wear** the school uniform.
- My father has to **get up** at six.
- We don't have to **get up** early. It's Friday.
- My mother doesn't have to **go** to work today because it's a holiday.

Question

Do/Does + subject + have to + **inf.**?

e.g. - Do you have to **go** to school? - Does Ola have to **go** to work?

Q. word + do/does + subject + have to + **inf.**?

e.g. - What do you have to **do** after school?
- What time does Heba have to **arrive** at school?

2 Giving advice using (SHOULD & SHOULDN'T) إعطاء النصح

Subject + should + inf.	Subject + shouldn't + inf.
e.g. - You should **go** now. The bus leaves in ten minutes.	e.g. - She shouldn't **carry** all those things.

Question

Should + subject + **inf.**? e.g. - Should we **clean** our room?

Q. word + should + subject + **inf.**? e.g. - What should you **do** before you eat?

3 Relative Clauses ضمائر الوصل

who = that الذى/التى	e.g. - This is the **boy** (who/that) won the game. - A pilot is the **person** (who/that) flies a plane.
which = that الذى/التى	e.g. - The **present** (which/that) I bought for my grandmother is in my bag. - This is the **room** which Samy usually works in.
where حيث	e.g. - Alexandria is the **city** where both my sisters are studying. - This is the **room** where Samy usually works.

Unit 6

1 Comparative Adjectives صفات المقارنة (المقارنة بين شيئين)

One syllable adjectives صفات ذات مقطع واحد	More than one syllable adjectives صفات لها أكثر من مقطع
adj. + er + than + ...	more أكثر/less أقل + adj. + than ...
e.g. - The Nile is longer **than** the Amazon. - Maria is taller **than** Nelly.	e.g. - Cairo is more crowded **than** Aswan. - A dog is less dangerous **than** a lion.
Irregular adjectives الصفات غير المنتظمة	(good) جيد → better أفضل (bad) سيئ → worse أسوء (far) بعيد → further أبعد

2 (not) as + adj + as .... (ليس) تماما مثل.....

as + adj. + as مثل	not as + adj. + as ليس مثل
e.g. - Droughts are as **serious** as floods.	e.g. - Australia is not as **dry** as Africa.

3 The Present Simple Passive المبنى للمجهول

Form

Object (مفعول) + (am/is/are) + P.P. (التصريف الثالث للفعل) + by + (الفاعل).

e.g. - Lots of cotton is **grown** in the area.
- Black honey is **made** from sugar.

Negative

Object + am/is/are (not) + P.P.

e.g. - Rice isn't **grown** in my home city.
- Cars aren't **made** in Egypt.

Question

Is/Are + object + P.P.?

e.g. - Is much rice **grown** in your country?
- Are these lessons **explained** at school?

Units 5 & 6

Skills Revision

1. Speaking

Unit 5

1. A discussion about jobs in the house مناقشة عن المهام المنزلية

What sort of jobs do you have to do at home?
ما نوع المهام التى تضطر أن تؤديها بالمنزل؟

I have to tidy up my bedroom. أضطر أن أرتب غرفة نومى.

How much homework do you have to do this evening?
كم كمية الواجب المنزلى التى ينبغى عليك فعلها الليلة؟

I have to do the English homework. أضطر إلى عمل واجب اللغة الإنجليزية.

2. Making suggestions تقديم اقتراحات

I feel that we should do an act of kindness every day.
أشعر بأنه يجب علينا أن نعمل عملًا لطيفًا يوميًا.

I see what you mean. أفهم ما تعنيه.

I think it would be better if we donate money to charities.
أعتقد أنه من الأفضل أن نتبرع بالمال للجمعيات الخيرية.

- Good idea. فكرة جيدة.

Unit 6

Making suggestions تقديم اقتراحات

Why don't we try recycling water? لم لا نجرب إعادة تدوير المياه؟

That's an interesting idea! إنها فكرة شيقة!

For example, we could use the water from washing to water the plants.
على سبيل المثال، يمكننا استخدام مياه الغسيل لنروى بها النباتات.

2. Write it right

Unit 5

How to write about random acts of kindness

Random acts of kindness

It's important to do random acts of kindness. The smallest things can make others smile. I think that if you do something kind to someone, they will take that act of kindness and move it to people they come across during their day. The smallest things always make the biggest differences. For example, holding the door for someone who has their hands full or smiling at a stranger as they pass by, these little things let people know that someone cares about them. Today, before you go to bed, do a random act of kindness. It can be to someone you know or someone who is a complete stranger, but it has to be random. Someday you will receive a random act of kindness in return.

Unit 6

How to write about your home city

To : paul@gmail.com
From : nader@yahoo.com
Subject : My home city

Hello Paul,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about my home city. I come from a beautiful city called Hurghada on the Red Sea. It's very green and has many beaches and mountains. It is not polluted and the people are very friendly. It also has a small city centre area and you can find many shops and restaurants, for example sea food restaurants and supermarkets. My home city is on the coast, so there are many boats and ships. You can see turtles there. There are many fishermen around, so you can eat many kinds of cheap fish. It's very hot in summer and warm in winter. There are many parks and museums in my home city. Many tourists visit it in winter because it has lovely weather. You should come and visit it one day.

Write soon.

Nader

Monthly Models on Units 5 & 6

Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is a machine that carries people up and down in a tall building.
   a) lift b) ferry c) boat d) bus
2. The children were taught not to talk to ..... without their parents around.
   a) cousins b) neighbours c) relatives d) strangers
3. She wants to use the money to help ..... people.
   a) rich b) disabled c) brave d) strong
4. A ..... is the daughter of a king or queen.
   a) princess b) queen c) nurse d) sister
5. Muslims face the direction of Mecca when praying inside the ..... .
   a) playground b) library c) mosque d) museum
6. ..... should look after the environment when they visit a country.
   a) Tourism b) Tourists c) Guides d) Owners
7. We can ..... rubbish. It's good for the environment.
   a) cycle b) recycle c) throw d) burn
8. You ..... finish this exercise now. You can finish it at home.
   a) doesn't have to b) don't have to c) mustn't d) can't
9. Who ate the cake ..... was on the table?
   a) who b) what c) where d) which
10. Animals in the reserve ..... twice a day.
    a) are fed b) fed c) feed d) are feeding

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Do) famous places visited by tourists?
2. Europe is not ..... (as large) Asia.
3. Name the place ..... (who) you would like to spend your next holiday.
4. Learning to ride a bike is ..... (easy) than learning to drive a car.
5. You should ..... (drove) carefully in this road.

Model 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Magdi is talking to Medhat about his home city, Port Said.

Magdi : Where do you live?
Medhat : (1)..... .
Magdi : (2).....?
Medhat : It's located in the north-east of Egypt.
Magdi : (3).....?
Medhat : It's famous for its ships from all over the world.
Magdi : How can I go there?
Medhat : (4)..... .
Magdi : A train is good. Is Port Said a very beautiful city?
Medhat : (5)..... .

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Some people were in a café in Paris, France. They wanted to make the world better. One of them was a man called Baker. He wrote down his idea: practise random acts of kindness. A random act of kindness is a kind thing that you do for someone for no reason. You can do random acts of kindness for people you know, for example, buy flowers for your mother. You can also be kind to a stranger: for example, give your seat to someone on a bus. Now, February 17 is Random Acts of Kindness Day. All over the world, people do kind things for the day: not because they have to, but because they want to see a ***smile*** on a person's face. Isn't that a fantastic idea?

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. .....
2. Why do you think people should do random acts of kindness? .....
3. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "***smile***" means the shape of your mouth that shows you are ..... .
   a) angry b) happy c) brave d) shy
5. Paris is the capital city of ..... .
   a) Italy b) America c) England d) France
6. Some people in this passage wanted to make the world ..... .
   a) better b) worse c) crowded d) unhappy

Model 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He goes to a ..... school where he studies and lives all the time.
   a) boarding b) local c) special d) bad
2. When it gets hotter, the ice on the mountains ..... .
   a) freezes b) melts c) causes d) makes
3. My grandmother was ..... because I made her a cup of tea. She was happy.
   a) sad b) surprised c) ugly d) bad
4. He went into the school ..... and bought a sandwich and a cold drink.
   a) playground b) library c) bathroom d) canteen
5. You ..... spend too much time on social media.
   a) shouldn't b) won't c) can't d) don't have to
6. The chef ..... prepare the ingredients for tonight's dinner service.
   a) has to b) have to c) don't have to d) doesn't have

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Is your house ..... (more old) than my house?
2. Our car ..... (doesn't) washed every day.
3. ..... (Does) you have to look after your baby sister at the weekend?
4. The tourists ..... (what) visit Egypt always love the ancient temples.

3 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"Climate change"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Part 2 SB & WB General Exercises



1 **SB & WB General Exercises**

مجموعة مختارة من أهم الأسئلة فى كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات.

2 **End of Term Practice**

- اختبار نهاية الفصل الدراسى.

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. I never have coffee ..... breakfast.
   a) for b) in c) on d) of
2. I go to the baker's with my mother .....; we always buy bread in the morning.
   a) diary b) dairy c) daily d) day
3. Come and sit on this .....; four people can sit on it.
   a) sofa b) chair c) armchair d) wheelchair
4. We do the same thing every day when we're on holiday because my family like to have a ..... .
   a) joy b) difference c) fun d) routine
5. Can you ..... my mother for me? My phone is not working.
   a) taste b) text c) exit d) test
6. On a/an ..... day, Reem gets up, goes to school and then helps her mother with her jobs.
   a) electrical b) typical c) technical d) technological
7. Hassan forgot to bring any food for the picnic, but he can ..... our food.
   a) stay b) lend c) give d) share
8. I live in a city, but my grandparents live in a small ..... in the country.
   a) village b) town c) desert d) capital
9. The farmer doesn't need to ..... his goats in the summer as they can find their own food in the mountains.
   a) climb b) feed c) eat d) drink
10. My uncle has a ..... in his garden and he uses it to water his plants every morning.
    a) wall b) tab c) tape d) tap
11. It has a/an ..... garden full of flowers and trees.
    a) terrible b) bad c) attractive d) ugly
12. Roberta feels ..... when some men take her father from their home.
    a) terrible b) glad c) pleased d) boring

13. Their new house is in the country near the railway ..... .

a) circle b) tube c) line d) limp

14. You can wash your face in the ..... .

a) basin b) pot c) carpet d) mirror

15. A ..... is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes.

a) wardrobe b) mirror c) drawer d) carpet

16. You can see yourself in the ..... .

a) lamp b) mirror c) carpet d) curtain

Language

17. Hamdi ..... coffee for breakfast. He likes to drink tea.

a) doesn't drink b) drinks c) don't drink d) drink

18. **A:** How ..... Dina get to school? **B:** She takes the bus.

a) are b) is c) do d) does

19. **A:** What time ..... your first lesson this morning?
B: At 8:00 o'clock.

a) does b) is c) has d) can

20. They ..... football. They prefer tennis.

a) likes b) doesn't like c) not like d) don't like

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. After school, my brother and I sometimes ..... (does) sport or play music.
2. Suzy ..... (not/watch) TV when she gets home. She does her homework first.
3. In Germany, school ..... (start) very early in the morning.
4. How many lessons ..... (do) your school day have?
5. Mariam ..... (not/get) up at 7 a.m. She gets up at 6:30.
6. I don't make my breakfast. My mum always ..... (make) it.
7. ..... (Have) your father got a computer?
8. What ..... (has) you got in your bag?
9. Who has ..... (get) an older brother?
10. Who ..... (do) Salma live with?
11. Shall I ..... (helping) you carry these books?
12. The bus ..... (arrive) at the museum at 6:30.
13. Where ..... (do) Malak live?

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Shady is deaf, but he understands us because we use ..... language.
   a) sigh b) sight c) signal d) sign
2. It is usually easy to ..... with people in other countries if you speak English well.
   a) connect b) communicate c) tell d) say
3. When you invite someone to your house, they are your ..... .
   a) crowds b) patients c) guests d) guess
4. When two people get married, they have a ..... .
   a) meeting b) band c) weeding d) wedding
5. The skin of a zebra is ..... .
   a) plain b) blue c) striped d) sharp
6. It's a ..... that you couldn't come to my birthday party.
   a) happiness b) congratulation c) pity d) happy
7. The ..... is an area of very dry land.
   a) river b) desert c) lake d) sea
8. A/An ..... is a boy or girl aged 13 - 19.
   a) infant b) child c) baby d) teenager
9. "....." means usual, not different.
   a) Natural b) Modern c) Normal d) Ancient
10. To be ..... means not with other people.
    a) alone b) busy c) pleased d) worried
11. To feel ..... means feeling happy about the good things in your life.
    a) worried b) grateful c) careful d) normal
12. The ..... prepares food for people to eat.
    a) street-food seller b) shop worker c) cooker d) doctor
13. The ..... helps to keep people safe in the streets.
    a) engineer b) police officer c) shop worker d) nurse
14. The ..... speaks to people on the phone. He/She helps them with their problems.
    a) nurse b) street-food seller
    c) call-centre worker d) shop worker
15. The ..... helps in a place which sells things.
    a) computer engineer b) cook
    c) police officer d) shop worker

16. You call a ..... if there is a problem with your computer system.
a) shop worker b) computer engineer
c) street-food seller d) police officer

17. Your father can ..... the car on this road. It's very quiet.
a) bark b) park c) brake d) break

18. Fatma is ....., so she cannot hear you.
a) patient b) blind c) dear d) deaf

19. The nurse works on the ..... for children.
a) hard b) ward c) award d) reward

Language

20. I can't come to the park because I ..... the house today.
a) clean b) cleaning c) cleaned d) am cleaning

21. What time do you ..... your homework after school?
a) does b) did c) doing d) do

22. I'm sitting under a tree and ..... eating my lunch.
a) hungry b) hungrily c) sad d) quick

23. It's important to drive ..... when it's raining.
a) careful b) carefully c) quick d) quickly

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Eman and her neighbours ..... (clean) Mr Osman's flat now.
2. Mr Osman ..... (live) in a lovely flat.
3. Manal and Mona ..... (study) calligraphy now.
4. My sister speaks very ..... (quiet).
5. The teacher treats all her children ..... (kind).
6. On Saturdays, Kady usually ..... (spend) time with her cousins.
7. The police officer is visiting a school today, but usually he ..... (drive) around the streets.
8. Nader ..... (not/usually/work) in the shop, but his brother is ill, so he is helping there today.
9. Our football team will win because they are playing very ..... (good).
10. Ahmed went into the new school ..... (sad), because he did not know any children there.
11. Why ..... (be) you laughing?
12. It isn't ..... (rain) outside, but it's a bit cloudy.

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. A ..... teaches people how to play or improve a sport.
   a) scientist b) sports coach c) nurse d) worker
2. A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.
   a) sports coach b) surgeon c) police officer d) hero
3. A ..... does experiments to study and find out about how things work.
   a) police officer b) surgeon c) charity worker d) scientist
4. A ..... helps people or animals that need help.
   a) sports coach b) charity worker c) scientist d) trader
5. A ..... helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home.
   a) group b) prison c) thief d) charity
6. The ..... is an area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature.
   a) countryside b) city c) town d) ocean
7. A terrible event, such as an earthquake, is a ..... .
   a) charity b) goal
   c) natural disaster d) competition
8. A ..... is someone who works for no money to help people.
   a) scientist b) volunteer c) nurse d) police officer
9. A/An ..... is something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about.
   a) emergency b) energy c) charity d) competition
10. ..... take in air and help us to breathe.
    a) Legs b) Ears c) Lungs d) Eyes
11. The ..... tells the parts of the body what to do.
    a) brain b) nose c) head d) ear
12. The ..... pumps blood around the body.
    a) eye b) nose c) brain d) heart
13. This football has no air inside. I need a ..... to fill it.
    a) pump b) cut c) burn d) plant
14. Lina's cousin is in hospital with an eye ..... .
    a) pollution b) pollute c) infect d) infection
15. A ..... is an event when people try to get a prize.
    a) hero b) competition c) player d) goal

Language

16. Before Sameera Moussa ..... in 1952, she was Egypt's first female nuclear scientist.
    a) died **b)** dies **c)** dying **d)** die
17. Sameera Moussa was born .....1917.
    a) when **b)** in **c)** ago **d)** from
18. ..... Omar was 22, a shark attacked him and he lost a leg.
    a) In **b)** If **c)** When **d)** Ago
19. Magdy Yacoub stopped most of his work as a surgeon a long time ..... .
    a) ago **b)** for **c)** last **d)** when
20. My uncle ..... a firefighter, but now he is a police officer.
    a) use to be **b)** didn't use to **c)** used to be **d)** didn't use to be
21. Dina ..... give money to a charity, but now she does.
    a) used **b)** didn't use **c)** used to **d)** didn't use to
22. Egypt's football team ..... the Africa Cup of Nations in 2010.
    a) win **b)** won **c)** used to win **d)** use to win
23. Did Ali ..... to the shops yesterday?
    a) go **b)** went **c)** used to go **d)** goes
24. There ..... a hotel in our city ten years ago, but now there are three.
    a) weren't **b)** didn't **c)** didn't use to be **d)** isn't
25. Where ..... live before you moved to Alexandria?
    a) are you **b)** do you **c)** did you use to **d)** you used to

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Yasser's grandmother ..... (use to) work in a hospital.
2. Before Magdy's dad got married, he ..... (not/use to) live in Cairo.
3. When my mum ..... (be) a child, she used to play the piano every day.
4. Before I had children, I ..... (not/use to) know how to drive a car.
5. When you were ten, ... (do) you use to live in a different house?
6. ..... (you/use to) walk to school?
7. Last year, I ..... (go) to Cairo and visited a fantastic museum.
8. Did Hossam Hassan ..... (used/be) the captain of the Egyptian Football team?
9. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub ..... (start) a charity for ill children in Aswan.
10. In Ancient Egypt, poor children ..... (not/use to) go to school.

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. You can watch a sports match at a ..... .
   a) lab b) library c) museum d) stadium
2. A/An ..... can be an entrance to another place.
   a) arch b) wall c) ruin d) castle
3. You can pray at a ..... .
   a) museum b) mosque c) stadium d) castle
4. A/An ..... usually has very strong walls.
   a) arch b) tent c) castle d) hut
5. You can see ..... in a museum.
   a) castles b) prayers c) statues d) players
6. ..... are not a complete building.
   a) Ruins b) Castles c) Statues d) Arches
7. ..... means amazing.
   a) Historic b) Ancient c) Boring d) Awesome
8. A ..... is a person who can show you round a place.
   a) cook b) waiter c) tourist d) guide
9. ..... means very old.
   a) Amazing b) Ancient c) Boring d) Awesome
10. A ..... is what you can see from the top of something.
    a) roof b) sight c) view d) field
11. There are more than 2000 ..... in the museum.
    a) parts b) objects c) subjects d) castles
12. This chemical helps to keep ..... mosquitoes.
    a) away b) by c) at d) for
13. The black and white ..... around this window are beautiful.
    a) cuts b) planning c) designs d) carpets
14. Paint helped to ..... people's eyes from the sun.
    a) infect b) attack c) attract d) protect
15. They used big clay bowls to ..... ingredients for food.
    a) mix b) fix c) repair d) mend
16. Some people drew squares on the floor to ..... a game.
    a) do b) play c) make d) advise

17. Bees and ants are ..... .
a) insects b) birds c) animals d) sharks
18. Ali's uncle works for a big oil ..... in the United Arab Emirates.
a) work b) company c) job d) school
19. I love going to ..... places such as museums and ancient ruins.
a) historic b) culture c) history d) cultured
20. Don't play football here or you might ..... that car.
a) hurt b) injure c) damage d) repair

Language

21. You ..... arrive at school on time.
a) can't b) would c) must d) mustn't
22. You ..... eat or drink at the library.
a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) haven't
23. It's hot today, so you ..... all wear a hat and take some water, too.
a) have b) do c) must d) mustn't
24. While we were waiting to go into the museum, I ..... my friend Abbas.
a) saw b) was seeing c) see d) seeing
25. While we ..... home, Abbas phoned me.
a) were travelling b) travelling c) travelled d) travel
26. ..... I was reading my book, the phone rang.
a) When b) As c) After d) Before
27. We were travelling on the train for hours before it finally ..... at the station.
a) was arriving b) arriving c) arrives d) arrived
28. Most of the people were sleeping ..... the earthquake started.
a) because b) as c) while d) when
29. As Mr Badr ..... to work, he saw an old friend.
a) walked b) was walking c) walk d) walks

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I ..... (puts) my bag on the floor while I was taking a photo.
2. When we ..... (sit) down for a picnic, lots of runners were running through the park.
3. Lots of birds ..... (fly) in the sky when we sat down on the beach.
4. You ..... (must) eat inside the castle.
5. You must walk carefully and ..... (following) the signs.

Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Hala is a ..... person. She doesn't put anything in its right place.
   a) tidy b) messy c) lucky d) full
2. Adam ..... the rubbish when the bins are full.
   a) takes out b) puts away c) looks after d) washes up
3. He ..... the lift to go down to the streets.
   a) drives b) flies c) takes d) rides
4. Nader helps his brother ..... his school bag ready.
   a) leave b) get c) stay d) spend
5. I help to look ..... my little sister when my parents are busy.
   a) after b) up c) for d) to
6. This building is very tall, but we can go to the top in the ..... .
   a) steps b) left c) lift d) bins
7. My clothes were clean and dry, so I put them all ..... .
   a) up b) away c) off d) in
8. They gave the footballer a ..... test to check his health.
   a) messy b) lucky c) tidy d) random
9. If you go to a/an ..... school, you stay all day and all night.
   a) private b) boarding c) special d) abroad
10. Munir has to wash ..... after dinner on Mondays and Wednesdays.
    a) on b) at c) in d) up
11. If someone is ..... to you, they are terrible to you.
    a) cruel b) kind c) polite d) clever
12. A/An ..... asks for money.
    a) officer b) servant c) cook d) beggar
13. If a child ..... well, he/she is being good.
    a) dies b) writes c) behaves d) stays
14. A/An ..... works in someone's home.
    a) servant b) beggar c) teacher d) officer
15. Someone who is kind shows ..... .
    a) kindness b) fear c) pride d) princess
16. A ..... is someone you don't know.
    a) worker b) stranger c) teacher d) seller

17. ..... you have to go to school?
a) Must b) Are c) Does d) Do

18. My mother doesn't ..... go to work today because it is a holiday.
a) have to b) have c) has to d) has

19. We want to give you this book for free. You ..... pay for it.
a) don't have to b) have to c) must d) can

20. When you get on the bus, you ..... buy a ticket.
a) doesn't have to b) don't have to c) have to d) has to

21. The place ..... I lost my watch was the kitchen.
a) when b) who c) whose d) where

22. Alexandria is the city ..... both my big sisters are studying.
a) that b) which c) when d) where

23. Name the person ..... is sitting next to you.
a) who b) where c) when d) which

24. I ..... to wear a school uniform.
a) should b) has c) have d) must

25. She bought me the trainers ..... I wore when I played on the school volleyball team.
a) which b) when c) whose d) who

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My father ..... (have) to get up at six o'clock every day to go to work.
2. Why ..... (not/should) I watch TV all day?
3. Sameera should ..... (doing) random act of kindness next week.
4. My aunt Dalia is a person ..... (where) is always very kind to me.
5. It was the watch ..... (where) my father gave me for my birthday.
6. I saw Ahmed in the park ..... (who) we often play football.
7. The café ..... (when) I meet my friends sells delicious ice cream.
8. The tourists ..... (what) visit Egypt always love the ancient temples.
9. This is the museum ..... (who) the school visited last year.
10. The market is the place ..... (whose) I often get lost.
11. That is the house ..... (when) my grandmother was born.

Unit 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Please take your ..... home, don't leave it in the park.
   a) grass b) rubbish c) jewellery d) music
2. It was raining for days and then there was a ....., so people used boats to leave their houses!
   a) cloud b) storm c) drought d) flood
3. There are a lot of cars in the city, so the air ..... is very bad.
   a) pollution b) polluted c) polluting d) pollute
4. There was no rain for months this winter, so now there is a ..... .
   a) cloud b) storm c) drought d) flood
5. Not many fish live in the river because it is very ..... .
   a) pollution b) polluted c) polluting d) pollute
6. We should use more ..... energy from the sun and the wind.
   a) black b) green c) pink d) blue
7. To ..... is to be in a particular place or position.
   a) keep b) stay c) collect d) locate
8. ..... is a plant used for making clothes.
   a) Cotton b) Wood c) Wheat d) Bean
9. A/An ..... is a long area of water made for ships or boats.
   a) arch b) castle c) canal d) statue
10. When the planet gets warmer, it is called global ..... .
    a) warning b) warming c) heating d) cooling
11. When ice warms, it ..... .
    a) evaporates b) removes c) melts d) dries
12. The Egyptians opened the Suez ..... in 1869.
    a) Canal b) River c) Sea d) Ocean
13. ..... is very important to Egypt.
    a) Tower b) Tour c) Tourism d) Tourist
14. Sidi Barrani is ..... on the north-west coast of Egypt.
    a) located b) lied c) brought d) stood
15. ..... is not a green form of transport.
    a) Sailing b) Cycling c) Driving d) Walking

16. A train is not as ..... as a plane.

a) fast b) faster c) fastest d) more fast

17. The drought this year is ..... serious as it was last year.

a) not as b) not c) not more d) not much

18. The football players are not playing as ..... as they did last week.

a) worse b) well c) better d) best

19. Tamer likes reading as ..... as he likes playing computer games.

a) more b) few c) less d) much

20. Nessma writes in English ..... as she speaks it.

a) much carefully b) more carefully c) carefully d) as carefully

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The canal is ..... (polluted) than it was before.
2. Mount Kenya is ..... (not/high) as Mount Kilimanjaro.
3. I think that air pollution is as ..... (serious) water pollution.
4. My home city is Minya. It ..... (locate) near the Nile.
5. The honey ..... (make) from sugar.
6. Many ancient monuments and buildings ..... (find) in the city.
7. Some people say that recycling is ..... (not/important) as using less water.
8. Alexandria is not ..... (big) as Cairo.
9. Mo Salah ..... (know) by people everywhere.
10. Many vegetables ..... (grow) by the farmers around here.
11. Figs aren't as ..... (delicious) chocolate.
12. Mount Catherine is a ..... (high) mountain than Jabal Mousa.
13. This new phone is ..... (bad) than my old one.
14. The museum ..... (visit) by lots of people every year.

End of Term Practice

A Listening

Listening Text



نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is Aya's father's job?
   - **a)** A shop worker.
   - **b)** A teacher.
   - **c)** A street-food seller.
   - **d)** It doesn't say.
2. Why must Aya stay at home every day?
   - **a)** To work.
   - **b)** To study.
   - **c)** To look after her brothers and sisters.
   - **d)** To plant trees.
3. Where does Aya have to go in the evenings?
   - **a)** To school.
   - **b)** To the shops.
   - **c)** To a park.
   - **d)** To her teacher's house.
4. How does Aya feel when she gets home?
   - **a)** Tired but grateful.
   - **b)** Angry.
   - **c)** Hungry.
   - **d)** Sad.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Manal : I can't come to your family party next weekend because my grandfather is in hospital.

Leila : (1)..... to hear that, Manal. I'll get something.

Manal : (2)....., Leila?

Leila : I mean I'll buy him something that you can take to the hospital.

Manal : (3)..... don't we buy him something together?

Leila : That's an interesting (4)..... . What can we get him?

Manal : We (5)..... buy him a magazine to read.

Leila : Good idea!

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In 1925, a British adventurer called Leonard Woolley was exploring a palace in ancient Babylon (which is located in Iraq today), when he discovered a strange collection of objects. The objects all had labels on them and Woolley realised that this was probably the world's first ever museum! Woolley knew that rich people in the past used to collect special objects in their houses.

In Babylon, the palace was the home of Princess Ennigaldi in the year 530 BCE. Some of the objects, however, were about 1,500 years older. Woolley did not know much about Princess Ennigaldi, but he learned that people were interested in history in the past as much as they are interested in it today. Isn't that fantastic?

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What was Leonard Woolley exploring in 1925? .....
2. Why did he think the objects were from a museum? .....
3. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Some of the objects in the museum were .....
   a) about 2,000 years old **b)** the same age as the palace
   c) newer than the palace **d)** a lot older than the palace
5. What do you think the word "collection" means?
   a) A palace. **b)** An innovation.
   c) Things without names. **d)** Things you keep together.
6. What did Leonard Woolley learn about people in the past?
   a) They all had museums. **b)** They were interested in history.
   c) They were all very rich. **d)** They were all fantastic.

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... work in the street. They sell food.
   a) Call-centre workers **b)** Nurses
   c) Engineers **d)** Street-food sellers
2. Many people in the city live in a ..... of flats.
   a) black **b)** block **c)** chest **d)** house
3. The mountain was very high and we all felt ..... at the top because we thought we might fall!
   a) scare **b)** scared **c)** happy **d)** tall

4. Kareem's cousin is ..... and never puts his books away.
   a) messy b) cruel c) serious d) tidy
5. Eyad works as a ..... for a charity that helps to clean the local beach.
   a) patient b) figure c) model d) volunteer
6. Where did your grandparents .....?
   a) lived b) used to live c) use to live d) living
7. The nurse is a ..... . She saved a lot of people.
   a) hero b) beggar c) manager d) servant
8. While Hassan ..... to school, he saw a famous squash player.
   a) was walking b) is walking c) walked d) walks
9. You must not ..... the objects in the museum.
   a) touch b) belong to c) relax d) see
10. The new book ..... I bought is very interesting.
    a) who b) where c) that d) when

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The Egyptian handball team ..... (win) the competition last year.
2. Karim ..... (take) a photo of the museum at the moment.
3. Cotton clothes ..... (sell) all over the world.
4. Mona ..... (have) to wear the uniform at school.

E Writing

6 Choose one of the following:

1. Write an email of 80-90 words to a penfriend telling him or her about your daily routine.
2. Write a blog of 80-95 words about a historic place you visited.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Part 3 Final Exams & Listening Texts



1. 20 Schools & Directorates Exams	اختبارات المدارس والإدارات وعددهم ٢٠
2. 8 Al-Azhar Exams	اختبارات الأزهر وعددهم ٨
3. 2 Inclusive Exams	اختبارات الدمج وعددهم ٢
4. Final Exams Listening Texts	نصوص استماع الاختبارات النهائية

(1) Schools & Directorates Exams

1 Ministry Guiding Model نموذج الوزارة الاسترشادى

A Listening

Listening Text
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

24

4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Zeinab is from ..... .
   a) Cairo b) El Fayoum c) Aswan d) Alexandria
2. El Fayoum is a large ..... .
   a) village b) farm c) city d) town
3. Zeinab lives with her ..... in a flat.
   a) parents b) brother c) mother d) parents and her brother
4. Zeinab's favourite subject is ..... .
   a) English b) French c) maths d) Arabic

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ola is asking Ali about his daily routine.

Ola: What's your typical day like?
Ali : (1)..... .
Ola: (2).....?
Ali : I have my breakfast at six thirty with my family.
Ola: What time do you arrive at school?
Ali : (3)..... .
Ola: (4).....?
Ali : I leave school at 2 o'clock in the afternoon.
Ola: Do you always do your homework after lunch?
Ali : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One day, a fox was very hungry. It looked for food **here and there**. It couldn't get anything because it was a rainy day. At last, it found some bread and meat in a hole of a big tree. The hungry fox got down the hole. It ate all the food. It was a forester's lunch. The forester was on his way back to the tree to have lunch. But he saw a fox instead of the food in the hole. When the fox saw the forester, it tried to get out of the hole. But it couldn't because the hole was wet and slippy. The forester caught the fox and beat it hard.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. .....
2. Why didn't the forester find the food? .....
3. If you were the forester, what would you do to the fox? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The closest meaning to the words "here and there" is ..... .

a) anywhere b) everywhere c) somewhere d) nowhere

5. It was a ..... day, so the hole was wet and slippy.

a) thirsty b) hungry c) rainy d) crazy

6. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the ..... .

a) forester b) meat c) fox d) food

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



1. Bees and ants are small ..... .

a) animals b) birds c) turtles d) insects

2. My grandfather has a ..... in the garden and he uses it to water his plants.

a) trip b) tap c) tape d) top

3. The Egyptian Handball Team won an important ..... in 2020.

a) development b) experiment c) competition d) completion

4. When you invite a person to your house, he is your ..... .

a) guest b) grass c) guess d) glass

5. Samy is deaf, but he understands us because we use ..... .

a) food stall b) colours c) sign language d) sports

6. Mona is very ..... and leaves her toys all over the floor.

a) tidy b) dirty c) missed d) messy

7. ..... is a plant used for making clothes.

a) Cotton b) Sugar c) Wheat d) Flower

8. In 2016, a shark ..... Omar and he lost a leg.
   a) is attacking b) attacking c) attacked d) attacks
9. What is Mary ..... for her uncle?
   a) making b) make c) is making d) makes
10. ..... children like playing computer games?
   a) Does b) Do c) Are d) Were

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. The tiger is ..... (fat) than the dog.
2. This is my good friend ..... (which) helps others.
3. The girls are singing ..... (happy).
4. People ..... (must) throw rubbish in the street.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"A job you would like to do"

.....

.....

.....

.....

2 Cairo Governorate — New Cairo Directorate

A Listening

24

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar was born in ..... .
   a) 1994 b) 1949 c) 2002 d) 2020
2. A/An ..... attacked him when he was 22.
   a) whale b) shark c) snake d) octopus
3. Omar is an important ..... .
   a) doctor b) coach c) engineer d) scientist
4. Omar lost his ..... .
   a) arm b) head c) fingers d) leg

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:



Mariam is talking to Sama about her daily routine.

Sama : Do you have a daily routine, Mariam?
Mariam: (1)..... .
Sama : (2).....?
Mariam: I get up at 6:30 in the morning.
Sama : Do you make your breakfast?
Mariam: (3)..... .
Sama : (4).....?
Mariam: My mum always makes it for me.
Sama : How do you go to school every day?
Mariam: (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension



3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We should all be proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Belbeis, Sharqia. His family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. He also became a doctor like his father. He entered Cairo University. He studied medicine there. Then he moved to London. Before he stopped working in 2001, he worked in a special hospital in London. At this hospital, he helped to give people new hearts for the first time. Before the 1980s, people with heart problems often used to die. In 2009, he started a charity, called "Aswan Heart Centre", for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives, but many ill children can live healthy lives.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. .....
2. What does the underlined word "there" refer to? .....
3. Why do you think Dr Magdy started a charity for ill children? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The birthplace of Dr Magdy is ..... .
   a) Aswan b) Cairo c) London d) Belbeis
5. The underlined word "ill" can have the same meaning as ..... .
   a) healthy b) ugly c) sick d) alive
6. In ....., he started a charity for ill children.
   a) 1980 b) 2001 c) 2009 d) 1935

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. Bad people should be taken to ..... .
   a) beaches b) prison c) parks d) cinema
2. This is Mr Khaled ..... teaches us social studies.
   a) which b) who c) where d) when
3. People who are 13 to 19 are called ..... .
   a) babies b) teenagers c) old people d) children
4. ..... are important to keep the light out.
   a) Wardrobes b) Carpets c) Curtains d) Sofas
5. You ..... run in hospitals.
   a) must b) have to c) mustn't d) has to
6. Good and kind people always ..... to charities to help the poor.
   a) share b) donate c) feed d) start
7. While Sara ....., the doorbell rang.
   a) study b) studied c) studies d) was studying
8. The street-food seller ..... food for people to eat.
   a) returns b) repairs c) prepares d) communicates
9. You can't travel to any country without a ..... .
   a) laptop b) passport c) suitcase d) school bag
10. Dropping rubbish ..... the environment.
    a) behaves b) collects c) damages d) cleans

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. Mariam ..... (get) up at 6:30.
2. He plays basketball ..... (good).
3. Did he ..... (used to) ride bikes?
4. Malak ..... (study) English now.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Helping at home"

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text

24

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What does Mohamed do? - He is a/an ..... .
   a) doctor b) engineer
   c) teacher d) carpenter
2. He works in ..... .
   a) Egypt b) Japan
   c) Saudi Arabia d) Morocco
3. He is taller than his ..... .
   a) wife b) son
   c) daughter d) brother
4. He goes to work by ..... .
   a) car b) bike
   c) bus d) train

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nada is asking Heba about what she is interested in.

Nada : What's your favourite hobby, Heba?

Heba : (1)..... .

Nada : (2).....?

Heba : I enjoy reading at the library.

Nada : (3).....?

Heba : This book is about the history of Egypt.

Nada : Do you like the library?

Heba : (4)..... .

Nada : Can I borrow this book, please?

Heba : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: 4.5

Most people have three meals every day; breakfast, lunch and dinner. They eat these meals at known times; in the morning, in the afternoon and in the evening. But in fact, most of **them** don't care about what they should eat for each meal. Doctors say that healthy food is very important, and people should eat lots of fruits and vegetables. People shouldn't eat too many cakes. Doctors advise people to drink a lot of water and milk every day and not to have too many sugary drinks. To keep healthy, doctors advise people not to stay at home all the time. They should go for walks, do exercise or practise any sport.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
2. What do doctors advise people not to do? .....
3. What else can people do to have a healthy life? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to the ..... .
   a) doctors b) people c) fruits d) meals
5. ..... people care about food.
   a) All b) Many c) Few d) No
6. Doctors say that people should not eat too many ..... .
   a) cakes b) vegetables c) fruits d) drinks

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. We have a beautiful ..... on the floor in front of the living room.
   a) fridge b) curtain c) carpet d) TV
2. A ..... is someone who works for no money to help people.
   a) mechanic b) teacher c) volunteer d) nurse
3. That is the teacher ..... teaches us maths.
   a) which b) who c) what d) whose
4. You ..... do the housework. Our mother is ill.
   a) have b) mustn't c) must d) shouldn't
5. There are more than 2,000 ..... in the museum.
   a) subjects b) objects c) projects d) status

6. Good students should follow the school ..... .
   a) roles b) rules c) lines d) ruins
7. Bread is made from ..... .
   a) wheat b) cheese c) sugar d) sweets
8. When you speak English well, you can ..... with other people in England.
   a) clean b) imagine c) communicate d) take
9. The ..... take in air and help us to breathe.
   a) brain b) heart c) lungs d) legs
10. I'm looking forward ..... my breakfast.
   a) have b) having c) to have d) to having

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. Alexandria is ..... (locating) in the north of Egypt.
2. Is your cousin ..... (old) than your brother?
3. The bird is flying ..... (quick).
4. The farmers ..... (grow) plants at the moment.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Your favourite sport"

.....

.....

.....

4 Giza Governorate — Omrania Directorate

A Listening

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

24 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How old is Salma?
   a) Eleven. b) Ten. c) Twelve. d) Thirteen.
2. What's Salma's favourite subject?
   a) English. b) Maths. c) History. d) Arabic.
3. What kind of school does Salma go to?
   a) Primary. b) Preparatory. c) Secondary. d) Technical.
4. What sport does Salma like?
   a) Tennis. b) Football. c) Karate. d) Basketball.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

2.5

Yasser wants to buy a jacket at the clothes shop.

Shop assistant : How can I help you?
Yasser : (1) ..... .
Shop assistant : (2) .....?
Yasser : I want it medium, please.
Shop assistant : What colour would you like?
Yasser : (3) ..... .
Shop assistant : Here you are. (4) .....?
Yasser : Yes, it's good. How much is it?
Shop assistant : (5) ..... .
Yasser : OK, I'll buy it.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

4.5

It's normal to get worried or to feel sad sometimes, but what helps teenagers to feel happy? We found five things that can help. Teenagers don't often get enough sleep, but this is a time in your life when you need a lot of sleep. Young people who sleep from eight to ten hours a night are much happier. It's good to be alone sometimes, but people need each other. Spend time with your family and also try to make new friends because this makes teenagers happy. People need nature to be happy. Go to the desert or the river or go to a park if you live in the city. When you do something kind for someone else, this makes you feel happy too. Try it! You will feel really good.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. .....
2. How many hours should young people sleep a night? .....
3. What do you think makes teenagers happy? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..... .
   a) to be kind b) to be false c) to be unkind d) to be angry
5. Why do people need nature?
   a) To be sad. b) To be happy. c) To be unhappy. d) To be important.
6. The underlined word "sad" means ..... .
   a) happy b) pleased c) unhappy d) brave

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. I always ..... my friends. I don't phone them.
   a) mix b) fix c) text d) try
2. She is learning ..... to improve her handwriting.
   a) history b) geography c) calligraphy d) science
3. The ..... tells the parts of our body what to do.
   a) brain b) heart c) nose d) ear
4. The pharaohs were the first to write on ..... .
   a) clay b) papyrus c) metal d) wool
5. Paper is made ..... wood.
   a) of b) from c) in d) out
6. A ..... is someone you don't know.
   a) stronger b) seller c) stranger d) sailor
7. ..... people usually do bad things to others.
   a) Foreign b) Clever c) Cruel d) Kind
8. ..... your father got a computer?
   a) Do b) Does c) Is d) Has
9. I saw an accident while I ..... to school.
   a) go b) went c) going d) was going
10. In a museum, you ..... touch the objects.
    a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) has to

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. Sara ..... (not/study) on Fridays.
2. Is it important to drive ..... (careful)?
3. Cairo is the city ..... (what) I was born.
4. China is much ..... (big) than Britain.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Your daily routine"

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

24 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What did Saged buy yesterday?
   a) A car. b) A bike. c) A bag. d) A phone.
2. Who did Saged go with?
   a) His friend. b) His brother. c) His mother. d) His father.
3. They went to the shop ..... .
   a) by bus b) by car c) on foot d) by train
4. They came back home at ..... .
   a) 7:30 b) 9:00 c) 10:00 d) 8:30

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mariam is asking Fatma about her personal experiences.

Mariam: Have you ever got a prize?
Fatma : (1)..... .
Mariam: (2).....?
Fatma : I got it two years ago.
Mariam: (3).....?
Fatma : Because I wrote a story.
Mariam: Did you get any other prizes?
Fatma : (4)..... . I got a medal in karate.
Mariam: (5)..... .
Fatma : It's kind of you.

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

There was an old man. He was a salt seller who used to carry the salt bag on his donkey to the market every day. On the way, they had to cross a stream. One day, the donkey suddenly fell down the stream and the salt bag also fell into the water. The salt dissolved in the water, so the bag became very light to carry. The donkey was happy.

Then the donkey started to play the same trick every day. The salt seller came to understand the trick and decided to teach a lesson to it. The next day, he put a cotton bag on the donkey. Again, it played the same trick hoping that the cotton bag would still become lighter. But the wet cotton became very heavy to carry and the donkey suffered. It learnt a lesson. It didn't play the trick anymore after that day, and the seller was happy.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the opposite of the word "wet" in the passage? .....
2. What's the passage about? .....
3. What do you think of the man? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ..... .
   a) old man b) salt c) cotton d) donkey
5. The old man took the salt to the ..... to sell.
   a) market b) studio c) cinema d) stream
6. When the cotton bag fell into the water, it became ..... .
   a) new b) old c) heavy d) light

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... take in air and help us to breathe.
   a) heart b) brain c) stomach d) lungs
2. People made ..... with clay from the River Nile.
   a) bats b) sofas c) pots d) taps
3. ..... means happening without a plan.
   a) Random b) Freedom c) Kindness d) Sorrow
4. I work for a charity which ..... after poor people.
   a) takes b) makes c) looks d) goes
5. Marwa gets up early and ..... breakfast.
   a) do b) has c) don't have d) have
6. Why is Omar ..... his food stall at this place?
   a) parking b) parks c) parked d) park
7. A/An ..... is someone who works for no money.
   a) engineer b) mechanic c) pilot d) volunteer

8. You ..... run near the pool.
   a) must b) mustn't c) can d) don't have to
9. Well done, Mazen! That's great ..... .
   a) sadness b) news c) sorry d) fail
10. A/An ..... is a boy or girl aged 13-19.
   a) teenager b) baby c) orphan d) older

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. Salma ..... (get) up at 6:30.
2. Our teacher speaks English ..... (good).
3. As she ..... (cook), her friends came.
4. The hotel ..... (locate) on a lovely beach.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Voluntary work"

.....

.....

6 Alexandria Governorate — East Directorate

A Listening

24

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Salwa was born in ..... .
   a) Cairo b) El Minya c) Tanta d) Giza
2. El Minya is located ..... .
   a) near the Nile b) far from the Nile
   c) near the canal d) far from the canal
3. El Minya is famous for ..... .
   a) sweets b) fruits c) black honey d) rice
4. ..... are the plants which are grown in El Minya.
   a) Cotton b) Cotton and potatoes
   c) Cotton and sugar cane d) Potatoes and sugar cane

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

2.5

Maged is asking Ahmed about his father's job.

Maged : What is your father's job, Ahmed?
Ahmed : (1)..... .
Maged : (2).....?
Ahmed : He works in El Salam Secondary School.
Maged : Which subject does he teach?
Ahmed : (3)..... .
Maged : (4).....?
Ahmed : Yes, all his students like him.
Maged : Do you want to be a teacher like him?
Ahmed : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

4.5

Water is very important in our life. We need it for drinking, washing, cooking, watering fields and getting electricity. We shouldn't use **it** carelessly. Careless people use it badly. Some of them use too much water to wash their cars. Others leave the taps open day and night. Children need to know how to use water carefully. Parents and teachers have to teach their children that water can help us to turn the desert into green land to grow more crops. Nowadays, modern ways are used to water the plants to save water. Also, we can recycle water after using it for washing. We can use it to plant crops. Without water nothing on our planet can live, so we should all keep water **clean** as it is the main source for life.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?.....
2. Why do you think water is important in our life?.....
3. What do teachers and parents have to teach children?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to the ..... .
   a) life b) water c) people d) taps
5. The opposite of the underlined word "**clean**" is ..... .
   a) good b) high c) dirty d) fast
6. Water can help us to ..... more crops.
   a) build b) drink c) tell d) grow

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. Ali ..... early every day.
   a) sleep b) sleeps c) slept d) don't sleep
2. My sister speaks very ..... .
   a) quietly b) quick c) slow d) quiet
3. We can see ..... in the temples and museums.
   a) states b) stages c) stadiums d) statues
4. Did your father live in the city or in the .....?
   a) charity b) canal c) countryside d) emergency
5. I have a/an ..... in my bedroom. I sit on it to listen to music.
   a) curtain b) bookshelf c) armchair d) drawer
6. This is my new bag ..... I bought for school.
   a) which b) who c) when d) where
7. The heart ..... blood around the body.
   a) pumps b) breathes c) goes d) cuts
8. A ..... is the person who helps in a place which sells things.
   a) nurse b) shop worker c) doctor d) police officer
9. "....." means very amazing.
   a) Terrible b) Horrible c) Awesome d) Boring
10. She has ..... twenty thousand pounds to the charities in our city.
    a) donated b) made c) decided d) sold

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. She ..... (have to) pass the exams to go to university.
2. It is important to drive ..... (careful) when it's raining.
3. While we ..... (walk) to the beach, we saw a big lake.
4. Yasser ..... (not/use to) go to school on foot.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Your daily routine"

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text
24
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where are they going?
   a) Aswan. b) Luxor. c) The Pyramids. d) Alexandria.
2. When are they going?
   a) On Saturday. b) On Sunday. c) On Monday. d) On Tuesday.
3. What must they bring?
   a) Snack. b) Dinner. c) Breakfast. d) Lunch.
4. Why must they bring a hat?
   a) It's hot. b) It's cool. c) It's cold. d) It's good.

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Manal is asking Leila about her favourite hobby.

Manal : Hi, Leila. What's your favourite hobby?
Leila : (1)..... .
Manal : (2).....?
Leila : I learned to swim last summer.
Manal : How long did it take to be perfect?
Leila : (3)..... .
Manal : (4).....?
Leila : I practise it in the club.
Manal : Can I come with you?
Leila : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

There are so many historical places in Egypt. Everyone should visit these historical places in Egypt. That helps us to know more about our beautiful country. Last week, I visited the Citadel in Cairo. It's an important monument. It has very tall towers. I saw them from a long way. Salah al-Din built it to protect Cairo. It took eight years to complete. I visited many museums and mosques there. I hope to visit it again one day. I am also going to visit the Museum of Islamic Art next week. It's a very important place where you can see a lot of things of the Islamic period. It's open from 9:30 a.m. to 6:30 p.m. every day except Friday. I hope I will have a good time there.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage? .....
2. Why should we visit historical places? .....
3. Why do you think Salah al-Din built the Citadel? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The Citadel in Cairo is ..... .
   a) modern b) new c) ancient d) bad
5. You can visit the Museum of Islamic Art ..... .
   a) every day b) on Fridays
   c) five days a week d) six days a week
6. The underlined word "**there**" refers to ..... .
   a) towers b) the Citadel
   c) mosque d) the Museum of Islamic Art

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can you ..... my mother for me, because my phone is not working?
   a) fix b) text c) test d) rest
2. Hassan forgot to bring any food for the picnic, but he can ..... our food.
   a) chair b) share c) sure d) shore
3. I live with my family in a small ..... .
   a) fat b) flat c) shop d) park
4. To be ..... is to be happy about the good things in your life.
   a) crazy b) worried c) grateful d) lazy
5. A/An ..... is someone who works for no money to help people.
   a) coach b) volunteer c) patient d) adult
6. When we arrived at the museum, a ..... was waiting for us.
   a) statue b) camel c) guide d) guest
7. You should ..... your things after using them.
   a) take out b) look after c) put away d) give up
8. Sally, ... is my best friend, likes to play handball.
   a) when b) where c) which d) who
9. We're sitting on the rocks ..... because they are very sharp!
   a) carefully b) careful c) cares d) careless
10. What ..... you do yesterday?
    a) do b) does c) did d) were

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. At the moment, Hany ..... (play) football in the club.
2. Japan didn't use to ..... (is) a rich country.
3. Heba was playing ..... (while) her mother called her.
4. You ..... (doesn't) have to shout. I can hear you.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"What you do at the weekend"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

8 Qalyubia Governorate — Banha Directorate

A Listening

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 24 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My sister is a ..... .
   a) nurse b) doctor
   c) scientist d) teacher
2. She works in a big ..... .
   a) lab b) school
   c) hospital d) farm
3. She always helps ..... people.
   a) ill b) bad
   c) happy d) sad
4. When she was young, she used to ..... .
   a) ride a bike b) play games
   c) watch TV d) study hard

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:



Waleed and Khaled are talking about the summer holiday.

Waleed : Where did you spend your summer holiday?
Khaled : (1)..... .
Waleed : Did you go to Sharm El-Shiekh by car or by plane?
Khaled : (2)..... .
Waleed : (3).....?
Khaled : I stayed 10 days there.
Waleed : (4).....?
Khaled : I went with my parents. It was a comfortable flight.
Waleed : Did you enjoy your time there?
Khaled : (5)..... . It was a wonderful holiday.

C Reading Comprehension



3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In fact, we are much luckier than our grandfathers because we enjoy lots of things which have made our life easier, more enjoyable and comfortable. Until a short time ago, people had much trouble travelling from a village to the town, or making a long distance call. Now, we enjoy modern means of transport and communication. If you ask me which **modern** invention has affected the world most, I'll say that it is the internet which I like much. It introduces all real-life activities. You can almost do anything on the internet that you can do in real life, and maybe in a faster, easier and cheaper way. Very few people post letters nowadays as they have been replaced by e-mails. Few people go to libraries because **they** can get any information online. We can also shop, pay bills, study or apply for jobs on the internet.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the writer's most favourite invention?.....
2. What is the passage mainly about?.....
3. Why do you think our grandfathers suffered a lot in the past?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ..... .
   a) letters b) libraries c) e-mails d) people
5. Nearly all life activities can be done on the internet ..... .
   a) in a wrong way b) in a tiring way c) in a better way d) in a difficult way
6. The opposite of the underlined word "**modern**" is ..... .
   a) ancient b) bad c) new d) long

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. Can you ..... me when you arrive safely?
   a) text b) mix c) repeat d) fix
2. We travel to many countries to have a lot of ..... .
   a) gardens b) adventures c) roads d) lives
3. Our computer doesn't work so we need a computer engineer to ..... it.
   a) prepare b) stay c) park d) repair
4. The ..... Egyptian team won the under-19 World Cup final in 2019.
   a) senior b) oldest c) children d) junior
5. Our teachers are very ..... . They never get nervous easily.
   a) brave b) patient c) slow d) young
6. We need to follow the ..... of the game if we want to play.
   a) roles b) lines c) races d) rules
7. **A:** What is the ..... between Cairo and Alexandria? **B:** It's 216 km.
   a) distance b) rail c) road d) way
8. Students ..... go to school on holidays.
   a) always b) usually c) sometimes d) never
9. The cat is sitting in the sun ..... .
   a) lazily b) lazy c) lazier d) laziest
10. Ahmed's uncle ..... use to live in Cairo.
    a) didn't b) doesn't c) wasn't d) was

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. Yesterday, I ..... (be) at school from 8 to 2.
2. The car ..... (repair) yesterday.
3. I was reading a book while mum ..... (cook).
4. That's the hotel ..... (who) I stayed in.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Charity work you like most"

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text

24

4

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Samir works for a ..... which looks after animals.
   a) charity b) club c) zoo d) company
2. The animals that are old or sick cannot ..... anymore.
   a) run b) work c) eat d) play
3. People donate ..... to the charity to buy food for the animals.
   a) carts b) clothes c) money d) meals
4. They help to feed the animals and look ..... them.
   a) out b) for c) up d) after

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Gomana is meeting a British tourist who is visiting Egypt.

Gomana : Hello, it's nice to meet you.
Tourist : (1)..... .
Gomana : (2).....?
Tourist : I'm from Britain.
Gomana : Is this your first visit to Egypt?
Tourist : (3)..... . I came here last year.
Gomana : (4).....?
Tourist : I visited the Egyptian Museum and the Pyramids.
Gomana : Have a nice time.
Tourist : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

A role model is someone who is considered to be a good example for other people to copy. My father is my role model. He is a businessman. He is working very hard and he works day and night to give us a healthy life. He protects me from all kinds of problems. My sister and I can talk about anything and everything with him.

Every night, we wait for him at the dinner table to chat with him. He also takes us for a walk after dinner and tells us interesting stories. He takes us for a picnic or a movie once a month. At the weekends, he volunteers at an old people's home.

My father enjoys playing chess with his friends. He believes in regular exercise and has also taught us the same. He wants me to excel in whatever I do. I want to make him feel proud of me one day.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How often does the father take them for a picnic or a movie? .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "us" refer to? .....
3. When you grow up, would you like to be like this father? Why/ Why not? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The main idea of the passage is "..... ".
   a) A good family b) A helpful person
   c) A perfect role model d) A successful person
5. At the dinner table, they ..... to each other.
   a) talk b) play c) listen d) write
6. The underlined word "excel" means "..... ".
   a) spend b) succeed c) fail d) worry

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I go to school .....; I always go in the morning.
   a) to day b) daily c) in day d) week
2. When you invite a person to your house, he is your ..... .
   a) guess b) host c) guest d) hostess
3. Good children should ..... their parents and teachers.
   a) predict b) respect c) protect d) expect
4. There are lots of ..... in the supermarket today. It's very crowded.
   a) sailors b) customers c) objects d) crafts
5. They give the footballer a ..... test to check his health.
   a) random b) randomly c) cultural d) historic
6. There was no rain for four months this winter, so now there is a/an ..... .
   a) flood b) drought c) energy d) pollution

7. Deaf people can communicate ..... using sign language.
a) by b) on c) at d) with

8. Niagara Falls ..... by the most people in the world.
a) visit b) is visited c) visits d) are visited

9. I went to the supermarket ..... is next to my house to buy cheese.
a) who b) when c) where d) which

10. You ..... swim here. It's against the law.
a) mustn't b) must c) could d) can

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. One of the boys ..... (is) absent yesterday.
2. Football is ..... (play) all over the world.
3. He ..... (not/use) to stay up late when he was young.
4. It's a holiday today. We ..... (not/have) go to school.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"What you and your family do on holidays."

.....

.....

.....

10 Dakahliya Governorate — Aga Educational Directorate

A Listening

Listening Text 24

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sameera Moussa was a ..... .
a) doctor b) vet c) seller d) scientist

2. She was born in ..... .
a) 1970 b) 1917 c) 1907 d) 1971

3. She studied ..... at Cairo University.
a) arts b) maths c) science d) medicine

4. How many Egyptian women were nuclear scientists before Sameera Moussa?
a) None. b) One woman.
c) Two women. d) Three women.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:



Asmaa and Marwa are looking at Marwa's photo album.

Asmaa : What are you doing, Marwa?
Marwa : (1)..... .
Asmaa : Can I see it, please?
Marwa : (2)..... .
Asmaa : (3).....?
Marwa : We were in Geziret El Ward in Mansoura.
Asmaa : Who is in the foreground of the photo?
Marwa : (4)..... .
Asmaa : (5).....?
Marwa : My cousin Sama is in the background.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:



A queen wanted to test how wise her husband was. She was standing far from him and was holding two flower baskets. One has real flowers and one had fake or unreal flowers. She asked him, "Which one is real? Which one is fake?" The king did not answer right away. He was silent for a moment. He saw some bees outside. They were on the roses. He told a servant, "Open the window." The servant did what he said. The bees came in from the window. They went to the basket with real flowers. Now, everyone knew which basket had real flowers. The queen was happy with the king and felt proud of him.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.....
2. What was the queen holding?.....
3. What do you think of the king?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "She" refers to the ..... .
   a) queen b) king c) basket d) bee
5. The king was really ..... .
   a) unwise b) silly c) wise d) greedy
6. The king was silent for a moment. I think he was ..... .
   a) sleeping b) thinking c) eating d) swimming

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. My neighbour doesn't have money to buy food. He is very ..... .
   a) awesome b) proud c) rich d) poor
2. Sama ..... at her parents and left to school.
   a) tried b) waved c) hit d) touched
3. Doctors and nurses help patients to stop ..... .
   a) infections b) infect c) infected d) infects
4. Drivers must ..... traffic rules or they will be fined سيتم فرض غرامة.
   a) borrow b) break c) follow d) lend
5. Nawal is a ..... . She works in my friend's house.
   a) servant b) head teacher c) beggar d) princess
6. After the heavy rain, there was a ..... .
   a) change b) drought c) flood d) pollution
7. He is the ..... of the company. All the people there work for him.
   a) nurse b) manager c) doctor d) worker
8. Yasser ..... work in a factory when he was in Italy.
   a) use to b) use c) used d) used to
9. Does she ..... to take this medicine? It is terrible.
   a) should b) has c) must d) have
10. The museum ..... I visited last week had a big entrance.
    a) which b) who c) when d) where

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. While I was taking a selfie, I ..... (drop) my mobile phone.
2. My sister loves languages. She speaks English ..... (good).
3. The best cotton is ..... (plant) in Egypt.
4. Wafaa usually ..... (have) tea with breakfast. This is not healthy.

E Writing

6 Write an email of NINETY (90) words to your friend Nour to tell her about objects in your bedroom. Your name is Sama. Your email address is sama2010@hotmail.com and your friend's email address is nour@yahoo.com 6

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

24 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where is Port Said located? - It is in the ..... of Egypt.
   a) north-east b) south-east c) west d) south
2. What is it known for? - Its ..... .
   a) cars b) ships c) trains d) rockets
3. Many fish are caught in the sea near ..... .
   a) Alexandria b) Luxor c) the Suez Canal d) Matrouh
4. Ships come and go from around ..... .
   a) Cairo b) the world c) the coast d) Alexandria

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

2.5

Hani asks Omar about the importance of rubbish collectors.

Hani : What do you think of rubbish collectors?
Omar : (1)..... .
Hani : Heroes! (2).....?
Omar : Because they do something very useful.
Hani : What do they do?
Omar : (3)..... .
Hani : (4).....?
Omar : Yes, they are very important in our society.
Hani : What should we do to help them?
Omar : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

4.5

Being a teacher is not an easy job. Teachers work hard to help students understand their lessons and be creative ones. They also change the bad behaviour of naughty students into better ways, like how to be good students. Teachers play an important part in our society, so we should respect them, help them and be proud of them. The government is trying to improve their social life nowadays. In my point of view, teachers should be patient, helpful and kind to students to achieve their awesome message in life.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of this passage? .....
2. How can teachers help students? .....
3. Do you think that teachers are important in our society? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "awesome" means ..... .
   a) terrible b) amazing
   c) bad d) boring
5. Being a teacher is a/an ..... job.
   a) bad b) easy
   c) difficult d) funny
6. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?
   a) Students b) Teachers
   c) The government d) Ways

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. The mountain was very high and we all felt ..... at the top. It was a bad experience.
   a) scary b) scared c) happy d) tall
2. The firefighter is a ..... . He saves a lot of people.
   a) hero b) beggar c) manager d) servant
3. A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.
   a) sports coach b) surgeon c) police officer d) hero
4. We have a beautiful ..... on the floor in front of the living room.
   a) fridge b) curtain c) carpet d) TV
5. She works in a hospital. She is working in the children's ..... at the moment.
   a) word b) award c) ward d) world
6. She is learning ..... . She wants to improve her handwriting.
   a) technology b) biology c) geography d) calligraphy
7. A ..... is someone who is between 13 and 19 years old.
   a) child b) teenager c) toddler d) seller

8. ..... Hany at the party yesterday?

a) Was b) Did c) Were d) Are

9. You ..... arrive late at school.

a) must b) mustn't c) would d) had to

10. Where did you father .....?

a) lived b) use to live c) living d) used to live

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. Mr Hamdi ..... (not/have to) hurry as it is still early.
2. Droughts are ..... (serious) as floods.
3. This is our school ..... (who) we learn at.
4. Cotton clothes ..... (sell) everywhere in Egypt.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"A visit to a historic place"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

12 Damietta Governorate — El-Rawda Directorate

A Listening

Listening Text 24

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed visited the Pyramids last ..... .

a) Saturday b) Friday c) Wednesday d) Sunday

2. Ahmed went there with his ..... .

a) friend b) family c) teacher d) father

3. Ahmed took ..... of the place.

a) bags b) maps c) paintings d) photos

4. Ahmed went back home after ..... .

a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner d) tea

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

2.5

Radwa is helping a tourist to get to the Pyramids.

Tourist : Excuse me, can I ask you some questions?
Radwa : (1)..... .
Tourist : (2).....?
Radwa : The Pyramids are in Giza.
Tourist : Are they far from here?
Radwa : (3)..... .
Tourist : How can I go there?
Radwa : (4)..... .
Tourist : (5).....?
Radwa : The ancient Egyptians built them.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

4.5

This is Huda. She is a nurse. She is tall and thin. She works at a hospital. She looks after sick people. She gets up at six o'clock in the morning. She takes a shower and puts on her clothes. Then she eats breakfast at half past six. At seven o'clock, she catches the bus to the hospital. Huda starts work at eight o'clock. She helps the doctors. At twelve o'clock, she has lunch. She goes home at five o'clock. She has dinner at half past six in the evening. Then, she watches TV. At ten o'clock, she goes to bed.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the passage about?.....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "She" refer to?.....
3. Do you think people like Huda? Why? Why not?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Huda has dinner in the ..... .
   a) morning b) afternoon c) evening d) midday
5. The underlined word "sick" means ..... .
   a) well b) good c) healthy d) ill
6. Huda's job is a ..... .
   a) nurse b) police officer c) doctor d) shop worker

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. A ..... is a place where people go when they do something wrong.
   a) basin b) park c) prison d) temple
2. A ..... helps to keep people safe in the streets.
   a) nurse b) police officer c) doctor d) shop worker
3. A terrible event, such as an earthquake, is a ..... .
   a) habit b) prize c) party d) disaster
4. The ..... take in air and help us to breathe.
   a) brains b) lungs c) hearts d) legs
5. The ..... are people without money to live on.
   a) rich b) young c) poor d) brave
6. People made ..... with clay from the River Nile.
   a) bats b) pots c) beds d) carpets
7. My parents ..... money to a charity which helps disabled people.
   a) donate b) win c) gain d) earn
8. She gets up early and ..... breakfast.
   a) have b) had c) has d) didn't have
9. Sami ..... sign language at school now.
   a) learn b) learns c) is learning d) learnt
10. Where did your parents ..... when they were young?
    a) lived b) live c) lives d) living

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. While Salma ..... (read) a book, her friend phoned her.
2. They didn't use to ..... (had) a big car.
3. You should ..... (starts) running short distances.
4. Mr Sabri is the teacher ..... (which) taught my sister.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"What I usually do on holidays"

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text

24

4

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When did Mariam go to the market?
   a) Last Friday. b) Last Saturday. c) Last Monday. d) Last Sunday.
2. What did she buy?
   a) Cheese. b) Rice.
   c) Sugar. d) Fruit and vegetables.
3. How was the bag?
   a) Heavy. b) Light. c) Small. d) Weak.
4. How did Mariam go home?
   a) By bus. b) On foot. c) By train. d) By taxi.

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Manal asks Ola about her holiday.

Manal : Where did you go on holiday last year?
Ola : (1)..... .
Manal : (2).....?
Ola : I stayed in a nice hotel overlooking the sea.
Manal : (3).....?
Ola : I travelled by car.
Manal : Did you buy any souvenirs?
Ola : (4)..... .
Manal : What did you eat there?
Ola : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Sham El-Nessim is my favourite time of the year. We enjoy it at the start of spring. Sham El-Nessim started in 2700 BCE! Today, most Egyptians have a picnic in a garden or next to the river with their families. Many people also go to the beach, where they make sandcastles and swim in the sea. On this day, we eat a lot of special food. Do you want to know how to enjoy feseekh? Add lemon

juice to the fish and have it with salad. It's delicious, but you should buy it from a good shop and shouldn't eat much. Last year at Sham El-Nessim, we went to Alexandria. We visited our family and went to the beach. We rode our bikes and played games.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? .....
2. When did Sham El-Nessim first start? .....
3. What do you think about Sham El-Nessim? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Feseekh is a kind of ..... .
   a) meat b) rice c) fish d) egg
5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..... .
   a) river b) feseekh c) program d) Sham El-Nessim
6. They spent last Sham El-Nessim in ..... .
   a) Cairo b) Luxor c) Aswan d) Alexandria

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Street-food sellers put their food ..... in the best places in the city.
   a) stalls b) stills c) stales d) states
2. A ..... is a place where people go when they do something wrong.
   a) basin b) park c) prison d) temple
3. The ..... pumps blood around the body.
   a) liver b) heart c) lung d) brain
4. Dropping rubbish ..... the environment.
   a) behaves b) damages c) collects d) cleans
5. The building is very tall, but we can go to the top in the ..... .
   a) stairs b) left c) lift d) attic
6. We need more rain or there might be a ..... .
   a) drought b) flood c) rubbish d) fuel
7. When you ..... lost, you should ask for directions.
   a) come b) look c) get d) have
8. ..... women like watching football matches?
   a) Do b) Does c) Is d) Are
9. This is the hotel ..... my brother liked most.
   a) which b) where c) when d) who
10. Egypt is not as ..... as Russia.
    a) cold b) the coldest c) coldest d) colder

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. We ..... (not/has) to go to school on Fridays.
2. Ali is ..... (good) than his friend.
3. As I ..... (walk), I saw a bird.
4. Magda ..... (cuts) her fingers yesterday.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Your daily routine"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

14 Sharkia Governorate — 10th of Ramadan Directorate

A Listening

Listening Text 24

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How is Hala?
   a) Tidy. b) Messy.
   c) Ugly. d) Clean.
2. How often does she have to make her bed?
   a) Twice a week. b) Never.
   c) Once a week. d) Every day.
3. When does she tidy up?
   a) On Thursday. b) On Friday.
   c) On Saturday. d) On Sunday.
4. How often does she have to tidy up her bedroom?
   a) Twice a week. b) Never.
   c) Once a week. d) Every day.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

2.5

Hana and Nada are talking about the summer holiday.

Hana : Where did you go last summer?
Nada : (1)..... .
Hana : Where did you stay?
Nada : (2)..... .
Hana : (3).....?
Nada : We travelled by car.
Hana : Did you swim in the sea?
Nada : (4)..... .
Hana : (5).....?
Nada : We stayed there for a week.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

4.5

Tourism is very important for Egypt which is known for its ancient treasures and rich history. Every winter, thousands of tourists come to Egypt from all parts of the world. They come from Europe, Asia and Africa to spend their holiday in our great country. Those tourists come to enjoy the good weather of Egypt. They enjoy our golden sand beaches at Sharm El-Sheikh and Hurghada. Most of them visit the Egyptian Museum in Cairo to see Tutankhamun and his jewellery. When **it** is very cold in their countries, they like to visit Luxor and Aswan. They like to see the **ancient** treasures and temples. They also visit the Pyramids at Giza.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?.....
2. Where do tourists come from?.....
3. Why do you think tourism is important to Egypt?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to the ..... .
   a) sunshine b) weather c) museum d) beach
5. Tourists visit the ..... at Giza.
   a) Egyptian Museum b) Pyramids
   c) Europe d) Sphinx
6. The underlined word "**ancient**" means ..... .
   a) modern b) beautiful c) very old d) ugly

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. Mohammed Ali was the ..... of Egypt in the past. He was very important.
   a) ruler b) roller c) baker d) waiter
2. Our next door ..... is very kind.
   a) neighbour b) cafe c) ring d) community
3. Mona used to be lazy, but now she ..... .
   a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) weren't
4. We put up some new ..... on the window of the living room.
   a) cushions b) carpets c) mirrors d) curtains
5. A ..... is a person who can show you round a place.
   a) cook b) waiter c) tourist d) guide
6. Please, turn the ..... off. I want to sleep.
   a) cupboard b) sofa c) lamp d) desk
7. This book is very interesting. I ..... it to you.
   a) recommend b) advise c) tell d) say
8. This chemical helps to ..... away mosquitoes.
   a) bring b) run c) give d) keep
9. This is the doctor ..... examined my brother.
   a) where b) who c) which d) when
10. My friend ..... to school early.
    a) go always b) goes always c) always goes d) always go

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. On Friday, she ..... (have to) get up early. It is a holiday.
2. Bikes are ..... (expensive) than cars.
3. As we ..... (walk) into the museum, we saw some huge statues.
4. The museum ..... (visit) by lots of people every year.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"A visit to a famous place"

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

24

4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How does Zein go to school?
   a) By train. b) By taxi.
   c) On foot. d) By bus.
2. Why does Zein do some house jobs? - To help ..... .
   a) his brother b) his cousin
   c) his mum d) his sister
3. What subjects did Zein study for exams?
   a) English & maths. b) English & art.
   c) English & science. d) Social studies & Arabic.
4. What do you think of Zein? - He is a ..... boy.
   a) young b) bad
   c) helpful d) lazy

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Dalia is asking Mona about her favourite hobby.

Dalia : How are you, Mona?
Mona : (1)..... .
Dalia : What's your favourite hobby?
Mona : (2)..... .
Dalia : (3).....?
Mona : I usually read in my free time.
Dalia : (4).....?
Mona : It's a nice sport.
Dalia : Do you like to come with me next match?
Mona : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One day, Nabil went to town to buy new clothes. First, he tried on a pair of trousers. He didn't like the trousers, so he gave them back to the shopkeeper. Then, he tried a jacket which had the same price as the trousers. Nabil was **pleased** with the jacket, and he left the shop. Before **he** drove home, the shopkeeper ran out. "You didn't pay

for the jacket!" said the shopkeeper. "But I gave you the trousers in exchange for the jacket, didn't I?" replied Nabil. "Yes, but you didn't pay for the trousers, either!" said the shopkeeper. "But I didn't buy the trousers," replied Nabil. "I am not so stupid as to pay for something which I never bought."

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why did the shopkeeper run out of the shop? .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to? .....
3. What do you think of Nabil? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The main idea of the text is ..... .
   a) studying b) shopping c) playing d) travelling
5. Nabil was pleased with the ..... .
   a) trousers b) jacket c) hat d) shoes
6. The underlined word "pleased" means ..... .
   a) happy b) sad c) brave d) hard

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I often feel a pain in my ..... .
   a) stomach b) headache c) bandage d) medicine
2. Children mustn't talk to ..... .
   a) teachers b) parents c) strangers d) friends
3. Every one of the boys liked the funfair so much. It was really ..... .
   a) awesome b) terrible c) boring d) bad
4. Floods are natural ..... .
   a) disasters b) posters c) masters d) paintings
5. Students usually ..... experiments at school laboratory.
   a) make b) have c) build d) do
6. Tourism is something ..... is good for Egypt.
   a) who b) where c) which d) what
7. This charity helps ..... people. They give wheelchairs to those who cannot walk.
   a) disabled b) healthy c) strong d) fine
8. ..... away from that dangerous area at night, Mustafa.
   a) Touch b) Explain c) Keep d) Take

9. Boys usually ..... to play football at school.
   a) prefer b) are preferring c) preferred d) preferring
10. The train leaves at 9 am tomorrow. You ..... be late.
   a) should b) mustn't c) must d) don't have to

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. My sister always speaks very ..... (quiet).
2. (Was) ..... you listening while he was talking?
3. We (mustn't) ..... catch that train. It's the last one tonight.
4. Tarek is not here because he ..... (plays) tennis.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

"A description of your home" 6

.....
.....
.....
.....

16 Fayoum Governorate

A Listening

Listening Text 24

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Fort Qaitbey stands on a small ..... near Alexandria.
   a) lake b) island
   c) hill d) forest
2. It was built in ..... .
   a) 1418 b) 1840
   c) 1480 d) 1408
3. From its ....., you can get a beautiful view.
   a) buildings b) rooms
   c) walls d) roofs
4. There is a/an ..... inside the fort.
   a) castle b) museum
   c) arch d) temple

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:



Salma is asking Nada some questions about Egypt.

Salma : Where is Egypt located?
Nada : (1) ..... .
Salma : (2) .....?
Nada : Yes, it recycles much rubbish.
Salma : What is Egypt famous for?
Nada : (3) ..... .
Salma : Why don't we make a school magazine with more information about Egypt?
Nada : (4) ..... .
Salma : (5) .....?
Nada : We can ask our teacher to help us.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:



Nada likes reading. One day, her father gave her a present. It was an interesting story called "Gulliver's Travels". She liked it very much as it was exciting. It also has information about different countries. It tells the story of Gulliver, a man who left studying medicine to become a sailor. His ship sank in a storm and he found himself alone on an island beach. The people who lived there were dwarfs. He could easily carry them on his hands. They were nice and friendly. They liked him to stay with them for a long time, but he preferred to leave them. He wanted to see other countries. He returned back to his family in England.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the passage about? .....
2. How did Nada get the story of "Gulliver's Travels"?
   .....
3. Why do you think Gulliver liked working as a sailor?
   .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Gulliver wanted to be a ..... .
   a) teacher b) doctor c) writer d) sailor
5. The underlined word "dwarfs" means people who are ..... .
   a) big b) clever c) small d) helpful
6. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the ..... .
   a) story b) ship c) information d) island

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. Many people in the city live in a ..... of flats.
   a) black b) block c) chest d) house
2. Who is ....., you or your brother?
   a) older b) the oldest c) older than d) as old
3. When you get on the bus, you ..... to buy a ticket.
   a) doesn't have b) has c) don't have d) have
4. A/An ..... is an entrance to another place.
   a) museum b) arch c) view d) castle
5. The children are waiting ..... for the football match to start.
   a) exciting b) excite c) excitedly d) excited
6. We should be ..... about the good things in our lives.
   a) alone b) normal c) helpful d) grateful
7. I like going to ..... places such as museums and ancient ruins.
   a) culture b) busy c) modern d) historic
8. A/An ..... is a person who looks inside people's bodies to do operations عمليات جراحية.
   a) sports coach b) surgeon c) patron d) volunteer
9. Don't drink this water because it is ..... .
   a) polluted b) damaged c) broken d) messy
10. We put our clothes in a/an ..... when we travel.
    a) cupboard b) suitcase c) wardrobe d) basin

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. ..... (Do) your friends in the club yesterday?
2. Egypt ..... (knows) for the Nile.
3. This is the temple ..... (who) the school visited last year.
4. While Ali ..... (walk) to school, he met an old friend.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"A person you are proud of"

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text

24

4

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How old is Kareem?
   a) 9. b) 15.
   c) 50. d) 4.
2. What does Kareem love visiting? ..... places.
   a) Wide b) Clean
   c) New d) Historic
3. What is Kareem's hobby?
   a) Swimming. b) Singing.
   c) Reading. d) Watching TV.
4. How does Kareem feel with his friends?
   a) Pleased. b) Sad.
   c) Angry. d) Worried.

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Gamal and Adel are talking about learning new skills.

Adel : Hello, Gamal! What are you doing?
Gamal : Hello! (1)..... .
Adel : (2).....?
Gamal : To communicate with my brother.
Adel : (3).....?
Gamal : Yes, he is deaf.
Adel : What can't a deaf person do?
Gamal : (4)..... .
Adel : Oh! How kind you are!
Gamal : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Saeed grew up in a poor village near a city. He was a hardworking man. He used to work more than 90 hours a week at three different jobs, including a famous restaurant. He was saving up to buy a house. One day, while Saeed was cleaning the floor of the restaurant, he found an envelope and picked it up. It contained

ten thousand pounds in cash. He went to the police to ***report*** the lost money. The police couldn't find the owner, so they gave the money back to Saeed. Then, Saeed read a story in the newspaper about a baby who is very sick. Saeed decided to give the cash away to help pay for the baby's surgery. "Life has been nice to me. I am healthy and have enough money," Saeed said. "The poor baby needs help. This is what I want to do."

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the passage about? .....
2. What did he finally do with the money? .....
3. What do you think of Saeed? Why? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Saeed used to work hard to ..... .
   a) buy a house b) help the poor c) buy food d) buy a car
5. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to ..... .
   a) money b) envelope c) house d) restaurant
6. The word "***report***" means ..... .
   a) give b) buy c) write d) tell

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I go to the baker's with my mother ..... to buy fresh bread.
   a) diary b) dairy c) dearly d) daily
2. I'm hungry and I'm looking ..... having my lunch.
   a) for b) after c) forward to d) up
3. A ..... helps people who are poor, sick or homeless.
   a) charity b) wedding c) competition d) party
4. An ..... is something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about.
   a) energy b) emergency c) email d) era
5. The black and white ..... around this window are beautiful.
   a) cuts b) planning c) carpets d) designs
6. If you go to a/an ..... school, you stay all day and all night.
   a) special b) private c) boarding d) aboard
7. Not many fish live in the river because it is very ..... .
   a) polluted b) polluting c) pollute d) pollution
8. **A:** What time ..... your first lesson? **B:** At 8 o'clock.
   a) does b) is c) has d) can

9. My mother looked ..... at me for breaking the vase.
   a) angry b) happily c) happy d) angrily
10. They ..... have a lot of money, but now they are poor.
   a) used b) didn't use to c) used to d) didn't use

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. I ..... (puts) my bag on the floor while I was taking a photo.
2. This is the house ..... (that) my grandfather was born in.
3. Alexandria is not ..... (big) as Cairo.
4. Why ..... (be) you laughing now?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"The job you would like to do in the future"

.....

.....

.....

18 Minya Governorate (Samalout Directorate)

A Listening

Listening Text 24

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

1. Ancient Egyptians used ..... to paint around their eyes.
   a) mirrors b) mobiles
   c) statues d) temples
2. The paintings could help them ..... their eyes from the sun.
   a) design b) protect
   c) wear d) kill
3. They used mirrors to keep away ..... .
   a) moon b) rain
   c) insects d) elephants
4. The mirrors were made of ..... .
   a) wood b) silver
   c) paper d) metal

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

2.5

Rana is asking Mai about her plans for the weekend.

Rana : Hello, Mai. What are you going to do this weekend?
Mai : (1)..... .
Rana : Why are you going to the charity?
Mai : (2)..... .
Rana : Great. (3).....?
Mai : Yes, there are many disabled people.
Rana : (4).....?
Mai : I go there every weekend.
Rana : Can I go with you next weekend?
Mai : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

4.5

One of the hobbies that people like is collecting things such as stamps, books, old coins and ancient pictures. But the strangest collection I have ever seen belongs to a man who owns four hundred clocks. There are clocks in every room of his house. The living room is surrounded by shelves which had been filled with clocks. As there is not enough room for so many clocks, the man filled several trunks and stored them in the garage. His wife complains every day about the work she has to do, for it is not easy to dust several hundred clocks. She also complains about the noise that each clock keeps its own time. She never knows exactly what time it is.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. .....
2. If you were the man's wife, what would you do? .....
3. What does the underlined word "his" refer to? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The living room is surrounded by shelves which had been filled with ..... .
   a) books b) clocks c) flowers d) newspapers
5. The man owns ..... clocks.
   a) 40 b) 4000 c) 400 d) 40000
6. The word "several" means ..... .
   a) large b) little c) few d) many

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (5)

1. He is deaf, so he uses ..... language to understand other people.
   a) sign b) signal c) sight d) site
2. Sama always tidies ..... the kitchen after cooking.
   a) off b) down c) away d) up
3. A/An ..... is a model of a person.
   a) figure b) mask c) necklace d) arch
4. Which sport do you like to .....?
   a) see b) make c) do d) be
5. If there is a problem with your computer, you can call a/an ..... .
   a) doctor b) computer engineer
   c) shop worker d) nurse
6. Some chairs ..... of plastic.
   a) is making b) make c) are made d) is made
7. I put my books on the ..... .
   a) bookshop b) bookstore c) pocket d) bookshelf
8. We ..... go to school on Fridays.
   a) never b) always c) usually d) sometimes
9. Swimming and ..... are water sports.
   a) basketball b) football c) handball d) sailing
10. What ..... doing at the moment?
    a) they are b) they were c) are they d) were they

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: (2)

1. She usually speaks ..... (loud).
2. You ..... (mustn't) put rubbish in the bin.
3. This train goes ..... (fast) than the last one.
4. The beach ..... (that) we go on holiday has clean sand.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: (6)

"My daily routine"

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

24

4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What did the ancient Egyptians use for making food?
   a) Pots and bowls. b) The River Nile. c) Clay. d) Mirrors.
2. Where did the clay come from?
   a) Pots. b) Bowls. c) Stones. d) The River Nile.
3. What did some people use to mix the ingredients?
   a) The River Nile. b) Stones. c) Clay. d) Food.
4. What were pots and bowls made of?
   a) Food. b) The River Nile. c) Ingredients. d) Clay.

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Lamar's mother is giving her advice on studying English.

Mother : What are you studying, Lamar?
Lamar : (1)..... .
Mother : English. (2).....?
Lamar : Yes, I have some problems.
Mother : What problems do you have?
Lamar : (3)..... .
Mother : You should revise the words regularly to remember them.
Lamar : (4).....?
Mother : You should also use them in sentences.
Lamar : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last Friday, I invited some of my friends to have a meal and some drinks. They all agreed because we were starving. We went into a restaurant. Each of us had some sandwiches and a cool drink. Then, the time of paying came. To my surprise, I found no money in my pockets. I remembered that I changed my trousers and forgot to take the money.

My face turned red. I didn't know what to do. I asked my friends if they had money, but the money they had wasn't enough. The waiter was angry and wanted to take us to the police. Luckily, my uncle came in to have coffee. I told him about our problem. He smiled and paid the waiter. He saved us.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What food did the writer and his friends have in the restaurant? .....
2. Why didn't the writer find money? .....
3. If you were the writer, what would you do in this situation? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The main idea of the passage is ..... .
   a) good friends b) bad friends c) bad food d) bad experience
5. The underlined word "starving" means very ..... .
   a) angry b) amazed c) hungry d) surprised
6. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to ..... .
   a) the writer b) the writer's uncle
   c) the waiter d) the writer's friend

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother ..... me with my homework. I always do it by myself.
   a) helps never b) never helps
   c) sometimes helps d) always helps
2. This is the room ..... we study our lessons.
   a) when b) where c) which d) whose
3. Sameera Mousa was Egypt's first ..... nuclear scientist.
   a) male b) female c) girl d) daughter
4. I didn't ..... know much about my family history.
   a) use to b) use c) used to d) used
5. A ..... helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home.
   a) prison b) charity c) museum d) theatre
6. This book is very interesting. I ..... it to you.
   a) advise b) tell c) recommend d) say
7. My brother has an important ..... today.
   a) view b) review c) group d) interview
8. A deaf person can't ..... .
   a) see b) hear c) eat d) touch

9. A ..... school is a school where students live all the time.
   a) boarding b) nursery c) primary d) secondary
10. She spends hours looking at herself in the ..... .
   a) bed b) mirror c) desk d) table

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. He ..... (has) to get up too early. It's holiday.
2. He will win the match because he is playing ..... (good).
3. While I was reading my book, the phone ..... (ring).
4. A good friend is someone ..... (which) helps others.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Describing a historic place"

.....

.....

.....

.....

20 Sohag Governorate — Tema Directorate

A Listening

Listening Text



نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب. 24 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We mustn't ..... the Pyramids.
   a) protect b) sit
   c) climb d) drop
2. We must never drop ..... .
   a) litter b) culture
   c) history d) the Pyramids
3. What can we do concerning rubbish? - We can take it ..... .
   a) field b) home
   c) Pyramids d) shop
4. The Pyramids are very important to the ..... of our country.
   a) geography b) culture
   c) farming d) environment

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

2.5

Ola is asking Habeeba about her last weekend.

Ola : Where did you go last Friday?
Habeeba : (1)..... .
Ola : Your uncle's farm! (2).....?
Habeeba : I went there by car.
Ola : (3).....?
Habeeba : I helped my uncle with his work.
Ola : How long did you stay there?
Habeeba : (4)..... .
Ola : Did you enjoy your time there?
Habeeba : (5)..... .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

4.5

Mrs Nadia was a teacher of Arabic in a preparatory school. She was very kind and helpful, so all her students liked her. She used to go to school at 7 o'clock in the morning to give her students more lessons and help them with their homework. She has got a small family. Her husband, Mr Ali is a doctor, her two daughters Nora and Aya and her only son, Samy. Samy is going to be a doctor like his father. Aya, the youngest daughter, wants to be a computer programmer.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.....
2. How many children has Mrs Nadia got?.....
3. What do you think of Mrs Nadia? Why?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The opposite of the underlined word "kind" is ..... .
   a) friendly b) cruel
   c) positive d) lucky
5. Mrs Nadia's only son is going to be ..... .
   a) a doctor b) a teacher
   c) an engineer d) a dentist
6. The underlined word "their" refers to Mrs Nadia's ..... .
   a) sons b) daughters
   c) students d) children

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. Samy has to ..... his toys away when he finishes playing with them.
   a) take b) put c) go d) make
2. My father used to be rich when he was young, but now he ..... .
   a) didn't b) isn't c) doesn't d) don't
3. Of course. You can come to my house ..... .
   a) later b) letter c) latter d) litter
4. My friend doesn't have a book, but he can ..... mine.
   a) cheer b) play c) help d) share
5. There is an amazing ..... of the village from the window.
   a) reason b) review c) view d) site
6. The boy ..... like an adult. All people like him.
   a) shouts b) gets c) behaves d) treats
7. Don't make noise. Your baby sister ..... .
   a) sleeps b) is sleeping c) sleep d) was sleeping
8. ..... your father got a computer?
   a) Is b) Was c) Has d) Does
9. ..... are pieces of money made of metal.
   a) Cans b) Coins c) Cats d) Cameras
10. We should ..... our temples and ruins.
    a) steal b) destroy c) damage d) protect

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. ..... (Did) your brother at home last night?
2. He ..... (not/have) breakfast before school.
3. What ..... (Ali does) do every day?
4. Mona is as ..... (taller) as her mother.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on: 6

"Your parents' daily routine"

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Cairo Governorate

A Listening

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My room is really ..... .
   a) effective b) expensive c) attractive d) high
2. My desk is ..... the window.
   a) under b) behind c) beside d) opposite

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Jana interviews Omar, who is a street-food seller.

Jana : What do you do?
Omar : (1)..... .
Jana : (2).....?
Omar : I cook traditional Egyptian food.
Jana : (3).....?
Omar : I park my food stall in Giza.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... is someone who works for no money to help people.
   a) manager b) police officer c) vet d) volunteer
2. As I ..... my book, the phone rang.
   a) read b) was reading c) reads d) reading
3. I visit a home for old people who are ..... so it's difficult for their families to look after them.
   a) disable b) disabled c) disability d) able
4. Port Said is ..... in the north-east of Egypt.
   a) locate b) location c) located d) locates
5. I go to the baker's with my mother ....., we always buy bread in the morning.
   a) daily b) diary c) dairy d) day

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

Last week, ten students from class 7 helped clean up the part of the riverbank near the city centre. The students collected 15 bags of the rubbish. Their teacher, Mr Hassan, said the students were sad to find so much rubbish. "There were lots of plastic bags and bottles," **he** said. "We even found old shoes!" One of the students said, "It was great to clean the riverbank, but we need to teach people to be more careful with their rubbish. Rubbish in the river damages the wildlife".

A) Answer the following questions:

1. When did the students clean the riverbank?.....
2. What does rubbish damage in the river? .....
3. How many bags of rubbish did the students collect?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to ..... .
   a) Mr Hassan b) people c) class 7 d) one of the students
5. The students were ..... to find so much rubbish.
   a) happy b) excited c) sad d) interested

5 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences: 2

1. located - is - Tanta - the - north - Egypt - of - in.

.....

2. Students - school - arrive - must - at - time - on.

.....

3. get - the - late - at - weekends - I - up.

.....

4. Egyptian - competition - When - win - handball - did - the - team - the?

.....

E Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of five sentences about: 3

"Your daily routine"

.....

.....

2 Alexandria Governorate

A Listening

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

20

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

2

1. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... and bowls for making food.
   a) dots b) pots c) tables d) mirrors
2. These objects were made of ..... .
   a) plastic b) metal c) clay d) copper

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

3

Ali : Where do you live?

Tamer : (1)..... .

Ali : (2).....?

Tamer : I live with my family.

Ali : (3).....?

Tamer : I go to school by car.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5

1. We get clean water at home from a ..... .
   a) tip b) tap
   c) tape d) top
2. Boys ..... football on holidays.
   a) plays usually b) usually plays
   c) play usually d) usually play
3. Menna went to the baker's ..... she could get bread.
   a) who b) when
   c) where d) which
4. Mrs Zeinab is very ..... . She never gets nervous.
   a) patient b) bad
   c) careful d) ill
5. On holiday, we spend much time ..... films and programmes.
   a) watched b) watch
   c) to watch d) watching

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

English is an international language. People all over the world speak it. Many people use English in their work. Students need English to get a place at the university. Many subjects are taught in English. Tourism is very important for Egypt because many tourists spend their money here. Lots of tour guides need to learn English well to speak to tourists. Businessmen should speak English well to communicate with other people in different countries. It is better for you to know English well and master computer skills to get a good job.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where do people speak English?.....
2. Why do students need English?.....
3. Who do tour guides speak English to?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. You need to learn English to get a ..... job.
   a) best b) well c) good d) bad
5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..... .
   a) people b) English c) the tourist d) the computer

5 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences: 2

1. a museum, - the - objects - you - touch - mustn't - In.

.....

2. always - to - donate - Kind - to - poor - the - people - help - charities.

.....

3. is - crowded - Aswan - more - Cairo - than.

.....

4. reuse - things - To - is - recycle - to.

.....

E Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of five sentences about: 3

"Your dream job"

.....

.....

.....

.....

3 Qalyubia Governorate

A Listening

Listening Text



نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

20

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mariam doesn't make ..... .
   a) dinner b) lunch c) food d) breakfast
2. Her parents work at a ..... .
   a) hospital b) school c) workshop d) butcher's

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Jojo : Where did you go last night?
Omar : (1)..... .
Jojo : (2).....?
Omar : The film started at 6 o'clock p.m.
Jojo : (3).....?
Omar : Yes, I enjoyed it very much.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was raining ..... yesterday.
   a) heavy b) heavier
   c) heaviest d) heavily
2. An earthquake is a natural ..... .
   a) kindness b) disorder
   c) disaster d) infection
3. I've read a ..... book.
   a) history b) historian
   c) historic d) culture
4. No smoking! You ..... smoke here.
   a) have to b) must
   c) mustn't d) should
5. Cotton ..... in Egypt by farmers.
   a) grow b) grows
   c) is grown d) are grown

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

Objects from the past can help us understand what life was like many years ago. They can also show us that we use many of the same objects today.

In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good: the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects. The mirrors were made of metal and had interesting designs. Where do you have mirrors in your home?

The Ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food. These objects were made of clay which came from the River Nile. While some people were mixing ingredients in bowls, other people used stones to mix the ingredients in a bowl. How do we make bread today?

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give the meaning of "keep safe" from the passage. .....
2. What do you think of Ancient Egyptians? .....
3. What did the Ancient Egyptians use mirrors for? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ..... .
   a) years b) objects c) designs d) mirrors
5. You can look at yourself in the ..... .
   a) bowls b) mirror c) pots d) clay

5 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences: 2

1. mustn't - You - or - eat - in - drink - a museum.

.....

2. did - you - when - were - Where - live - you - a child?

.....

3. cooking - was - She - her - while - father - reading - a book - was.

.....

4. work - which - I - charity - for - looks - animals - after - a.

.....

E Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of five sentences about: 3

"Helping others"

.....

.....

.....

4 Dakahlia Governorate

A Listening

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

20

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 2

1. Hala is looking after children in the children's ..... .
   a) word b) ward c) garden d) house
2. Hala ..... her job.
   a) likes b) doesn't like c) don't like d) didn't like

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: 3

Salma : I think that all teachers are heroes.
Soha : (1).....?
Salma : I mean without teachers, (2)..... .
Soha : There is the internet.
Salma : Sorry, (3)..... .

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. You ..... pass your exams to go to the university.
   a) should b) have to c) has to d) had to
2. A ..... gives money to people or places.
   a) scientist b) patron c) surgeon d) sports coach
3. You run ..... . No one can catch you.
   a) fast b) slowly c) lazy d) lazily
4. Kareem's cousin is ..... and never puts his books away.
   a) cruel b) messy c) tidy d) serious
5. These bowls are made of ..... .
   a) oil b) water c) clay d) gas

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

An engineer worked hard for a building company. When the engineer got older, he decided to stop working. He wanted to relax. The owner of the company asked him to do one last job for the company, it was to build a beautiful house.

The engineer agreed, but he wasn't interested in doing his work well. He didn't use good building materials. He didn't think about the safety of the people who would live in that house. The house appears beautiful, but it wasn't well-built. On his last day, the owner gave him the key as a reward "This new beautiful house which you have built is yours".

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did the engineer decide to do when he got older? .....
2. Why did the owner want him to build a house? .....
3. Was the engineer interested in building the house? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**him**" refers to ..... .
   a) the owner b) the key c) the engineer d) the house
5. The engineer was ..... when he built the house.
   a) brave b) awesome c) careless d) careful

5 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences: 2

1. small - a - **They** - to - car - used - have.

.....

2. often - do - exercise - **How** - you?

.....

3. home - is - **My** - the - near - located - Nile.

.....

4. greener - cars - than - are - **Bikes**.

.....

E Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of five sentences about: 3

"Your hero"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

20 | 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Samy is a ..... teenager.
   a) strange b) bad c) normal d) crazy
2. Samy often feels ..... about things.
   a) sad b) happy c) angry d) worried

B Language Functions

3

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is talking to Mark who is a tourist.

Ahmed : Hi Mark, welcome to Egypt.
Mark : (1)..... .
Ahmed : Have you visited Egypt before?
Mark : (2)..... .
Ahmed : (3).....?
Mark : I visited the Pyramids and the museum.

C Usage

5

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you are tired, why don't you ..... a rest?
   a) be b) make c) do d) have
2. The players are playing very ..... .
   a) good b) best c) well d) better
3. My grandfather ..... football when he was young.
   a) play b) used to play c) playing d) plays
4. "....." is a boy or girl aged 13 to 19.
   a) Teenager b) Child c) Baby d) Manager
5. I help to look ..... my little sister when my parents are busy.
   a) to b) up c) for d) after

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

My name is Adam and I want to write about a person I am very proud to know. Her name is Mrs Karima Mohamed. She used to study hard to be a nurse. She also worked to help pay for her studies. In 2020, there was a health emergency and many people were in a hospital. I was ill, too.

I was in a hospital for two weeks. She helped me and other people in the hospital. I am very proud of her.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Mrs Karima use to study hard? .....
2. What happened in 2020? .....
3. How long did Adam stay in hospital? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Adam is very ..... of Mrs Karima.
   a) sad b) proud c) bored d) angry
5. Mrs Karima helped to pay for her ..... .
   a) studies b) parents c) friends d) people

5 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences: 2

1. is - located - north-east - **Port Said** - Egypt - in - the - of.

.....

2. school - **How** - use - to - did - go - you - to?

.....

3. that - you - a pity - can't - **It's** - come.

.....

4. desert - area - dry - is - **The** - land - an - of - very.

.....

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on: 3

"What do you do at the weekend?"

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

20

2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... Handball Team are heroes.
   a) French b) Arab c) Egyptian d) English
2. Our team scored ..... goals.
   a) 24 b) 22 c) 29 d) 27

B Language Functions

3

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Yasser wants to buy a jacket at the clothes shop.

Shop assistant : How can I help you?
Yasser : (1)..... .
Shop assistant : (2).....?
Yasser : I want it medium, please.
Shop assistant : What colour would you like?
Yasser : (3)..... .
Shop assistant : Here you are. Is it good?
Yasser : Yes, it's good.

C Usage

5

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed is a fantastic ..... . He prepares meals in a big restaurant.
   a) cook b) engineer c) sailor d) pilot
2. Samir ..... plays football in the street.
   a) doesn't b) isn't c) didn't d) never
3. I'm ..... the room with my brother.
   a) keeping b) sharing c) singing d) jumping
4. Lungs take in air and help us to ..... .
   a) release b) relax c) please d) breathe
5. You ..... eat or drink in the school library.
   a) can b) must c) mustn't d) should

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

A famous scientist lived with his wife, his two sons and a daughter. He often forgot about his food when he was working. His wife used to put some food for him to eat. One night, he felt very hungry. He looked around the room. He saw some eggs in a small basket. At once he decided to cook them, so he went to the kitchen. As he was thinking of his work and not of his food, he put his watch in the frying pan and took the eggs in his hands, when he came to eat, he found that the eggs are still in his hand.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did the scientist often forget about?.....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to? .....
3. Why did the scientist put his watch in the pan?.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The scientist went to the kitchen to ..... the eggs.
   a) sell b) buy c) cook d) steal
5. The scientist saw the eggs in a small ..... .
   a) nest b) basket c) hand d) pan

5 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences: 2

1. used to - live - He - the countryside - in.

.....

2. Do - have - brothers - any - you - sisters - or?

.....

3. a museum, - you - touch - In - mustn't - the objects.

.....

4. you - me - the - price of - please? - Can - tell - a ticket,.

.....

E Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of five sentences about: 3

"A job you like"

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text

20

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dr Magdy Yacoub is a ..... .
   a) dentist b) surgeon c) vet d) teacher
2. He became a doctor like his ..... .
   a) mother b) uncle c) brother d) father

B Language Functions

3

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar : Hello, Ramy. How are you?
Ramy : Hello, Omar. (1)..... .
Omar : (2).....?
Ramy : I get up early at 6:30 a.m.
Omar : What's your favourite sport?
Ramy : (3)..... .
Omar : I also like football.

C Usage

5

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A lot of Muslims go to ..... to pray.
   a) churches b) castles c) mosques d) markets
2. Eiffel Tower is ..... than Cairo Tower.
   a) taller b) tall c) as tall d) tallest
3. You ..... eat or drink in a museum.
   a) can b) must c) mustn't d) should
4. A ..... is the daughter of a king or queen.
   a) prince b) beggar c) farmer d) princess
5. While he was ....., he fell down.
   a) run b) ran c) runs d) running

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

Ahmed and Soha were in the dining room and their parents were at work. They were doing their homework. They thought their sister Salma was playing with her toys. Soha saw some water. It was coming through the floor. Ahmed and Soha went to the bathroom, they found Salma. She was playing with her toys. There was a lot of water on the bathroom floor and it was running into the dining room. They talked about the water and decided to dry the floor. They used some of their father's old newspapers. They decided to phone their mother and father and tell them about the water.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where was Salma playing with her toys? .....
2. How did Ahmed and Soha dry the floor? .....
3. How many persons are there in the family? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the ..... .
   a) floor b) vapour c) dining room d) water
5. While Ahmed and Soha were in the dining room, their parents were at ..... .
   a) school b) home c) work d) bedroom

5 Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences: 2

1. your - Who - hero - is?

.....

2. taller - Amr - is - me - than.

.....

3. hard - study - to get - You - marks - should - high.

.....

4. used to - tennis - My grandfather - play.

.....

E Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of five sentences about: 3

"Your day at school"

.....

.....

.....

A Listening

Listening Text

20

2

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Today's ..... is with my best friend.

a) meeting b) interview c) view d) review

2. Sherifa is on the ..... .

a) right b) left c) middle d) foreground

B Language Functions

3

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nasser: Do you have to study this evening, Omar?

Omar : (1)..... . I have a test tomorrow.

Nasser: What about playing after the test?

Omar : (2)..... . I have to visit my uncle in the hospital.

Nasser: (3)..... .

C Vocabulary and Structure

5

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That is the house ..... I live.

a) which b) where c) who d) when

2. He has to tidy ..... his bedroom.

a) up b) on c) in d) over

3. Lots of cotton ..... in this area.

a) grows b) grow c) is grown d) grown

4. ..... time do you spend on this activity?

a) How many b) How much c) How far d) How long

5. Ahmed is deaf. He can't ..... .

a) see b) hear c) walk d) here

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions: 5

The Egyptian Handball Team are heroes! They won the Handball Africa Cup of Nations in Tunisia in 2020. They won the final against Tunisia. That means they are the best team in Africa. Now lots of people in Egypt love the sport.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. .....
2. Why do lots of people love this sport? .....
3. Who won an important competition in 2020? .....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The final in 2020 was in ..... .
   a) Africa b) Tunisia c) Egypt d) Morocco
5. Many people in Egypt like ..... .
   a) football b) basketball c) handball d) volleyball

5 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences: 2

1. is learning - skill - **Tamer** - moment - a new - at - the.

.....

2. do - **What** - money - charities - the - can - with - the?

.....

3. a computer engineer - repair - need - **I** - computer - my - to.

.....

4. historic - like - visiting - **Tourists** - buildings.

.....

E Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of five sentences about: 3

"Helping the environment"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Ismailia Exam (امتحانات الدمج)

A Language Functions

24

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:

5

a) cousins b) Where c) time d) do e) are

Sara : When do you get up at the weekend?
Hisham : At the weekend, I usually get up early.
Sara : What (1)..... you do at the weekend?
Hisham : I always go out with my family.
Sara : (2)..... are you going this weekend?
Hisham : We (3)..... visiting my uncle and aunt.
Sara : Who do you spend time with?
Hisham : I usually spend time with my (4) ..... .
Sara : What (5)..... do you go to bed at the weekend?
Hisham : I go to bed at about ten o'clock.

B Reading Comprehension

6

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mr Ashraf's family lives in a village. They were very happy because Mr Ashraf bought a new car. It isn't new, but they liked it very much. They never had a car before they bought their first car. Before they bought it, they used buses, trains and taxis. They never owned anything so expensive before they bought the car. The children were very excited about their car. The children never rode in a car before their parents bought one. They only saw a few cars when they went to town for shopping. But nobody they knew owned a car before that day. They felt very lucky.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The family's car isn't ..... .
   a) old b) big c) new d) fast
2. The underlined word "owned" means ..... .
   a) drove b) had c) cleaned d) bought
3. They didn't see ..... cars in the town.
   a) many b) few c) a lot d) much
4. Mr Ashraf's family lives in a ..... .
   a) city b) town c) village d) country

5. The children were very ..... about this car.
a) excited b) angry c) sad d) worried
6. The children ..... rode in a car before their parents bought.
a) usually b) sometimes c) often d) never

C Vocabulary and Structure

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 5

1. ..... I was staying in Alexandria, I went to the beach many times.
a) Which b) As c) Where d) That
2. We are late. We ..... take a taxi.
a) has to b) doesn't have to c) don't have to d) have to
3. Mohamed is the ..... man in the town.
a) old b) as old c) older d) oldest
4. How did people ..... to communicate in the past?
a) use b) to use c) using d) used
5. Grandpa, ... you got cheese?
a) have b) has c) can d) does

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

1. ..... is a type of paper that was used in Ancient Egypt.
a) Leaf b) Papyrus c) Sheet d) Wool
2. Let's go to the ..... . We have got science.
a) library b) canteen c) laboratory d) club
3. Some people collect many bottles and old things to ..... them.
a) rewrite b) recycle c) rearrange d) reread
4. My ..... are my grandfather and my grandmother.
a) grandchildren b) grandparents c) children d) parents
5. There are mountains and sand in the ..... .
a) jungle b) forest c) canal d) desert
6. This food ..... delicious.
a) looks b) watches c) sees d) feels
7. The ..... is a very smart sea animal.
a) dolphin b) camel c) elephant d) cat
8. If you are tired, why don't you ..... a rest?
a) be b) do c) make d) have

D Writing

5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d: 4

a) I go to my work. At night, I watch TV. I got up at 7 o'clock. I have lunch after I go home.

b) I get up at 7 o'clock. I go to my work. I have lunch after I go home. At night, I watch TV.

c) At night, I watch TV. I go to my work. I get up at 7 o'clock. I have lunch after I go home.

d) I have lunch after I go home. I get up at 7 o'clock. At night, I watch TV. I go to my work.

2 Beni Suef — Beni Suef Educational Administration (امتحانات الدمج)

A Language Functions

24

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue: 5

Yasser wants to buy a jacket at the clothes shop.

Shop assistant : How can I help you?

Yasser : I want to buy a (1)....., please.

a) bag b) jacket c) book d) tie

Shop assistant : What (2).....?

a) number b) colour c) size d) height

Yasser : I want it medium, please.

Shop assistant : What colour would you like?

Yasser : (3)....., please.

a) Red b) Big c) Tall d) Small

Shop assistant : Here you are. Do you (4)..... it?

a) lack b) lake c) look d) like

Yasser : Yes, it's good. I'll (5)..... it.

a) do b) take c) go d) play

B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following, then answer the questions: 6

My name is Haytham and this is my house. My house is quite big. It has got two floors; a ground floor and a first floor. It has also got an attic and a basement. On the ground floor, there is a hall, a kitchen, a living room, a big dining room and a toilet. On the first floor, there are three bedrooms, one bathroom and

a big corridor. My bedroom is between my parents' bedroom and the bathroom. My sister's bedroom is in front of mine. I love my bedroom, but I also like the attic. In the attic, I keep some of my books and my old toys. I like to spend my time there because it's large and there is a big sofa there where I sometimes take a nap.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "large" is ..... .
   a) wide b) long c) small d) sad
2. The toilet is on the ..... .
   a) hall b) ground floor c) basement d) first floor
3. Haytham's house has got ..... floors.
   a) two b) three c) four d) five
4. There are ..... bedrooms in Haytham's house.
   a) two b) three c) four d) five
5. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ..... .
   a) Haytham b) the house c) the attic d) the basement
6. Haytham sometimes takes a nap in the ..... .
   a) corridor b) living room c) attic d) dining room

C Vocabulary and Structure

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where does Sandy.....?
   a) lives b) living c) to live d) live
2. Did he use to ..... a car?
   a) drive b) driving c) drove d) driven
3. You mustn't ..... rubbish here.
   a) to drop b) dropped c) drop d) dropping
4. Listen! Sama ..... the piano.
   a) play b) played c) plays d) is playing
5. They ..... the library ten minutes ago.
   a) leaves b) left c) leave d) leaving

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

1. Students ..... go to school on holidays.
   a) always b) usually c) sometimes d) never
2. The market is a short ..... from the house.
   a) talk b) walk c) draw d) make
3. Ahmed is a fantastic ..... . He prepares meals in a big restaurant.
   a) cook b) engineer c) sailor d) pilot
4. Kareem is a ..... in the hospital. He works for no money.
   a) volunteer b) voluntary c) pioneer d) charity
5. Can you ..... what you mean?
   a) plan b) explain c) know d) recognise
6. My parents like to ..... money to a charity every month.
   a) win b) borrow c) spend d) donate
7. Before exams, ... sure that you did a good revision.
   a) do b) have c) make d) did
8. This book is ..... . You should read it.
   a) strange b) fantastic c) kind d) horrible

D Writing

5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d: 4

a) Finally, we went back home at night. 1 (.....)
b) We bought fruits and vegetables. 2 (.....)
c) We also drank some juice in a cafe. 3 (.....)
d) Yesterday, I went shopping with my mum. 4 (.....)

Listening Texts

End of Term Practice

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Aya is 13 and lives in a village in India. Her father is a street-food seller and her mother is a shop worker. They have to work every day, so Aya must stay at home to look after her younger brothers and sisters. Then, when her parents come home from work, Aya goes to school in the evening. Aya always goes to school in the dark, but she loves her lessons and always listens to the teacher carefully. Today, the girls are learning about how to look after plants and trees. Aya always feels very tired when she gets home, but she is grateful for being able to learn.

1 Ministry Guiding Model

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Zeinab. I'm from El Fayoum in Egypt. It's a large city, with beautiful nature nearby. I live with my parents and my brother in a flat. My favourite subject is English.

2 Cairo Governorate (New Cairo Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Omar Abdelkader was born in 1994. When he was 22, a shark attacked him and he lost a leg, but this did not stop him wanting to be successful. Now, he helps other people with similar problems and he is an important sports coach.

3 Cairo Governorate (Al-Salam Educational Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My uncle Mohamed is an engineer. He is married. His wife is shorter than him. He has two sons. He works in Saudi Arabia. He usually goes to work in his car.

4 Giza Governorate (Omrania Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Salma is my best friend. She is thirteen years old. She is in preparatory one. Her favourite subject is English. She likes doing Karate very much.

5 Giza Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Yesterday, Saged went shopping with his father. They went by bus. His father bought a new phone and he bought Saged a new bike for his birthday. They came back home at half past eight.

6 Alexandria Governorate (East Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Salwa was born in El Minya. It is located near the Nile. Lots of food is grown in the local area like potatoes, wheat and sugar cane. The city is known for its delicious black honey.

7 Alexandria Governorate (El Montazah Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Ali and his friends are going to the Pyramids next Monday. The teacher said to them, "You must bring your lunch. You must also bring a hat and a bottle of water because it's very hot there."

8 Qalyubia Governorate (Banha Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My sister is a nurse. She works in a big hospital. She looks after sick people. She likes helping them. When she was young, she used to study hard.

9 Menofia Governorate (Menouf Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Samir. I work for a charity which looks after animals that are old or sick and cannot work anymore. People donate money to the charity to buy food for the animals such as horses and camels. We help to feed the animals and look after them.

10 Dakahliya Governorate (Aga Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Sameera Moussa was born in 1917 and studied science at Cairo University. She was Egypt's first female nuclear scientist and wanted to use nuclear treatments in medicine. She died in 1952.

11 Beheira Governorate (Itai El baroud Educational Administration)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Port Said is located in the north-east of Egypt. The city is known for its ships, which come and go from around the world. Port Said is connected to Suez by the Suez Canal. Many fish are caught in the sea near the Suez Canal.

12 Damietta Governorate (El-Rawda Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Ahmed had a trip to the Pyramids with his family last Wednesday. He enjoyed his time there. He rode a camel and took photos of the place. He went back home after lunch.

13 Sharkia Governorate (Zagazig Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Mariam went to the market last Friday. She bought a lot of fruit and vegetables, so the bag was too heavy. She took a taxi to go home.

14 Sharkia Governorate (10th of Ramadan Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I'm Hala. I have to make my bed every day and tidy up my bedroom once a week. My mother isn't happy about how messy I am, but I always tidy up once a week on Saturday morning. It takes a long time. I have to put away all my clothes.

15 Ismailia Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Zein is a helpful boy. Every day, he gets up early, has breakfast and walks to school. In the afternoon, he helps his mother and does some house jobs. After lunch, he studies his lessons. Yesterday, he studied English and maths for his exams.

16 Fayoum Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Fort Qaitbey stands on a small island near Alexandria. It was built in 1480. From its buildings, you can get a wonderful view. There is a museum inside the fort.

17 Beni Suef Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My cousin is called Kareem. He is fifteen years old. His favourite hobby is reading. He likes reading about history and he likes visiting historic places. He enjoys going out with his friends. He always feels happy with them.

18 Minya Governorate (Samalout Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good: the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects. The mirrors were metal and had interesting designs.

19 Assiut Governorate (Assuit Educational Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food such as bread. These objects were made of clay, which came from the River Nile. While some people were mixing ingredients for bread in bowls, other people used large stones to mix the ingredients in a bowl.

20 Sohag Governorate (Tema Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Next Friday, we are having a school trip to the Pyramids. The Pyramids are very important to the culture of our country. Our teacher gave us some instructions that we must follow. We mustn't climb the Pyramids. We mustn't drop litter. We can take it home.

Al-Azhar Exams

1 Cairo Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last week, we moved to a new house in Cairo. It's very big, so I have my own room. It's very attractive. It has a big window. I put my desk under it.

2 Alexandria Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food such as bread. These objects were made of clay, which came from the River Nile.

3 Qalyubia Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Mariam. I am a student. My parents are doctors. They work at a big hospital. We always have breakfast at home. My mum always makes it. I never do it.

4 Dakahlia Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My aunt Hala is a nurse. She works in a hospital in Cairo. She looks after children. She works in the children's ward. She likes her job.

5 Sharkia Governorate (Modified) 2023

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Samy. I am a normal teenager, but I sometimes think that my friends are having a better time than me. That's why I often feel worried.

6 Suez Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Egyptian handball team are heroes! They won the Handball Africa Cup of Nations in Tunisia in 2020. They won the final against Tunisia 27-23. That means they are the best team in Africa!

7 El-Fayoum Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Dr Magdy Yacoub is a great heart surgeon. He was born in 1935 in Bilbeis, but the family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor.

8 Minya Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I am so excited because today's interview is with my best friend, Sherifa. She is standing over there on the left.

ALADWAA
Gem

اللغة الانجليزية



Teacher's Materials

2024
25

الصف 2 الإعدادى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

CONTENTS


1. Personal Data Form
نموذج البيانات الشخصية
2. Placement Test
اختبار تحديد المستوى
3. Follow-up Activities
أنشطة المتابعة الدورية
4. Advanced Exercises
تمارين الفائقين

1. PERSONAL DATA FORM

يقوم الطالب بكتابة المعلومات الخاصة به فى هذا الجزء وتقديمها للمعلم.

نموذج البيانات الشخصية (للطلبة المتقدمين للحصول على درس خاص)

Name: الاسم بالكامل

Grade: الصف الدراسى

School: اسم المدرسة

Birth Date: تاريخ الميلاد

Telephone: رقم الهاتف (أرضى/موبايل)

Home: ..... Mobile: .....

For emergencies, call: للطوارئ، اتصل:

Name: ..... Telephone Number: .....

Signature of Student: ..... توقيع الطالب

Signature of Parent: ..... توقيع ولى الأمر

قم بعمل هذا التدريب لكى يتمكن معلمك من تحديد نقاط الضعف لديك ليقوم بتطويرها.

Describe your ability in English: (Circle the best description.)

Understanding is	always difficult	sometimes difficult	never difficult
Speaking is	always difficult	sometimes difficult	never difficult
Reading is	always difficult	sometimes difficult	never difficult
Writing is	always difficult	sometimes difficult	never difficult

With My Best Wishes

Mr: ..... .

Expert Teacher of English

2. Placement Test

قم باختبار طلابك للتعرف على مستواهم ومعرفة نقاط القوة والضعـف لديهم للعمل على تطويرها من خلال هذا الاختبار.

25

Level 1: Understanding

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. ..... a singer? She sings beautifully!
   a) Does she **b)** Has she **c)** Is she **d)** Did she
2. Are there ..... peppers?
   a) a **b)** an **c)** any **d)** some
3. If I sleep late, I always ..... tired the next day.
   a) become **b)** will become
   c) am going to become **d)** became
4. I hope that I ..... my exams so that I can go to university.
   a) boss **b)** pass **c)** fail **d)** get
5. How ..... bread does Mona eat?
   a) many **b)** much **c)** long **d)** often
6. Aya is not very good at science, ... she is very good at English.
   a) so **b)** because **c)** and **d)** but
7. The balls are very heavy at the ..... .
   a) bowling alley **b)** planetarium **c)** aquarium **d)** stadium
8. We all looked at ..... in the school photo.
   a) yourselves **b)** themselves **c)** ourselves **d)** himself
9. Do you play games ..... your mobile?
   a) in **b)** at **c)** on **d)** onto
10. We should be careful, so we should eat ..... food.
    a) healthy **b)** unhealthy **c)** fast **d)** bad

(0 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Level 2: Speaking

2 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Khaled and Basel are talking about their hobbies.

Khaled : Did you do your English homework?
Basel : (1)..... .
Khaled : (2)..... ?
Basel : I did it last night.
Khaled : (3)..... ?
Basel : Sure. I like drawing.
Khaled : What do you like to draw?
Basel : (4)..... . What about you?
Khaled : For me, (5)..... .
Basel : So, you go to the library at break.

(0 - 2) Poor (2.5 - 3.5) Good (4 - 5) Excellent

Level 3: Reading

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

5

One day, a lion put his foot on a mouse who climbed on the body of the lion. "Oh, please, sir, don't eat me!" shouted the little animal. "If you let me go, I will help you some time." The lion smiled, and let him go. Not long after that, some men put a net in the forest and the lion ran into **it** and could not get out. He knew that if he stayed there until morning the men would find him and kill him. The mouse heard him shouting and ran to help him. "Lion still a while and I will help you," he said. Then he began to cut the net with his small teeth and soon cut the net in pieces. "You laughed at me once," he said, "as if you thought I was too little to help you. But I helped as I said." The lion thanked the mouse and they became friends.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage? .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to? .....
3. Why do you think the lion smiled? .....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The mouse cut the net with his ..... .
   a) feet **b)** teeth **c)** head **d)** legs
5. The lion ..... the mouse for his great help.
   a) shouted at **b)** laughed at **c)** thanked **d)** ate

(0 - 2) Poor (2.5 - 3.5) Good (4 - 5) Excellent

Level 4: Writing

4 Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences about:

5

"A visit to the zoo"

.....

.....

.....

.....

(0 - 2) Poor (2.5 - 3.5) Good (4 - 5) Excellent

Placement Test score

Score	Level
0-12	Poor
13-16	Good
17-21	Very Good
22-25	Excellent

3 Follow-up Activities

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 1 Lessons 1&2

Main Vocabulary

يوميًا	.....	عمارة سكنية	.....
روتين/نظام يومى	.....	مقابلة/حوار	.....
هواية	.....	مدونة إلكترونية	.....
اهتمام	.....	مخبز	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

لديه روتين/نظام يومى		يؤدى تمارين/رياضة	.....
على الأريكة/الكنبة	.....	يقضى وقتًا فى	.....
يراسل أصدقاءه برسائل نصية	.....	يذاكر بجدٍّ لـ	.....

Definitions

.....	a place for people to live that consists of a set of rooms that are part of a larger building

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 1 Lessons 1&2 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. My mum always ..... my breakfast. She is really kind.

a) runs **b)** gets **c)** has **d)** makes

2. My father sometimes gets ..... very late.

a) home **b)** to home **c)** at home **d)** in home

3. I quite like fish, but I ..... pasta. It's my favourite.

a) do **b)** play **c)** prefer **d)** hate

4. My favourite ..... is science.

a) topic **b)** subject **c)** hobby **d)** blog

5. I usually get up at seven and go to school. It's my ..... .

a) routine **b)** chess **c)** activity **d)** hobby

6. ..... your brother writing?

a) What can **b)** What does **c)** What is **d)** What

7. ..... children like playing football?

a) Do **b)** Does **c)** Are **d)** Were

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. He ..... (reads/often) in the evenings.
2. Basmala ..... (work) hard every day.
3. **A:** ..... (it/rain) in London tomorrow? **B:** No, it won't.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 1 Lessons 3&4

Main Vocabulary

نموذجى/ مثالى/ معتاد	.....	مغامرة	.....
صنبور/حنفية	.....	الملف الشخصى	.....
خط سكة حديد	.....	رسالة نصية	.....
الريف	.....	نزهة خلوية	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يكتشف عن	.....	حريص على	.....
يتبادل الأدوار	.....	يطلب	.....

Words and Opposites

.....		جذاب	.....
.....		فقير	.....

Definitions

.....	a place where people go when they do something wrong

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 1 Lessons 3 &4 Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. There is no ..... day in the life of a police officer.

a) rich **b)** poor **c)** typical **d)** empty

2. We get water from the ..... .

a) taps **b)** tabs **c)** tops **d)** tips

3. Reading is one of my ..... .

a) topics **b)** subjects **c)** objects **d)** interests

4. I want to ..... a pen from my sister.

a) lend **b)** borrow **c)** let **d)** build

5. I ..... the chickens, then I help my mum make breakfast.

a) give **b)** show **c)** feed **d)** eat

6. I ..... swim in the sea. I can't swim at all.

a) never **b)** often **c)** always **d)** usually

7. ..... your mother cook every day?

a) Do **b)** Does **c)** Is **d)** Has

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. **A:** When ..... (do) you travel to Matrouh? **B:** I travelled last Thursday.
2. Lara never ..... (play) the violin.
3. The school bus ..... (arrives/always) at half past eight.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 1 Lessons 5&6

Main Vocabulary

رف الكتب	.....	وسائد	.....
كرسى ذو مساند	.....	محمية طبيعية	.....
حوض	.....	يطابق/يتماشى مع	.....
وصف	.....	ستائر	.....
معلومات	.....	خزانة ذات أدراج	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

فى المقدمة	.....	يبحث عن	.....
يرتدى ملابسه	.....	يلتقط صورًا فوتوغرافية	.....

Definitions

.....	it is where you can put your clothes

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 1 Lessons 5 &6 Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. I sat down on the ..... next to my father.

a) sofa **b)** bookshelf **c)** drawer **d)** website

2. She is looking at herself in the ..... .

a) curtain **b)** carpet **c)** mirror **d)** lamp

3. These windows have nice ..... .

a) curtains **b)** cushions **c)** armchairs **d)** sofas

4. She has a big ..... to keep her clothes in.

a) armchair **b)** bedroom **c)** drawer **d)** wardrobe

5. They have a ..... of drawers for their clothes.

a) block **b)** chest **c)** lamp **d)** sofa

6. He always puts his books on the ..... after he reads. He likes it tidy.

a) basin **b)** armchair **c)** sofa **d)** bookshelf

7. I meet my friends and talk to them during the breakfast ..... .

a) sofa **b)** website **c)** break **d)** brake

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. What time ..... (you /get up) on a school day?

2. A: How do you ..... (goes) to work? **B:** By bus.

3. My brother ..... (not /cycle) to school every day.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 2 Lessons 1&2

Main Vocabulary

كشك الطعام	.....	عامل مركز الاتصال	.....
المرضى	.....	مهندس كمبيوتر	.....
لغة الإشارة	.....	بائع طعام بالشارع	.....
جناح/قسم/عنبر	.....	فنان	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يتواصل مع	.....	يفاجئ	.....
يعد كتاب فن الخط	.....	يصطاد سمكًا	.....
متحمس بخصوص	.....	يتأكد	.....

Definitions

.....	someone who can't hear

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 2 Lessons 1&2 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. Amal is looking after ..... at hospital to be healthy.

a) wards **b)** doctors **c)** nurses **d)** patients

2. We need to ..... our computer. It doesn't work.

a) damage **b)** prepare **c)** repair **d)** care

3. Hamdi is learning a new ..... to find a good job.

a) skill **b)** stall **c)** artist **d)** ward

4. I love my friends. I like to ..... with them.

a) comment **b)** communicate **c)** clean **d)** take

5. Salwa is looking ..... to going home.

a) forward **b)** after **c)** for **d)** up

6. They ..... TV right now.

a) watching **b)** watches **c)** watch **d)** are watching

7. My grandparents ..... sitting in the garden.

a) is **b)** are **c)** have **d)** has

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. Be quiet! The baby ..... (sleep).
2. She ..... (do) her homework now.
3. Eman ..... (be) having dinner at the moment.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 2 Lessons 3&4

Main Vocabulary

حفل زفاف	.....	الحشد/الجمهور	.....
ضيف	.....	ممتن/شاكر	.....
السعادة	.....	الطبيعة	.....
يعامل/يعالج	.....	حقيبة سفر	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يبتسم لـ	.....	يتزوج	.....
يكوِّن صداقات	.....	يقلق	.....
يشعر بتحسن	.....	سعيد/مسرور بخصوص	.....

Definitions

.....	a boy or girl aged 13 - 19

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 2 Lessons 3&4 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. ..... usually have very little water and very few plants growing in it.
   a) Volcanoes **b)** Deserts **c)** Clouds **d)** Communities
2. "....." means feeling happy about the good things in your life.
   a) Nature **b)** Normal **c)** Crowds **d)** Grateful
3. They should ..... friends with her as she is nice. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) make **b)** take **c)** go **d)** have
4. I'm not ..... about the future. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) worry **b)** worried **c)** worrying **d)** wrong
5. We ..... clothes using a needle.
   a) see **b)** saw **c)** sew **d)** sow
6. I'm waiting ..... to get on a plane for the first time.
   a) excited **b)** exciting **c)** excitedly **d)** excite
7. It's normal to get worried or to feel ..... sometimes. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) saddest **b)** sadder **c)** sadly **d)** sad

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. My friend sews ..... (bad).
2. Mr Ahmed treats his students ..... (kind).
3. He speaks English ..... (good).

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 2 Lessons 5&6

Main Vocabulary

مدرب	.....	تحيات	.....
تدريب كرة القدم	.....	يتحسن	.....
يتخيل	.....	شفقة/حزن	.....
مذهل	.....	يقلق	.....

Prepositions

بمرور الوقت	.....	يرد على	.....
يتحدث إلى	.....	آسف لـ	.....
مبروك على	.....	يعتنى بـ	.....

Words and Opposites

.....	.....	ينجح	.....

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 2 Lessons 5 & 6 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. Don't ..... about him. He is safe.

a) miss **b)** pass **c)** guess **d)** worry

2. I'm ..... to be late again.

a) fun **b)** happy **c)** good **d)** sorry

3. You can't ..... an exam without studying hard.

a) respond **b)** bring **c)** pass **d)** fail

4. I always ..... my father when he travels for work.

a) prepare **b)** miss **c)** speak **d)** respond

5. Kamal is very kind. He looks ..... his little sister who's very ill.

a) at **b)** for **c)** after **d)** up

6. She decided to leave the party ..... .

a) slow **b)** much slow **c)** slowly **d)** slower

7. She sang ..... than her friend.

a) loud **b)** loudly **c)** more loudly **d)** more loud

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. He finished his homework really ..... (quick).

2. She carried the baby upstairs very ..... (careful).

3. Celin found the science lesson very ..... (hardly).

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 3 Lessons 1&2

Main Vocabulary

نووى	.....	يهاجم	.....
راعٍ/كفيل	.....	عامل فى جمعية خيرية	.....
ناجح	.....	جراح قلب	.....
علاج	.....	يحسن/يطور	.....
عمل جماعى	.....	دواء	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

ذو مشاكل فى القلب	.....	يفقد ساقًا	.....
يُجرى تجارب معملية	.....	وُلِدَ فى	.....

Definitions

.....	a person who does experiments to study and find out about how things work

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 3 Lessons 1&2 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. He was a volunteer for a ..... in our city.
   a) star **b)** sun **c)** charity **d)** planet
2. Kamal studies ..... because he would like to be a famous doctor.
   a) medicine **b)** maths **c)** art **d)** religion
3. They ..... and were first in the competition.
   a) lost **b)** won **c)** improved **d)** threw
4. Tala has more lessons in English because she wants to ..... her English.
   a) throw **b)** lose **c)** damage **d)** improve
5. "....." is a word for younger people.
   a) Adult **b)** Older **c)** Junior **d)** Senior
6. Where did you ..... your lost book?
   a) find **b)** found **c)** finding **d)** finds
7. Mr Mesbah ..... at the party last Friday.
   a) isn't **b)** wasn't **c)** doesn't **d)** didn't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. They ..... (have) breakfast three hours ago.
2. We didn't ..... (played) tennis yesterday afternoon.
3. ..... (Do) they go to bed early last Friday?

(1 - 4) Poor — (5 - 7) Good — (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 3 Lessons 3&4

Main Vocabulary

وظيفة (الشىء)	.....	يتنفس	.....
يعدى/يصيب	.....	خطير/جاد	.....
حرق/يحرق	.....	مضخة/يضخ	.....
مخيف	.....	أثاث	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

فخور بـ	.....	يدون ملاحظة	.....
يوقف العدوى/الالتهابات	.....	يقوم بعمل بحث	.....
يخيط الجروح	.....	يقوم بعمل مشروع عن	.....

Definitions

.....	someone who works for no money to help people

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 3 Lessons 3 & 4 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. A terrible event, such as an earthquake, is a ..... .
   a) habit **b)** prize **c)** disaster **d)** party
2. This ball has no air inside it. I need a ..... to fill it.
   a) lamp **b)** pump **c)** basin **d)** mirror
3. My uncle was a/an ..... for the Red Crescent.
   a) mountaineer **b)** waiter **c)** officer **d)** volunteer
4. If you are ..... of someone, you feel pleased with them. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) careful **b)** proud **c)** helpful **d)** good
5. The lungs take in air and help us to ..... .
   a) breathe **b)** breath **c)** breeze **d)** freeze
6. My grandfather used ..... a doctor.
   a) be **b)** being **c)** to be **d)** to being
7. Sara used to have short hair. Now, she ..... .
   a) didn't **b)** isn't **c)** hasn't **d)** doesn't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. My father ..... (used) live in a flat when I was a child.
2. ..... (Do) you use to go to the beach every summer?
3. She ..... (didn't use) to love eating chocolate, but now she hates it.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 3 Lessons 5&6

Main Vocabulary

عامل نظافة الشارع	.....	التعليم	.....
تمثال	.....	منظمة	.....
مجتمع	.....	جامع القمامة	.....
لوحة/ التلوين	.....	بطولى	.....
مناقشة	.....	يتحير/يرتبك	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يضع في المقام الأول	.....	خائف من	.....
يعد ملصقًا إعلانيًا	.....	مفيد لـ	.....

Definitions

.....	someone whose job is to stop fires

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 3 Lessons 5 & 6 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (7)

1. I always feel ..... of dark places.
   a) happy **b)** scared **c)** worried **d)** busy
2. Our streets are clean because ..... don't leave any paper there.
   a) rubbish collectors **b)** volunteers
   c) shop workers **d)** sellers
3. My neighbour, Mr Said, is ..... . He saved a little girl from a fire.
   a) safe **b)** dangerous **c)** serious **d)** brave
4. My mother did ..... work that made me proud of her.
   a) dangerous **b)** boring **c)** heroic **d)** scary
5. I went to the museum and saw many ..... of ancient Egyptians there.
   a) emails **b)** statues **c)** selfies **d)** villas
6. My sister ..... at home when mum arrived.
   a) wasn't **b)** isn't **c)** doesn't **d)** didn't
7. He didn't ..... smoke when he was younger.
   a) used to **b)** used **c)** use **d)** use to

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: (3)

1. The lessons ..... (be) very interesting yesterday.
2. We ..... (agree) to what she said.
3. They both used to ..... (had) short hair.

(1 - 4) Poor — (5 - 7) Good — (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 4 Lessons 1&2

Main Vocabulary

أطلال/أنقاض	.....	قلعة	.....
معبد	.....	ثقافة	.....
مسرح	.....	تاريخى	.....
يرشح/يوصى بـ	.....	مسجد	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

مهتم بـ	.....	يعود/يرجع إلى	.....
يغادر على الفور	.....	يرجع تاريخه إلى	.....

Words and Opposites

.....		قومى/وطنى	.....
.....		يحمى	.....

Definitions

.....	a person who can show you round a place

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 3 Lessons 1&2 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. The Citadel in Cairo is ..... .

a) modern **b)** new **c)** ancient **d)** bad

2. A good man is someone who ..... well.

a) behaves **b)** plays **c)** sleeps **d)** travels

3. You can watch a sports match at a ..... .

a) museum **b)** library **c)** stadium **d)** castle

4. My grandfather always goes to the ..... to pray.

a) museum **b)** temple **c)** pyramid **d)** mosque

5. Tourists like visiting ..... places in Egypt.

a) chemical **b)** historic **c)** plastic **d)** musical

6. We ..... help to protect the history and culture of our country.

a) must **b)** must to **c)** mustn't **d)** mustn't to

7. You ..... drop litter at the park.

a) have **b)** haven't **c)** mustn't **d)** must

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. We must ..... (bringing) all of our rubbish home with us.
2. Students ..... (mustn't) all listen carefully to their teachers.
3. It is hot today, so you must all ..... (wore) a hat.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 4 Lessons 3&4

Main Vocabulary

صفحة ويب	.....	كيميائى/مادة كيميائية	.....
زبون	.....	الطين/الصلصال	.....
بالغ	.....	مكونات/مقادير	.....
يصلح	.....	ورق/نبات البردى	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يخلع ملابسه/حذاءه	.....	يبدو جيدًا	.....
ماذا يُعرض؟	.....	يحمى من	.....

Definitions

.....	something people wear to cover or protect their face
.....	jewellery you wear around your neck
.....	a model of a person

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (7)

1. The ancient Egyptians made pots from ..... from the river Nile.
   a) fish **b)** sand **c)** water **d)** clay
2. Tamara spends hours in front of the ..... looking at herself.
   a) wardrobe **b)** chair **c)** mirror **d)** sofa
3. Flour, eggs and butter are the main ..... of a cake.
   a) ingredients **b)** pots **c)** disasters **d)** drinks
4. I asked the mechanic to ..... my car. It's broken.
   a) damage **b)** pair **c)** repair **d)** destroy
5. I bought a beautiful ..... for mom to wear on her finger.
   a) necklace **b)** ring **c)** bracelet **d)** earring
6. While Hassan ..... to school, he saw a famous squash player.
   a) was walking **b)** is walking **c)** walked **d)** walks
7. While I was watching TV, my sister ..... to music.
   a) listened **b)** listens **c)** listening **d)** was listening

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: (3)

1. While we ..... (travelling) home, Amir phoned me.
2. Rayan ..... (arrives) while I was taking off my shoes.
3. What ..... (you/were) doing when your father arrived?

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 4 Lessons 5&6

Main Vocabulary

السياحة	.....	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	.....
حاكم	.....	مناقشة/مناظرة	.....
إبرة/مسلة	.....	البيئة	.....
آثار	.....	السكان المحليون	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يحترس من	.....	يتبع القواعد/اللافتات	.....
يحدث لـ	.....	يسبّب تلوثًا	.....

Words and Opposites

	.....	يوافق	.....
	.....	يظل/يبقى	.....
	.....	غريب	.....

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 4 Lessons 5&6 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. Tourists drop litter and ..... the environment.

a) remain **b)** cause **c)** damage **d)** agree

2. My grandfather always gives us ..... advice. We like to listen to him.

a) local **b)** valuable **c)** electric **d)** strange

3. Too many cars on this road can ..... pollution.

a) cause **b)** damage **c)** protect **d)** injure

4. ..... buses are good for the environment.

a) Electric **b)** Petrol **c)** Oil **d)** Coal

5. I fell off the bike and ..... my arm.

a) helped **b)** sew **c)** injured **d)** behaved

6. We don't have any bread, so we ..... buy some.

a) have **b)** don't have **c)** must **d)** mustn't

7. While I ..... home, I saw a terrible accident.

a) was coming **b)** am coming **c)** is coming **d)** comes

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. Students must ..... (are) quiet in class.

2. The sun was shining when I ..... (get) out of my bed.

3. You ..... (mustn't) put rubbish in the bin.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 5 Lessons 1&2

Main Vocabulary

إعلان	.....	أفعال/أعمال	.....
لص/حرامى	.....	يُخرج/يزيل شيئًا	.....
كرسى متحرك	.....	تلميحات/نصائح	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يصنع نموذجًا	.....	يأخذ المصعد/السلالم	.....
ينفق مالاً على	.....	يساعد فى	.....
تقوم بالطهى	.....	يفعل أشياء لطيفة	.....

Words and Opposites

.....		.....	فوضوى/غير مرتب
.....		.....	ممتلئ

Definitions

.....	happening without a plan

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 5 Lessons 1&2 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. A random ..... of kindness is a kind thing that you do for no reason.

a) action **b)** act **c)** contact **d)** fact

2. My clothes were clean and dry, so I ..... them all away.

a) made **b)** gave **c)** put **d)** took

3. Don't talk to ..... or people you don't know.

a) strangers **b)** neighbours **c)** cousins **d)** shopkeepers

4. Engineers must wear a helmet to ..... their heads in building sites.

a) damage **b)** collect **c)** protect **d)** select

5. I'm very ..... today because I found a good job and met my best friend.

a) messy **b)** lucky **c)** tidy **d)** lazy

6. We have a lot of rice, so we ..... to buy any.

a) don't have **b)** have **c)** must **d)** mustn't

7. Before you go on holiday, you ..... make sure that the doors are locked.

a) have **b)** mustn't **c)** should **d)** shouldn't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. Children ..... (should) play in the street.
2. At school, I ..... (don't have) to wear the uniform.
3. On Friday, we ..... (not/ have) get up early.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 5 Lessons 3&4

Main Vocabulary

خادم	.....	يتصرف	.....
يعيد تدوير/تصنيع	.....	مجتمع/جماعة/جالية	.....
مندهش	.....	يتبرع	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يلتقط القمامة	.....	يضل الطريق	.....
مؤدب مع	.....	متطوع لدى	.....

Words and Opposites

.....	قاسٍ	.....	
.....	لذيذ	.....	

Definitions

.....	a school where students live all the time
.....	when you cannot use part of the body in the way most people can
.....	a poor person who asks others for money, etc.

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 5 Lessons 3&4 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. A ..... is a poor person who asks others for money.

a) mechanic **b)** beggar **c)** doctor **d)** worker

2. A kind person is someone who ..... well.

a) sleeps **b)** plays **c)** travels **d)** behaves

3. Fareeda Rashwan has ..... two million pounds to charities in the city.

a) donated **b)** made **c)** decided **d)** explained

4. Shaza lives next door. She is my ..... .

a) classmate **b)** servant **c)** neighbour **d)** patient

5. He works as a ..... for a charity.

a) customer **b)** volunteer **c)** head teacher **d)** tourist

6. This is the company ..... my uncle works.

a) where **b)** who **c)** which **d)** that

7. The new book ..... I bought is very interesting.

a) who **b)** where **c)** which **d)** when

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. A bakery is the place ..... (who) we buy bread.
2. That's the man ..... (which) bought our old car.
3. This is the museum ..... (who) we visited last year.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 5 Lessons 5&6

Main Vocabulary

وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	.....	سلة قمامة	.....
رجل الإطفاء	.....	كوبري/جسر	.....
واسع	.....	تبرع	.....
ناعم/طرى/لين	.....	معمل	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يعتقد/يفكر فى	.....	يقدم اقتراحات	.....
يقرر أن	.....	يحارب (يخمد) النار	.....

Words and Opposites

.....	يوافق	.....	
.....	معاون/مساعد/مفيد	.....	

Definitions

.....	the daughter of a king or queen

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 5 Lessons 5&6 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (7)

1. Tara ..... the rubbish when the bins are full.
   a) cleans up **b)** looks after **c)** takes out **d)** picks up
2. We can encourage people by putting recycling ..... everywhere.
   a) masks **b)** caps **c)** bottles **d)** bins
3. Eman was very kind and ..... , so all students liked her.
   a) helpful **b)** helpless **c)** hopeful **d)** useless
4. Haitham has to tidy his room. It's really ..... !
   a) tidy **b)** messy **c)** cool **d)** free
5. Children have lots of ..... to play with them.
   a) toys **b)** purses **c)** pots **d)** taps
6. We ..... cook more; there's enough food.
   a) have to **b)** don't have to **c)** has to **d)** doesn't have to
7. I live in a house in Cairo ..... is in the East Area.
   a) which **b)** where **c)** who **d)** whose

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: (3)

1. You ..... (have to) drive so fast. We have a lot of time.
2. You are ill. You ..... (should) go to school today.
3. The man ..... (which) lives next to me is nearly eighty.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 6 Lessons 1&2

Main Vocabulary

يحذر	.....	التغير المناخى	.....
إعادة التدوير (التصنيع)	.....	كهربائى (يُدار بالكهرباء)	.....
كوكب	.....	عرض تقديمى	.....
معدل/متوسط	.....	سقوط الأمطار	.....
ملوث	.....	درجة الحرارة	.....

Prepositions

يتحدث إلى/مع	.....	حريص بشأن	.....
على قمة	.....	فى برنامج	.....

Words and Opposites

.....	ينصهر	.....	

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 6 Lessons 1&2 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. Too many cars cause air ..... in the city.
   a) flood **b)** education **c)** tourism **d)** pollution
2. We should protect our ..... where we live.
   a) environment **b)** weather **c)** climate **d)** temperature
3. Egypt is known ..... its wonderful monuments.
   a) to **b)** for **c)** with **d)** of
4. Many countries try ..... things to help the environment.
   a) leading **b)** burning **c)** recycling **d)** throwing
5. ..... buses are better than old ones.
   a) Fuel **b)** Ugly **c)** Local **d)** Electric
6. Which is ..... , the train or the plane?
   a) fastest **b)** faster **c)** fast **d)** as fast as
7. People hope there will be ..... air pollution in the city.
   a) more **b)** fewer **c)** less **d)** much

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. Fruit and vegetables are ..... (good) for you than sweets.
2. Is today ..... (cold) than yesterday?
3. The River Nile is ..... (polluted) than it was before.

(1 - 4) Poor — (5 - 7) Good — (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 6 Lessons 3&4

Main Vocabulary

الحياة البرية	.....	تركيز	.....
بث إذاعى	.....	يقدم	.....
مكانة/موقع (جغرافى)	.....	رئيسي/أساسى	.....
ينتج	.....	رياضة الغطس	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

على امتداد النهر	.....	يمارس رياضات مائية	.....

Words and Opposites

.....		إيجابى	.....
.....		جميل	.....

Definitions

.....	a long area of water made for ships or boats
.....	find the position of something
.....	a building where people can pray

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 6 Lessons 3&4 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. Climate change is a ..... event that we should care about.
   a) community **b)** national **c)** local **d)** global
2. My home town is ..... on the coast. It's in the south-east.
   a) closed **b)** burnt **c)** located **d)** lied
3. My computer is ..... to the internet, so I easily search for anything I want.
   a) contacted **b)** communicated
   c) tied **d)** connected
4. Minya has delicious black ..... that comes from sugar cane.
   a) honey **b)** rose **c)** flower **d)** cotton
5. ..... is a plant used for making clothes.
   a) Cotton **b)** Sugar **c)** Wheat **d)** Flower
6. This museum ..... by millions of tourists every year.
   a) visit **b)** visits **c)** is visited **d)** visited
7. Rubbish ..... every week by her and goes to a special place.
   a) collects **b)** is collecting **c)** collected **d)** is collected

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. Minya ..... (locate) near the Nile.
2. The city ..... (know) for its beautiful buildings.
3. Cotton clothes ..... (make) in Egypt.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

Name: .....

15

Check your Vocabulary

Unit 6 Lessons 5&6

Main Vocabulary

يُدلى بصوته/يُصوِّت	.....	يهدف (إلى)	.....
يؤدى إلى	.....	رسم توضيحى/بيانى	.....
ضفة النهر	.....	حدث	.....
تعبيرات	.....	عالمى	.....

Prepositions & Language Expressions

يستلقى على الشاطئ	.....	يتحقق من الأخطاء	.....
ينظف	.....	يحل مشكلة	.....

Words and Opposites

.....	شيق	.....	

Definitions

.....	It happens when there is too much rain.
.....	It happens when there is too much smoke from factories.

(1 - 7) Poor (8 - 12) Good (13 - 15) Excellent

Name: .....

Unit 6 Lessons 5&6 — Quiz

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7

1. We can ..... some of the rubbish, so we shouldn't throw them away.

a) vote **b)** reuse **c)** damage **d)** cycle

2. The school ..... to teach children in a friendly environment.

a) votes **b)** wins **c)** leads **d)** aims

3. Rubbish in the river ..... the wildlife.

a) damages **b)** stores **c)** protects **d)** produces

4. Green wood does not ..... well.

a) burn **b)** protect **c)** win **d)** give

5. Climate change happens when the planet ..... warmer.

a) aims **b)** falls **c)** gets **d)** feels

6. Travelling by plane is ..... expensive than travelling by bus.

a) most **b)** more **c)** much **d)** many

7. My father is as ..... as my mother.

a) oldest **b)** older **c)** older than **d)** old

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3

1. Dad's car is much ..... (fast) than mine.
2. He thinks this test was ..... (difficult) than the last one.
3. Furniture ..... (make) by carpenters.

(1 - 4) Poor (5 - 7) Good (8 - 10) Excellent

4. Advanced Questions

Unit 1

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I always go to school ..... my father's car.

a) by **b)** at **c)** **in** **d)** on

2. What time ..... your first lesson?

a) does **b)** has **c)** **is** **d)** will

3. My father lived in ..... country when he was young.

a) **the** **b)** an **c)** a **d)** no word

4. I usually have a ten- ..... break.

a) minutes **b)** minute's **c)** minutes' **d)** **minute**

2 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. ..... (Shall we) watch TV. (Let's)

2. ..... (What) did you feel when your father travelled? (How)

3. How ..... (many) do you visit your aunt? (often)

4. My father worked as a science teacher. Now he ..... (work) as a chemist. (works)

Unit 2

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We ..... a surprise when my uncle came from the USA.

a) **had** **b)** gave **c)** did **d)** made

2. He wanted to be an engineer, but now he ..... to be an officer.

a) want **b)** **wants** **c)** is wanting **d)** is wanted

3. He felt ..... when his grandfather died.

a) sadness **b)** in a sad way **c)** sadly **d)** **sad**

4. These unkind parents ..... their children badly.

a) laugh **b)** feel **c)** **treat** **d)** relax

2 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. He is always ..... (speak) loudly. (speaking)

2. The test sounds ..... (easily). (easy)

3. He came ..... (lately), so the teacher was angry. (late)

4. I can ..... (hard) see anything. It's dark. (hardly)

Unit 3

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. He never ..... to drive a car.

a) use **b)** uses **c)** **used** **d)** using

2. I usually ..... my uncle every Friday when I was young.

a) visit **b)** am visiting **c)** **visited** **d)** was visiting

3. Can you tell me the ..... of the brain?

a) work **b)** task **c)** job **d)** **function**

4. I can't tell you the ..... between these two twins.

a) educate **b)** education **c)** different **d)** **difference**

2 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. They didn't use to be clever, but now they ..... (be). (are)

2. He ..... (not) happy yesterday. (wasn't)

3. He used ..... (to) get up early. Now he always gets up early. (not to)

4. He is a kind person. He treats his neighbours ..... (friendly). (in a friendly way)

Unit 4

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Could you ..... me a good book to read?

a) advise **b)** **recommend** **c)** say **d)** tell

2. He likes to take his car because it's a long ..... to outside the city.

a) flight **b)** voyage **c)** walk **d)** **drive**

3. There are ..... fifty students in this class.

a) near **b)** nearby **c)** nearer **d)** **nearly**

4. While Adel was getting ready and ..... his bag for the trip, the door bell rang.

a) packed **b)** to packing **c)** is packing **d)** **packing**

2 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. You must study hard and ..... (to revise) well for your exams. (revise)

2. While they ..... (be) in London, they enjoyed their time. (were)

3. When I ..... (play), I fell down. (was playing)

4. We ..... (have to) never tell lies. (must)

Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you see an old man on the bus, you should give him your ..... .

a) sofa **b)** armchair **c)** chair **d)** **seat**

2. Some rich people ..... away some money to the poor.

a) **give** **b)** donate **c)** share **d)** fight

3. Don't ..... like that again.

a) pass **b)** reach **c)** donate **d)** **act**

4. Alexandria is the place ..... I like to visit every summer.

a) where **b)** **which** **c)** who **d)** why

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The police ..... (must) to make sure people are safe. (have)

2. I don't think we ..... (shouldn't) get up early. We aren't late now. (should)

3. I like the village ..... (where) I was born in. (which)

4. You should do ..... (that) I told you. (what)

Unit 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We breathe ..... air every day.

a) pollute **b)** **polluted** **c)** pollution **d)** polluting

2. My father has a good ..... in his company.

a) podcast **b)** **position** **c)** location **d)** focus

3. This is a small room. I want a ..... one.

a) big **b)** **bigger** **c)** bigger than **d)** as big

4. Mr. Waleed asked us to write a paragraph about the ..... of recycling.

a) different **b)** difference **c)** **importance** **d)** important

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He's the ..... (tall) of his two friends. (taller)

2. Many fish ..... (catch) in the Suez Canal. (are caught)

3. He isn't so ..... (thin) his brother. (thin as)

4. Egypt ..... (lie) in the north-east of Africa. (lies)

ALADWAA
Gem

اللغة الانجليزية



Model Answers

الصف 2 الاعدادي

الفصل الدراسى الأول

2024 25

Answers 100%

CONTENTS


1. Main Book Answers
إجابات كتاب الشرح
2. Ongoing Assessment Booklet Answers
إجابات ملحق التقويم المستمر
3. Final Revision & Exams Booklet Answers
إجابات ملحق المراجعة النهائية والاختبارات

1. Main Book Answers



Unit 1

Coming home

Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. interest
2. Chess
3. routine

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. do
2. at
3. Same
4. learn

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) make
2. d) on
3. b) got
4. d) by

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) flat
2. b) for
3. a) blog
4. d) do
5. b) baker's
6. a) with
7. a) hobby
8. a) leave
9. c) topics
10. b) Chess
11. d) good
12. d) for
13. c) have
14. d) favourite
15. b) on

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) block
2. b) daily
3. b) spend
4. a) interview
5. a) free time
6. b) prefer
7. b) routine
8. d) sofa
9. c) share
10. c) make
11. d) text
12. b) interest
13. d) subject
14. a) breakfast

Language Exercises (1)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) gets
2. a) doesn't
3. b) finishes
4. d) never drives
5. b) often
6. b) is always
7. d) don't like
8. c) Does
9. c) read
10. c) always

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. helps
2. don't study
3. is never
4. drink
5. rain

Language Exercises (2)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) was
2. a) Did
3. a) What
4. b) Do
5. b) How heavy
6. d) Can
7. c) playing
8. a) do they
9. c) Who
10. d) got

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. does
2. are
3. go
4. How
5. were

Speaking Exercise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I live in Giza.
2. Who do you live with?
3. Yes, I do.
4. I do exercise once a week.
5. Where do you like to go on holiday?/ What do you like to do on holiday?

Unit 1 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) six
2. d) school
3. b) one
4. c) English

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I usually get up at 7 a.m.
2. I get to school on foot.
3. Where do you live?
4. Who do you live with?
5. I live with my family, too.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) have
2. a) spent
3. d) to
4. b) early
5. a) took
6. c) from
7. d) block
8. c) always
9. a) listen
10. a) make

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. comes
2. doesn't
3. visit
4. Who

5. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. profile
2. village
3. prison

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. take
2. around
3. careless
4. feel

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) with
2. d) year

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) bring
2. b) country
3. c) suggested
4. a) change
5. b) with
6. d) become
7. c) moved
8. a) watered
9. b) marry
10. b) for
11. c) of
12. a) out
13. b) do
14. d) outside
15. c) take away

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) feed
2. c) poor
3. d) terrible
4. a) knife
5. d) ugly
6. b) prison
7. b) tap
8. b) typical
9. b) imagine
10. a) line
11. b) adventures
12. c) large
13. d) text
14. c) borrow
15. d) bread

Speaking Exercise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm painting some pictures.
2. Yes, of course.
3. Have you got any watercolours?
4. Can I borrow it, please?
5. Thank you.

Unit 1 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The passage is about Tarek's daily routine.

2. No, I don't think it's good to be in a school that's far from my house because it takes a long time to get there.

3. Pupils sometimes go to the library to read books.

B) 4. a) school

5. c) three

6. c) usual

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) did
2. a) carry
3. d) picnic
4. c) remember
5. c) attractive
6. a) railway
7. a) at
8. c) Has
9. d) always go
10. c) did

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. leave
2. doesn't like
3. Can I
4. are we

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. Sunlight
2. carpet
3. cupboard

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. get
2. close
3. belonged
4. kept

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) for
2. a) to go

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) lamp
2. d) Cushions
3. c) penfriends
4. a) nature reserve
5. d) out of
6. a) armchair
7. a) take
8. c) from
9. d) chest
10. d) match
11. c) basin
12. c) information
13. d) downstairs
14. a) opposite
15. d) curtains

Unit 1 Lessons (5&6) Test Yourself

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I do.
2. I always read in my free time.
3. Do you go to the library?
4. How often do you go to the library?
5. My favourite book is "Animals in the Wild".

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) mirror
2. b) wardrobe
3. c) bookshelf
4. b) nearby
5. d) always
6. a) go

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. never
2. do you visit
3. doesn't
4. Was

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 1

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) Her daily routine.
2. d) At 6:30 a.m.
3. a) Doctors.
4. d) Watching TV.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I do.
2. How many rooms have you got?
3. No, I haven't.
4. Why do you like your bedroom?
5. Yes, there are.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is describing Aya's bedroom and why she likes it.
2. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to Aya's bedroom.
3. I think Aya likes to read and rest in her bedroom because it is warm and comfortable.

B) 4. a) bookshelf
5. c) lovely
6. d) blue

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) description
2. d) take
3. c) website
4. a) tap
5. c) carpet
6. b) practise
7. b) wardrobe
8. b) never stay
9. d) tidy
10. c) often

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Will
2. always goes
3. spend
4. did he shout

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. a) I'm fine, thanks.
2. b) Yes, I have one.
3. d) How is it?
4. c) Are there any curtains on the window?
5. b) The best thing about my room is the matching colours.

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. b) go
2. c) is usually
3. d) has
4. b) How often
5. a) Will



Unit 2

How are you feeling?

Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. nurse
2. repair
3. computer engineer

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. on
2. caught
3. modern
4. speak

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) boring
2. a) to have
3. d) to meeting

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) sewing
2. b) waved
3. a) Tourists
4. a) park
5. c) fantastic
6. a) about
7. d) lovely
8. b) patients
9. a) full
10. c) give
11. a) with
12. d) keyboard
13. d) cook
14. b) sailed
15. c) seems

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) street-food seller
2. c) make
3. d) calligraphy
4. a) communicate
5. b) looking
6. a) look after
7. d) deaf
8. c) ward
9. a) repair
10. b) stall
11. c) lazy
12. c) artist
13. d) call-centre
14. c) skill
15. a) neighbour

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) are making
2. a) parking
3. a) is shopping
4. d) is visiting
5. c) lives
6. d) are studying
7. c) am writing
8. b) is
9. c) isn't crying
10. d) are working

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. are repairing
2. is falling
3. is learning
4. are you
5. isn't
6. Are

Unit 2 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) weekend
2. d) sign
3. a) sewing
4. b) bedroom

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm writing a letter.
2. Who are you writing to?
3. She lives in France.
4. How old is she?
5. No, I don't.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) paint
2. c) presents
3. a) tins
4. d) give
5. b) police officer
6. b) sign
7. a) worker
8. d) is drinking
9. c) are
10. a) do

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. stay
2. aren't listening
3. going
4. is coming

5. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. crowds
2. husband
3. grateful

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. on
2. win
3. feel
4. flew

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) relax
2. b) funny
3. c) did
4. d) aged
5. c) into
6. a) catch
7. d) sharp
8. b) at
9. c) happiness
10. c) light
11. a) treated
12. c) about
13. d) continue
14. b) skin
15. d) nature

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) guests
2. c) wedding
3. c) airport
4. c) desert
5. a) striped
6. b) worried
7. c) grateful
8. b) Teenagers
9. c) suitcases
10. a) normal
11. d) Alone
12. d) Nature
13. d) light

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) quietly
2. b) happy
3. d) lazily
4. c) hard
5. b) careful
6. c) angrily
7. c) well
8. c) loudly
9. b) beautifully
10. b) hungrily

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. slowly
2. badly
3. fast
4. excitedly
5. quickly
6. easily

Unit 2 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Ways to Make Teenagers Happy.
2. Young people should sleep from eight to ten hours a night.
3. I think spending time with family, making new friends, getting enough sleep, experiencing nature, and doing kind acts for others make teenagers happy.

B) 4. a) to be kind
5. b) To be happy.
6. c) unhappy

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) port
2. b) crowds
3. b) got
4. b) laugh
5. d) hang
6. b) suit
7. a) taking
8. c) kindly
9. a) carefully
10. b) early

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. late
2. gently
3. heavily
4. sadly

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. pity
2. miss
3. worries

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. to
2. fail
3. going

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) amazing
2. d) practice
3. a) guess
4. c) going
5. b) with
6. b) sports coach
7. c) to
8. a) pity
9. d) get
10. a) Congratulations
11. d) pass
12. a) did
13. a) prepares
14. d) miss
15. d) greetings

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. That's great news!/ Congratulations!
2. What did you draw?
3. My little brother is very ill.
4. When was that?
5. I hope he gets better soon.

Unit 2 Lessons (5&6) Test Yourself

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I can't come because my grandfather is ill.
2. Where is he?
3. That's a good idea.
4. When can we visit him?
5. Thanks for your feelings.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) difficult
2. d) imagine
3. c) Well
4. c) news
5. b) warmly
6. c) are staying

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. am wearing
2. carelessly
3. cooks
4. noisily

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) dentist
2. b) London
3. b) two
4. b) teeth

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. No, I can't come.
2. Why can't you come?
3. What happened to him?
4. Thanks for your feelings.
5. Yes, of course.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Good news.
2. Amir wrote it.
3. I think Amir isn't happy because he has to share the room with his brother for a week until his room is ready.

B) 4. a) Ramez
5. b) science
6. c) exciting

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) repair
2. c) news
3. d) park
4. c) get
5. a) making
6. a) take
7. a) trip
8. b) happily
9. d) enjoying
10. b) now

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. visits
2. quietly
3. doing
4. are saying

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. c) I'm going to spend it in Luxor.
2. d) That's great news!
3. a) Who will you go with?
4. b) What about you?
5. a) Thank you.

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. d) is getting
2. a) dangerously
3. c) are painting
4. b) spend
5. b) walks

Module (1) Question Bank On Units 1 & 2

1. Complete the following dialogue:

A) 1. He's a teacher.
2. Where does he work?
3. He teaches English.
4. Do his pupils like him?
5. Yes, I do.

B) 1. What happened to her?
2. Is she at hospital now?
3. Yes, of course.
4. We will visit her tonight.
5. We will meet in front of her house.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) routine
2. d) interview
3. a) spend
4. c) terrible
5. d) prison
6. c) Curtains
7. c) ward
8. b) sign language
9. b) wedding
10. a) congratulated
11. a) doesn't
12. d) to visiting
13. c) is visiting
14. d) are you
15. d) well

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. writing
2. doing
3. writes
4. badly
5. happily
6. hard
7. immediately
8. travelling
9. does
10. seeing



Unit 3

Great jobs

Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. Khedive
2. date
3. improve

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. lost
2. safe
3. at
4. throwing

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) to cross
2. b) visited
3. c) to explain
4. c) as

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) national
2. c) senior
3. d) medicine
4. a) princess
5. b) for
6. c) did
7. b) attacked
8. d) died
9. c) with
10. a) win
11. b) Handball
12. a) pleased
13. d) teamwork
14. d) nervous
15. a) treatment

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) patient
2. a) charity
3. d) scientist
4. d) successful
5. a) against
6. c) sports coach
7. b) junior
8. a) shark
9. b) heroes
10. b) lost
11. b) patron
12. c) competition
13. a) surgeon
14. b) coward
15. a) final
16. a) nuclear

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) stopped
2. a) didn't
3. d) ago
4. a) were
5. c) live
6. a) Was
7. d) Did
8. a) meet
9. a) lost
10. b) from

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. didn't visit
2. weren't
3. cut
4. won
5. was
6. Did

Unit 3 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Handball.
2. a) In 2020.
3. d) Tunisia.
4. c) 27-23.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I am reading an article.
2. What is it about?
3. Because he is a great heart surgeon.
4. Where was he born?
5. That's right.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) in
2. c) competition
3. d) makes
4. a) inside
5. b) charity worker
6. a) events
7. a) medicine
8. a) feel
9. b) won
10. d) Was

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. met
2. weren't
3. spend
4. didn't work

5. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. pump
2. breathe
3. plants

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. beautiful
2. stop
3. down
4. off

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) furniture
2. c) function
3. c) blood
4. a) scary
5. d) did
6. b) burn
7. c) on
8. d) infecting
9. a) stomach
10. b) filled
11. b) special
12. d) earthquake
13. a) find out
14. c) serious
15. b) ancient
16. d) pleased

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) heart
2. a) brain
3. c) lungs
4. d) volunteer
5. b) disaster
6. b) emergency
7. a) infection
8. c) of
9. d) Jewellery
10. c) pay
11. d) health
12. d) countryside
13. d) mend

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) used to
2. c) use to
3. d) be
4. b) did
5. a) do
6. d) learn
7. c) didn't use
8. b) use to live
9. b) used to
10. b) didn't use to

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. didn't use
2. be
3. have
4. didn't use to
5. to spend
6. use

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. I used to have my breakfast.
2. I used to have it at 7 a.m.
3. Did you use to have it with your parents?
4. I used to go to school by bike.
5. How do you go to school now?

Unit 3 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The Person I Admire Most.

2. The underlined pronoun "**him**" refers to the writer's grandfather.

3. I think the writer's grandfather was a kind, helpful and generous person who did voluntary work and helped others.

B) 4. d) love
5. b) help people
6. a) hospital

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) disaster
2. c) for
3. a) charity
4. d) take in
5. b) fire
6. b) make
7. d) broken
8. b) didn't
9. d) have
10. c) isn't

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. use to
2. used
3. didn't use to
4. read

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. give
2. buildings
3. paintings
4. harmful

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) reason
2. c) society
3. d) put
4. a) discussion
5. b) Firefighters
6. d) collect
7. a) differences
8. b) confused
9. b) of
10. a) statues
11. a) manager
12. b) collectors
13. c) explained
14. b) for
15. b) heroic

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. What do you mean?
2. Sorry, I don't understand.
3. Yes, I agree./ Yes, that's true.
4. I don't agree.
5. Why don't you agree?

Unit 3 Lessons (5&6) Test Yourself

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. My hero is my grandfather.
2. He was a doctor.
3. Where did he work?
4. Yes, he did.
5. Are you proud of him?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) Street cleaners
2. c) Modern
3. b) education
4. d) organisations
5. c) used to be
6. d) was

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. eat
2. spent
3. used to go
4. didn't use to

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 3

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) nurse
2. c) hospital
3. a) ill
4. d) Study hard

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I think they are heroes.
2. Why do you think so?
3. They make sure our streets are clean.
4. Are they important in our society?
5. We should respect them and stop dropping litter in the streets.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. A Great Surgeon.
2. The underlined word "**there**" refers to Cairo University.
3. I think Dr Magdy started a charity for ill children because he wanted to help them live healthier lives.

B) 4. d) Belbeis
5. c) sick
6. c) 2009

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) charity
2. c) surgeon
3. b) scared
4. d) pays
5. c) sewing
6. a) hero
7. a) bones
8. d) lives
9. a) were
10. d) use to

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. was
2. lost
3. used to have
4. didn't sing

6. Write an email of NINETY (90) words:

Left to students.

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. c) Where did you go?
2. a) Who did you go with?
3. d) Because I was busy.
4. b) It was great.
5. a) Yes, I did.

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. a) did
2. d) win
3. a) used to
4. b) to help
5. b) didn't use to



Unit 4

Into the past

Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. theatre
2. objects
3. ruins

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. away
2. get
3. forgot
4. modern

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) at
2. a) historic

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) castle
2. d) stadium
3. a) race
4. c) recommend
5. b) drop
6. c) pray
7. d) to
8. c) Temple
9. a) plan
10. b) dates
11. d) packed
12. a) about
13. c) respect
14. c) to
15. b) in

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) arch
2. d) historic
3. a) behave
4. a) ruins
5. b) rules
6. b) mosque
7. b) theatre
8. b) awesome
9. a) culture
10. c) view
11. c) ticket
12. a) ancient
13. c) guide
14. b) amazing

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) must
2. c) must
3. b) Must I
4. d) be
5. a) mustn't
6. a) mustn't
7. b) must Laila
8. d) Must he
9. c) mustn't
10. a) run

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. must
2. get
3. mustn't
4. you must
5. talk
6. do

Unit 4 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Luxor.
2. c) On Monday.
3. d) Lunch.
4. a) It's hot.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. It was great.
2. Who did you go with?
3. You must take a camera.
4. What mustn't I do?
5. You can go there by bus.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) bring
2. d) view
3. a) stones
4. c) protect
5. c) match
6. c) to
7. b) back
8. d) mustn't
9. b) must
10. a) use

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. draw
2. mustn't
3. must
4. Must Hala

5. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. oil
2. customers
3. web page

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. through
2. cost
3. makes

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) from
2. d) is
3. a) for

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) around
2. b) design
3. c) large
4. a) doorbells
5. d) opening
6. b) except
7. c) ingredients
8. a) insects
9. d) popular
10. b) pots
11. a) off
12. c) office
13. b) chemicals
14. d) bowl
15. a) station

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) Coins
2. a) mixed
3. a) papyrus
4. d) mirror
5. a) away
6. d) ring
7. b) clay
8. a) necklace
9. a) figure
10. a) vase
11. d) repair
12. d) look
13. c) tool
14. c) mask

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) was waiting
2. a) arrived
3. b) wasn't sleeping
4. d) While
5. c) were playing
6. a) when
7. d) decided
8. b) was studying
9. c) were watching
10. a) going

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. was cooking
2. were washing
3. sleeping
4. put
5. were you doing
6. were singing

Time to Practise

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7. b) was running
8. c) rang
9. a) when
10. a) was
11. d) was making
12. a) going
13. b) were watching
14. d) was studying
15. a) were taking
16. a) was swimming

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. phoned
2. were walking
3. when
4. found
5. was cooking
6. was eating

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. What time do you open?
2. How much is the ticket?
3. Yes, you can.
4. No, it isn't.
5. Thank you.

Unit 4 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is about the amazing and interesting objects made by the Ancient Egyptians.

2. The Ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx to protect the Pyramids.

3. The underlined pronoun "**theirs**" refers to the mirrors made by the Ancient Egyptians.

B) 4. c) man

5. a) river

6. d) dark

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) paint
2. c) Adults
3. c) decided to
4. d) equipment
5. b) from
6. a) ticket officer
7. c) for
8. c) doing
9. a) standing
10. d) Was she

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. was
2. wasn't reading
3. saw
4. were watching

4. Write an email of NINETY (90) words:

Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. Pharaohs
2. weighed
3. wars

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. make
2. disagree
3. for

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) debate
2. a) century
3. d) local
4. d) environment
5. c) polluting
6. d) monuments
7. b) follow
8. c) damage
9. a) ruler
10. a) stone
11. c) Tourism
12. b) valuable
13. b) company
14. d) special
15. c) needle

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. Do you think it's important to have a hotel here?
2. Why do you think so?
3. I don't agree with you.
4. Because I think it will make our city too busy.
5. I see what you mean.

Unit 4 Lessons (5&6) Test Yourself

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Why do you think so?
2. I don't think so.
3. Because a lot of the money goes to holiday companies.
4. I don't agree.
5. What do you think about that?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) report
2. b) cause
3. a) to
4. a) peace
5. c) was taking
6. a) were

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. repaired
2. was painting
3. was cleaning
4. mustn't

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) Senet.
2. b) 30.
3. c) Wood.
4. b) On the floor.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. What is it about?
2. What do you think of technology?
3. I don't agree with you.
4. I see what you mean.
5. Yes, I think so.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the text is about Cleopatra's Needle.
2. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to Cleopatra's Needle.
3. No, I don't think it's right to present one of our monuments to another country because it's our treasure.

B) 4. b) 1878
5. b) two
6. c) thousand kg

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) behave
2. d) guide
3. d) mosques
4. a) castles
5. c) pollution
6. c) damages
7. b) local
8. d) mustn't
9. c) were eating
10. c) was walking

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. be
2. were you going
3. was taking
4. heard

6. Write an email of NINETY (90) words:

Left to students.

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. b) I must help Mum.
2. d) Must you work at night?
3. a) Five hours.
4. b) Yes, I did.
5. c) What's the most difficult part of your job?

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. a) Must we
2. d) mustn't
3. b) wasn't working
4. b) went

Module (2) Question Bank On Units 3 & 4

1. Complete the following dialogue:

A) 1. Could you tell me what time you open?
2. How much does a ticket cost?
3. Can I buy it online?
4. Yes, you can.
5. Thank you for your help.

B) 1. I went to Hurghada last summer.
2. We stayed in a hotel.
3. How did you travel?
4. Yes, we did.
5. How long did you stay there?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) protect
2. d) theatre
3. d) vase
4. b) damages
5. d) after
6. b) in
7. d) charity
8. a) hero
9. a) disasters
10. d) stadium
11. d) used to
12. a) mustn't
13. b) were travelling
14. b) had
15. b) didn't use to be

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. see
2. didn't use
3. don't
4. be
5. were
6. go
7. when
8. was having
9. were drinking
10. was travelling



Unit 5

Helping you, helping me

Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. kindness
2. bin
3. random

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. back
2. get
3. empty
4. stand

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) on
2. d) reading

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) stranger
2. a) advertisement
3. a) thief
4. d) tips
5. d) shopkeeper
6. b) smile
7. a) distance
8. d) did
9. c) with
10. b) borrow
11. d) make
12. a) give
13. a) address
14. b) about
15. d) check

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) random
2. d) fantastic
3. c) messy
4. d) kindness
5. a) wash
6. c) takes out
7. d) lift
8. c) doing
9. b) flat
10. b) get
11. c) put away
12. d) wheelchair
13. d) rubbish
14. a) act

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) should
2. d) have
3. a) don't have to
4. d) study
5. a) Do
6. a) to wake
7. a) have to
8. c) have to
9. b) don't have to
10. c) should

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. has
2. start
3. doesn't have to
4. shouldn't
5. Should
6. have to

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. Yes, of course.
2. What sort of jobs do you have to do at home?
3. No, I don't.
4. I have to take out rubbish.
5. Do you have to wash up?

Unit 5 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Messy.
2. d) Every day.
3. c) On Saturday.
4. c) Once a week.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I am reading a book.
2. What is this book about?
3. Yes, we should.
4. We should take part in a charity.
5. Will you take part in a charity?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) rubbish
2. a) practise
3. c) Teenagers
4. c) apartment
5. c) shape
6. a) model
7. a) to
8. d) don't have to
9. a) should
10. a) have to

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. clean
2. does Mahmoud have
3. don't
4. has to

5. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. fed
2. chemist
3. servant

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. for
2. lose
3. gave

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) secondary
2. d) generous
3. a) Trainers
4. c) up
5. b) strange
6. a) do
7. d) disabled
8. c) surprised
9. c) owner
10. a) to
11. b) got
12. a) extracts
13. c) baker's
14. a) reach
15. b) away

Time to Practise

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) beggar
2. d) behave
3. c) boarding
4. c) donate
5. d) neighbour
6. d) cruel
7. c) community
8. a) servant
9. c) recycle
10. a) princess
11. b) feed
12. d) delicious

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) where
2. a) which
3. c) where
4. d) where
5. b) who
6. c) which
7. b) who
8. d) where
9. b) which
10. a) who

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. where
2. which
3. who
4. where
5. which
6. who

Unit 5 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read the following, then answer the questions.

A) 1. Acts of Kindness.

2. I think charities play an important role in helping many communities.

3. People donate money to the charity which Ahmed works for to help buy food for the animals that are old or sick and can't work anymore.

B) 1 c) Mrs Buda

2. c) leave rubbish

3. b) collect

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) for
2. c) Babysitting
3. a) act
4. c) for
5. c) sports person
6. d) headteacher
7. d) disabled
8. b) who
9. c) where
10. d) which

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. which
2. who
3. where
4. where

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. geography
2. laboratory
3. soft

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. disagree
2. fight
3. about

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) canteen
2. b) fisherman
3. d) In
4. a) gave
5. d) donation
6. c) bridge
7. b) laboratory
8. d) Firefighters
9. a) snowed
10. c) soft
11. d) helpful
12. c) share
13. a) messy
14. b) media
15. a) make

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm not sure. / No, I don't want to play outside.
2. Good idea.
3. I feel that we should play chess.
4. What should we do?
5. What can we watch?

Unit 5 Lessons (5&6) Test Yourself

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Because I'm doing a school project.
2. What is it about?
3. How could we help the community?
4. Good idea.
5. I'm not sure.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) newspaper
2. b) suggestion
3. c) title
4. b) give
5. d) don't have to
6. a) where

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. which
2. buy
3. has
4. where

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 5

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Cakes.
2. a) At the baker's.
3. d) On Monday.
4. d) b and c.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I do.
2. What subject do you have to study?
3. He has to tidy up his room.
4. Where do we have to go for the next lesson?
5. We have got science.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is how to keep our community clean.
2. If we all did like Hani and his friends, our streets would be clean and tidy.
3. Teachers and parents helped the pupils by giving them advice and the money they needed.

B) 4. b) pupils
5. c) helpful
6. a) busy

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) businesswoman
2. c) bin
3. a) fantastic
4. d) on
5. a) generous
6. d) lucky
7. c) donations
8. d) don't have to
9. a) which
10. b) should

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Do you have to
2. have to
3. who
4. shouldn't

6. Write an email of NINETY (90) words:

Left to students.

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. c) I'm going to work for a charity.
2. d) I agree with you.
3. a) What should we do?
4. d) Can I work for a charity with you?
5. b) Good idea.

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. d) doesn't have
2. c) should
3. a) which
4. d) who



Unit 6

Different environments

Lessons 1 & 2

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. cause
2. planet
3. pollution

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. freeze
2. for

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) temperature
2. c) electric
3. d) drought
4. d) warned
5. b) climate
6. d) fuel
7. c) average
8. a) rainfall
9. a) recycling
10. c) energy
11. c) canal
12. b) users
13. c) melts
14. c) about
15. d) polluted

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) more difficult
2. b) as
3. c) higher
4. b) more
5. a) than
6. d) warmer than
7. c) more careful
8. d) bad
9. b) attractive
10. d) less

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. drier
2. more polluted
3. farther
4. noisier than
5. better
6. as windy

Unit 6 Lessons (1&2) Test Yourself

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Student Radio.
2. a) A canal.
3. d) Rubbish.
4. c) Be careful.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm reading a book.
2. It's about climate change.
3. What is it?
4. Yes, it is.
5. Why is it a serious problem?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Climate
2. d) flood
3. b) graph
4. c) weather
5. d) presentation
6. d) green
7. b) polluted
8. a) more
9. d) beautiful
10. c) dangerous than

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. hotter
2. important than
3. worse
4. more

5. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Lessons 3 & 4

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. introduced
2. winner
3. wildlife

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. along
2. did
3. lovely
4. grow

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** connected
2. **a)** honey
3. **b)** produces
4. **a)** position
5. **b)** company
6. **d)** wheat
7. **d)** presenter
8. **c)** went
9. **b)** famous
10. **c)** positive
11. **d)** in
12. **c)** to
13. **a)** located
14. **c)** particular
15. **b)** cotton
16. **d)** as

Language Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** is visited
2. **a)** is located
3. **d)** damaged
4. **c)** is used
5. **b)** takes
6. **a)** painted
7. **b)** are made
8. **a)** Is
9. **c)** are eaten
10. **a)** drink

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. am asked
2. made
3. play
4. are taken
5. is spoken
6. is used

Unit 6 Lessons (3&4) Test Yourself

1. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The Effects of Climate Change.

2. I think global warming is dangerous because it causes floods, droughts and ice melting.

3. We can stop climate change by planting trees, using renewable energy, recycling rubbish, stopping the use of bad chemicals and saving water to turn deserts into green lands.

B) 4. **a)** too
5. **c)** sun
6. **a)** climate change

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) main
2. c) from
3. c) canal
4. a) reserves
5. b) caught
6. c) diver
7. a) in
8. a) is recycled
9. c) are grown
10. d) are built

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Are
2. by
3. are sent
4. is known

4. Write an email of NINETY (90) words:

Left to students.

Lessons 5 & 6

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. burn
2. coloured
3. importance

Check Point

Choose and complete:

1. for
2. solve
3. boring

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) gets
2. c) including
3. d) solve
4. a) lying
5. b) aimed
6. c) reuse
7. a) riverbank
8. d) lead
9. a) air
10. b) climate
11. d) melting
12. b) reminded
13. d) drought
14. d) flood

Speaking Exercise

Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm fine, thanks.
2. What was it about?
3. What is the problem of that?
4. We can recycle water.
5. That's an interesting idea!

Unit 6 Lessons (5&6) Test Yourself

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm thinking of the school project.
2. It is about rubbish at school.
3. That's an interesting idea.
4. Where does this rubbish go?
5. What do you think?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** diagram
2. **c)** global
3. **a)** vote
4. **b)** got
5. **d)** more relaxing
6. **a)** watered

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. quieter
2. more careful
3. is collected
4. as

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** Protect it.
2. **a)** Save energy.
3. **a)** Plant trees.
4. **c)** oxygen

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I live in Giza.
2. Where is Giza located?
3. Do you like your city?
4. I go to school on foot.
5. No, thanks.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The passage is about the importance of water in our life.

2. I think we use modern ways to water plants to save water.

3. Parents and teachers have to teach their children that water means our life because it can help us to turn the desert into green land to grow more crops.

B) 4. b) grow

5. c) careless people

6. d) old

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) environment
2. c) Wildlife
3. a) Rainfall
4. b) in
5. b) presenter
6. c) for
7. d) locate
8. a) more
9. b) farther
10. d) as old as

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. is produced
2. are visited
3. better
4. as

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Bubble Sheet Exercises

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. b) I'm fine, thanks.
2. a) Yes, I did.
3. c) What was the lesson about?
4. d) What does climate change mean?
5. a) Yes, I think so.

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

1. c) better
2. d) fast as
3. a) is grown
4. b) damaged

Module (3) Question Bank On Units 5 & 6

1. Complete the following dialogue:

A) 1. Tanta is famous for its delicious sweets.

2. Where is black honey made?
3. People plant wheat.
4. What is Port Said famous for?
5. It's located in the north-east of Egypt.

B) 1. I'm reading a book.
2. It's about pollution.
3. How can we stop pollution?
4. Why should we plant trees?
5. We can recycle our rubbish.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** teenager
2. **c)** looks
3. **a)** Random
4. **b)** charity
5. **c)** beggar
6. **c)** lift
7. **a)** share
8. **c)** flood
9. **b)** respect
10. **a)** have
11. **c)** gets
12. **c)** have to
13. **b)** where
14. **a)** has
15. **b)** is made
16. **c)** are eaten

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. which
2. shouldn't
3. be
4. tall
5. is made
6. have to
7. is cooked
8. don't have
9. are sold
10. than

2. Ongoing Assessment Booklet Answers

Unit 1 Lessons 1 & 2 Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) routine
2. a) block
3. b) at
4. c) Doing
5. c) arrives
6. c) How

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. often chats
2. How often
3. Do
4. doesn't have

Unit 1 Lessons 1 & 2 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. I'm fine, thanks.
2. When/What time do you get up?
3. I go to school on foot.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) interests
2. c) interview
3. c) on
4. d) never
5. b) play

3. Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

Left to students.

Unit 1 Lessons 3 & 4 Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) tap
2. a) typical
3. d) empty
4. c) on
5. d) brush
6. c) visit

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. usually goes
2. doesn't belong
3. many
4. does

Unit 1 Lessons 3 & 4
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Attractive
2. d) feed
3. b) adventures
4. c) sells
5. b) Do

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Soha's Family Routine.
2. Soha goes to Alexandria on holidays.
3. The underlined pronoun "**She**" refers to Soha's mother.

B) 4. c) hospital
5. d) youngest

Unit 1 Lessons 5 & 6
Follow up Worksheet

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I do.
2. How many rooms have you got?
3. No, I haven't.
4. Why do you like your bedroom?
5. Yes, there are.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) curtains
2. b) lamp
3. a) on
4. b) keeps
5. d) for

Unit 1 Lessons 5 & 6
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) 7:30.
2. a) Mother.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) drawers
2. b) cushions
3. a) practise
4. b) cycle
5. a) do

3. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. My bed is under the window.
2. My mum puts her dresses in a big wardrobe.
3. It's very nice to meet you.
4. My favourite subjects are maths and English.

Unit 1 Mini-Test

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm fine, thanks.
2. What are you interested in?
3. I'm interested in playing football.
4. I practise football in the club.
5. Can I come with you to the club?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) terrible
2. c) carpet
3. c) wardrobe
4. a) armchair
5. a) interest
6. b) text
7. c) Careless
8. a) spend
9. c) never
10. d) How

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. find
2. does
3. How often
4. Do

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Unit 1 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. I'm playing with my toy cars.
2. Yes, of course.
3. Can I use it?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) bookshelf
2. b) block
3. b) line
4. c) Does
5. b) Why

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Shaimaa, the writer's sister, likes listening to music.
2. The name "Rex" refers to the pet dog.
3. The writer's father is an engineer.

B) 4. d) b and c
5. a) Yara

4. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. I share a room with my sister.
2. How do you help your family?
3. My dad works in a shop.
4. I live with my parents in a village.

5. Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

Left to students.

Unit 2 Lessons 1 & 2 Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) communicate
2. b) stalls
3. c) police officer
4. a) ward
5. d) doing
6. c) is repairing

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. aren't doing
2. draw
3. are you
4. isn't working

Unit 2 Lessons 1 & 2 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. I'm fine, thanks.
2. What are you doing?
3. What is it about?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) parking
2. d) repair
3. b) fountain
4. a) isn't listening
5. c) Is it

3. Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

Left to students.

Unit 2 Lessons 3 & 4 Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) grateful
2. d) teenagers
3. a) feel
4. d) carefully
5. a) happily

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. slowly
2. sadly
3. quietly
4. well

Unit 2 Lessons 3 & 4 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) pleased
2. a) treats
3. b) suitcases
4. a) well
5. c) easily

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of this passage is about Sameh's summer holiday.
2. Sameh stayed at a nice hotel with a sea view in Alexandria.
3. He spent it with his cousins. In the morning, they coloured eggs to celebrate for breakfast in the fields. In the evening, they had a big dinner and enjoyed singing and dancing.

B) 4. c) bus
5. b) uncle's farm

Unit 2 Lessons 5 & 6 Follow up Worksheet

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. No, I didn't.
2. Why couldn't you go out?
3. He's ill.
4. What did the doctors say?
5. I hope he gets better soon.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) done
2. d) do
3. c) on
4. a) isn't working
5. a) hungrily

Unit 2 Lessons 5 & 6 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) Very big.
2. c) Sharing the room.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) coach
2. d) imagine
3. b) pity
4. a) are
5. b) are you

3. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. I'm so happy for you.
2. Are you enjoying your new school?
3. The teacher helped me pass my exams.
4. Yes, I'm coming to the football practice on Thursday.

Unit 2 Mini-Test

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm learning sign language.
2. Because my cousin is deaf.
3. Yes, she was.
4. Can she communicate well in sign language?
5. When do you have sign language lessons?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) making
2. b) on
3. d) give
4. c) wedding
5. d) normal
6. a) nature
7. b) passed
8. d) happily
9. a) have
10. c) am learning

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. is doing
2. Are
3. late
4. kind

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Unit 2 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. Why didn't she go to work?
2. I'm sorry to hear that.
3. Did she pass it?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) repair
2. a) make
3. d) is raining
4. d) miss
5. a) hard

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Samir works at a bank.
2. He starts work at 8:00 a.m.
3. They drive to work./ They go to work by car.

B) 4. b) on foot
5. d) Samir's brother and sister

4. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. We're sitting carefully on the rocks.
2. The baby is laughing loudly.
3. Reem is sitting in front of the tree.
4. People need nature to be happy.

5. Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

Left to students.

Unit 3 Lessons 1 & 2 Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) shark
2. b) charity
3. c) medicine
4. d) competition
5. c) Was he
6. b) looked

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Did
2. weren't
3. begin
4. did

Unit 3 Lessons 1 & 2 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. I went to Alexandria.
2. Where did you stay?
3. I travelled to Alexandria by train.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) teamwork
2. b) hero
3. d) treatments
4. c) was
5. a) Did

3. Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

Left to students.

Unit 3 Lessons 3 & 4 Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** proud
2. **c)** function
3. **c)** stop
4. **b)** disasters
5. **c)** didn't use
6. **a)** Did

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. used to
2. use
3. Did you use
4. didn't use to

Unit 3 Lessons 3 & 4 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** bones
2. **d)** brain
3. **d)** pumps
4. **a)** used to
5. **d)** didn't use

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Magdy Yacoub was born on 16th November, 1935.

2. The underlined word "**<u>there</u>**" refers to the University of Cairo.

3. He decided to be a surgeon because his aunt died at age 22 because of heart disease.

B) 4. **c)** 2009

5. **d)** 22

Unit 3 Lessons 5 & 6 Follow up Worksheet

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. A hero is someone who is brave.
2. What do you mean?
3. I'm not sure what you mean.
4. That's true.
5. Who is your hero?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) for
2. c) discussion
3. a) rubbish collectors
4. a) bought
5. c) didn't win

Unit 3 Lessons 5 & 6
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) My mother.
2. b) Education.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) explain
2. b) collect
3. d) of
4. b) make
5. c) did
6. a) read

3. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. Her life used to be difficult.
2. I was in the hospital for two weeks.
3. She works as a nursing manager.
4. Mahy studied at the Faculty of Nursing.

Unit 3 Mini-Test

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. What is an earthquake?
2. Yes, it is.
3. Why is it dangerous?
4. No, I don't think so.
5. You're welcome.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) take in
2. a) national
3. a) surgeon
4. d) for
5. b) furniture
6. d) nursing
7. d) cleaner
8. b) did
9. a) didn't use to
10. d) didn't arrive

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. used to
2. bought
3. use to
4. meet

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Unit 3 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. I'm looking at photos of my family.
2. Yes, I do.
3. Where did your grandfather use to live?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) with
2. d) breathe
3. a) come
4. b) finished
5. b) emergency

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Dr Hassan lives in Giza.
2. He usually works eight hours a day.
3. Dr Hassan likes being a doctor because he likes helping people.

B) 4. b) Cairo University
5. b) tennis

4. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. When Omar was 22, a shark attacked him.
2. My parents lived in a small flat in 2005.
3. I didn't use to know about my family history.
4. Ancient Egyptian doctors were very clever.

5. Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

Left to students.

Unit 4 Lessons 1 & 2 Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) stadium
2. d) awesome
3. b) straight
4. a) guide
5. d) mustn't
6. b) buy

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. must
2. Must we
3. mustn't
4. sleep

Unit 4 Lessons 1 & 2
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. I went shopping.
2. What did you buy?
3. Who did you go with?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) historic
2. c) theatre
3. b) packed
4. c) think
5. b) run

3. Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

Left to students.

Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4
Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) designs
2. b) customers
3. c) on
4. c) mix
5. c) watching
6. a) fell

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. was raining
2. wasn't studying
3. got
4. Was she

Unit 4 Lessons 3 & 4
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) Coins
2. c) for
3. b) necklace
4. b) was reading
5. d) were walking

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is to describe Egypt as a great country.
2. They stayed at a nice hotel overlooking the Nile.
3. I think Aswan is a great city.

B) 4. c) train
5. a) Aswan

Unit 4 Lessons 5 & 6 Follow up Worksheet

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Yes, watching TV is very useful.
2. Why don't you think so?
3. I disagree.
4. What should we do?
5. That's right.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) injure
2. a) debate
3. d) out
4. b) started
5. b) were travelling

Unit 4 Lessons 5 & 6 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Last month.
2. a) Work.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) plan
2. d) storm
3. a) make
4. d) damage
5. c) mustn't
6. b) was studying

3. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. The Ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food.
2. We are open from 9:30 a.m. to 6:30 p.m.
3. How can I help you?
4. While we were travelling home, Amir phoned me.

Unit 4 Mini-Test

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Could you tell me when the Egyptian Museum is open?
2. How much is the ticket?
3. You can buy it online.
4. No, you can't.
5. Thank you.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) protect
2. c) drop
3. c) prayed
4. a) for
5. d) except
6. a) make
7. d) War
8. b) Was he
9. d) were eating
10. c) mustn't

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. was
2. heard
3. be
4. must

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Unit 4 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. I'd like to know what time the Cairo Tower is open.
2. Can you tell me how much the tickets are?
3. Yes, of course.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) mask
2. c) clay
3. d) Objects
4. a) must
5. d) was watching

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The museum is further from their home than their school.
2. The tool that the friend found was 10,000 years old.
3. They went on that trip last month.

B) 4. b) rich
5. d) 14th

4. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. You must arrive at school on time.
2. The ruins at the Karnak Temple were amazing.
3. I went to the Museum of Islamic Art with my family.
4. I see what you mean.

5. Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

Left to students.

Unit 5 Lessons 1 & 2 Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) Random
2. d) do
3. c) lift
4. b) advertisement
5. b) don't have to
6. b) should

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Does he have to
2. have to
3. does Hala have
4. shouldn't

Unit 5 Lessons 1 & 2 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. What are they?/ What do we have to do?
2. Yes, there are.
3. Why do we have to go to school on Saturdays next month?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) seat
2. a) up
3. a) calligraphy
4. d) don't have to
5. a) shouldn't

3. Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

Left to students.

Unit 5 Lessons 3 & 4 Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) to
2. b) boarding
3. d) beggar
4. a) disabled
5. c) where
6. b) which

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. which
2. who
3. where
4. which

Unit 5 Lessons 3 & 4
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) donate
2. b) trainers
3. a) feed
4. b) who
5. a) which

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The text is about Abdelrahman's family members who have been kind to him.
2. The underlined pronoun "**her**" refers to Rana.
3. The writer was sad because he lost the watch that his father gave him for his birthday.

B) 4. c) last week
5. b) small

Unit 5 Lessons 5 & 6
Follow up Worksheet

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. We should stay home.
2. What do you mean?
3. I disagree.
4. That's a good idea.
5. Where should we go?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) bin
2. d) on
3. a) fisherman
4. c) which
5. d) shouldn't

Unit 5 Lessons 5 & 6
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) On Saturday.
2. a) Making breakfast.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) helpful
2. d) businesswoman
3. d) community
4. d) should
5. b) don't have

3. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. I decided that I wanted to help everyone in my family.
2. Doing random acts of kindness is fantastic.
3. I took a cup of tea to my grandfather in bed.
4. I share the bedroom with my sister.

Unit 5 Mini-Test

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. No, I didn't.
2. What can we do?
3. That's great.
4. How could we help in our community?
5. We could collect rubbish.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** make
2. **c)** tips
3. **b)** do
4. **b)** trainers
5. **a)** away
6. **c)** geography
7. **c)** fight
8. **d)** should
9. **c)** Do
10. **d)** who

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. who
2. where
3. doesn't have to
4. Does

4. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Unit 5 Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I have to study geography.
2. Why do you have to study geography?
3. Does he have to study?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** put away
2. **b)** messy
3. **a)** beggar
4. **d)** have to
5. **c)** who

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the text is doing random acts of kindness.
2. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to people who help others.
3. I feel happy when I help someone.

B) 4. d) happy
5. a) nothing

4. Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

Left to students.

Unit 6 Lessons 1 & 2 Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) flood
2. b) line graph
3. d) pollution
4. a) climate
5. a) happy
6. b) worse

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. more comfortable
2. as large as
3. taller
4. older

Unit 6 Lessons 1 & 2 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

1. I'm fine, thanks.
2. Which is bigger, the computer or the laptop?
3. The computer is cheaper than the laptop.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) electric
2. c) temperature
3. b) polluted
4. d) nice as
5. b) more interested

3. Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

Left to students.

Unit 6 Lessons 3 & 4 Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) wildlife
2. d) connected
3. a) nature
4. b) produces
5. c) is located
6. b) grown

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. is drunk
2. are written
3. Are you given
4. aren't sold

Unit 6 Lessons 3 & 4 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) positive
2. b) bin
3. d) respect
4. c) is spoken
5. a) are cleaned

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the text is the importance of tourism in Egypt.
2. The government gives prizes to companies that are the best at looking after the environment.
3. We should protect the coast of the Red Sea because the islands on the Red Sea Coast are all nature reserves.

B) 4. d) both b and c
5. c) sport

Unit 6 Lessons 5 & 6 Follow up Worksheet

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. What is the problem?
2. We use too many plastic water bottles.
3. We can stop people from using them.
4. We could use them again.
5. Do you agree with me?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) riverbank
2. d) event
3. a) burnt
4. d) better
5. b) are cleaned

Unit 6 Lessons 5 & 6
Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheet

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) In March.
2. d) All of these.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) remind
2. b) including
3. b) Recycling
4. d) not as
5. d) by

3. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. We have a rubbish bin in every room.
2. It was great to clean the riverbank.
3. Global Recycling Day is an event in March.
4. Most countries hope to recycle more in the future.

3. Final Revision & Exams Booklet

Part 1 Final Revision

Monthly Models on Units 1 & 2

Model 1

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) airport
2. a) neighbour
3. c) calligraphy
4. b) crowds
5. b) shop worker
6. b) do
7. b) sign
8. a) slowly
9. d) aren't using
10. b) goes

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. does Nader work
2. hard
3. Will it rain
4. never come
5. am doing

Model 2

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm fine, thanks.
2. Let's go shopping tomorrow.
3. Why can't you come?
4. I hope he gets better soon.
5. Can I come to see him?

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. My Daily Routine.
2. The writer likes to read the news during breakfast.
3. No, I don't think the writer works in a school because the writer finishes work at 6:00.

B) 4. a) work
5. c) sofa
6. c) about

Model 3

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) to
2. c) artist
3. c) park
4. b) wedding
5. c) How often
6. b) well

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. help
2. is always
3. doesn't
4. playing

3. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Monthly Models on Units 3 & 4

Model 1

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) final
2. c) die
3. c) heroic
4. d) damage
5. b) make
6. c) sunglasses
7. a) rules
8. c) told
9. b) was shopping
10. a) must

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. wasn't
2. see
3. were cycling
4. used to
5. use

Model 2

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I spent last summer holiday in Hurghada.
2. Who did you go with?
3. We went by car.
4. When did your father buy this car?
5. We enjoyed our time there.

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is about Sandy and her family.

2. The underlined pronoun "**He**" refers to their manager, Mr Medhat.

3. I think Mr Medhat is a nice man because he gave Sandy and her husband three weeks off and bought them a very nice wedding gift.

B) 4. b) garden
5. c) be a gardener
6. a) present

Model 3

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) clay
2. b) competition
3. a) continued
4. c) statues
5. b) didn't use to
6. a) were they doing

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. didn't do
2. was having
3. was practising
4. must

3. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Monthly Models on Units 5 & 6

Model 1

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) lift
2. d) strangers
3. b) disabled
4. a) princess
5. c) mosque
6. b) Tourists
7. b) recycle
8. b) don't have to
9. d) which
10. a) are fed

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Are
2. as large as
3. where
4. easier
5. drive

Model 2

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I live in Port Said.
2. Where is it located?
3. What is it famous for?
4. You can go there by train.
5. Yes, it is.

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Random Acts of Kindness.
2. I think people should do random acts of kindness to make the world better.
3. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to people who do kind things.

B) 4. b) happy
5. d) France
6. a) better

Model 3

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) boarding
2. b) melts
3. b) surprised
4. d) canteen
5. a) shouldn't
6. a) has to

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. older
2. isn't
3. Do
4. who

3. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

Part 2 SB & WB General Exercises

Unit 1

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. a) for
2. c) daily
3. a) sofa
4. d) routine
5. b) text
6. b) typical
7. d) share
8. a) village
9. b) feed
10. d) tap
11. c) attractive
12. a) terrible
13. c) line
14. a) basin
15. a) wardrobe
16. b) mirror

Language

17. a) doesn't drink
18. d) does
19. b) is
20. d) don't like

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. do
2. doesn't watch
3. starts
4. does
5. doesn't get
6. makes
7. Has
8. have
9. got
10. does
11. help
12. arrives
13. does

Unit 2

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. d) sign
2. b) communicate
3. c) guests
4. d) wedding
5. c) striped
6. c) pity
7. b) desert
8. d) teenager
9. c) Normal
10. a) alone
11. b) grateful
12. a) street-food seller
13. b) police officer
14. c) call-centre worker
15. d) shop worker
16. b) computer engineer
17. b) park
18. d) deaf
19. b) ward

Language

20. d) am cleaning
21. d) do
22. b) hungrily
23. b) carefully

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. are cleaning
2. lives
3. are studying
4. quietly
5. kindly
6. spends
7. drives
8. doesn't usually work
9. well
10. sadly
11. are
12. raining

Unit 3

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. b) sports coach
2. b) surgeon
3. d) scientist
4. b) charity worker
5. d) charity
6. a) countryside
7. c) natural disaster
8. b) volunteer
9. a) emergency
10. c) Lungs
11. a) brain
12. d) heart
13. a) pump
14. d) infection
15. b) competition

Language

16. a) died
17. b) in
18. c) When
19. a) ago
20. c) used to be
21. d) didn't use to
22. b) won
23. a) go
24. c) didn't use to be
25. c) did you use to

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. used to
2. didn't use to
3. was
4. didn't use to
5. did
6. Did you use to
7. went
8. use to be
9. started
10. didn't use to

Unit 4

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. d) stadium
2. a) arch
3. b) mosque
4. c) castle
5. c) statues
6. a) Ruins
7. d) Awesome
8. d) guide
9. b) Ancient
10. c) view
11. b) objects
12. a) away
13. c) designs
14. d) protect
15. a) mix
16. b) play
17. a) insects
18. b) company
19. a) historic
20. c) damage

Language

21. c) must
22. b) mustn't
23. c) must
24. a) saw
25. a) were travelling
26. b) As
27. d) arrived
28. d) when
29. b) was walking

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. put
2. sat
3. were flying
4. mustn't
5. follow

Unit 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. b) messy
2. a) takes out
3. c) takes
4. b) get
5. a) after
6. c) lift
7. b) away
8. d) random
9. b) boarding
10. d) up
11. a) cruel
12. d) beggar
13. c) behaves
14. a) servant
15. a) kindness
16. b) stranger

Language

17. d) Do
18. a) have to
19. a) don't have to
20. c) have to
21. d) where
22. d) where
23. a) who
24. c) have
25. a) which

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. has
2. shouldn't
3. do
4. who
5. which
6. where
7. where
8. who
9. which
10. where
11. where

Unit 6

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. b) rubbish
2. d) flood
3. a) pollution
4. c) drought
5. b) polluted
6. b) green
7. d) locate
8. a) Cotton
9. c) canal
10. b) warming
11. c) melts
12. a) Canal
13. c) Tourism
14. a) located
15. c) Driving

Language

16. a) fast
17. a) not as
18. b) well
19. d) much
20. d) as carefully

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. more polluted
2. not as high
3. serious as
4. is located
5. is made
6. are found
7. not as important
8. as big
9. is known
10. are grown
11. delicious as
12. higher
13. worse
14. is visited

End of Term Practice

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) A street-food seller.
2. c) To look after her brothers and sisters.
3. a) To school.
4. a) Tired but grateful.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm sorry
2. What do you mean?
3. Why
4. idea
5. can

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Leonard Woolley was exploring a palace in ancient Babylon (which is located in Iraq today).
2. He thought the objects were from a museum because they all had labels on them.
3. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to the objects.

B) 4. d) a lot older than the palace
5. d) Things you keep together.
6. b) They were interested in history.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) Street-food sellers
2. b) block
3. b) scared
4. a) messy
5. d) volunteer
6. c) use to live
7. a) hero
8. a) was walking
9. a) touch
10. c) that

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. won
2. is taking
3. are sold
4. has

6. Choose one of the following:

- Write an email of 80-90 words to a penfriend telling him or her about your daily routine.
- Write a blog of 80-95 words about a historic place you visited.

Left to students.

(1) Schools & Directorates Exams

1. Ministry Guiding Model
نموذج الوزارة الاسترشادى

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) El Fayoum
2. c) city
3. d) parents and her brother
4. a) English

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I usually get up at 6 o'clock.
2. When do you have your breakfast?/ What do you do then?
3. I arrive at school at eight o'clock.
4. What time do you leave school?
5. Yes, I do.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The Hungry Fox.
2. The forester didn't find the food because the fox ate all the food.
3. If I were the forester, I would let the fox leave.

B) 4. b) everywhere
5. c) rainy
6. d) food

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) insects
2. b) tap
3. c) competition
4. a) guest
5. c) sign language
6. d) messy
7. a) Cotton
8. c) attacked
9. a) making
10. b) Do

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. fatter
2. who
3. happily
4. mustn't

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

2. Cairo Governorate (New Cairo Directorate)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) 1994
2. b) shark
3. b) coach
4. d) leg

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I do.
2. When do you get up?
3. No, I don't.
4. Who makes it for you?
5. I go to school on foot every day.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The Greatest Heart Surgeon, Dr Magdy Yacoub.

2. The underlined word "**there**" refers to Cairo University.

3. I think Dr Magdy started a charity for ill children to help ill children to live healthy lives.

B) 4. d) Belbeis

5. c) sick

6. c) 2009

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) prison
2. b) who
3. b) teenagers
4. c) Curtains
5. c) mustn't
6. b) donate
7. d) was studying
8. c) prepares
9. b) passport
10. c) damages

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. gets
2. well
3. use to
4. is studying

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

3. Cairo Governorate (Al-Salam Educational Zone)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) engineer
2. c) Saudi Arabia
3. a) wife
4. a) car

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. My favourite hobby is reading.
2. Where do you enjoy reading?
3. What is this book about?
4. Yes, I do.
5. Yes, you can.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is how to keep healthy.
2. Doctors advise people not to have too many sugary drinks and not to stay at home all the time.
3. People can have enough sleep to have a healthy life.

B) 4. b) people
5. c) Few
6. a) cakes

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) carpet
2. c) volunteer
3. b) who
4. c) must
5. b) objects
6. b) rules
7. a) wheat
8. c) communicate
9. c) lungs
10. d) to having

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. located
2. older
3. quickly
4. are growing

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

4. Giza Governorate (Omrania Directorate)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** Thirteen.
2. **a)** English.
3. **b)** Preparatory.
4. **c)** Karate.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I want to buy a jacket.
2. What size do you want?
3. I would like it black, please.
4. Is it good?
5. It's 500 pounds.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Ways to Be a Happy Teenager.
2. Young people should sleep from eight to ten hours a night.
3. I think spending time with the family and making new friends make teenagers happy.

B) 4. **a)** to be kind
5. **b)** To be happy.
6. **c)** unhappy

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** text
2. **c)** calligraphy
3. **a)** brain
4. **b)** papyrus
5. **b)** from
6. **c)** stranger
7. **c)** Cruel
8. **d)** Has
9. **d)** was going
10. **b)** mustn't

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. doesn't study
2. carefully
3. where
4. bigger

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

5. Giza Governorate

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) A bike.
2. d) His father.
3. a) by bus
4. d) 8:30

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I have.
2. When did you get it?
3. Why did you get it?
4. Yes, I did.
5. You are really good.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The opposite of the word "**wet**" is dry.
2. The passage is about the donkey's trick.
3. I think the man is clever.

B) 4. d) donkey
5. a) market
6. c) heavy

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) lungs
2. c) pots
3. a) Random
4. c) looks
5. b) has
6. a) parking
7. d) volunteer
8. b) mustn't
9. b) news
10. a) teenager

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. gets
2. well
3. was cooking
4. is located

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

6. Alexandria Governorate (East Directorate)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) El Minya
2. a) near the Nile
3. c) black honey
4. d) Potatoes and sugar cane

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. My father is a teacher.
2. Where does he work?
3. He teaches English.
4. Do his students like him?
5. Yes, I do.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is the importance of water in our life.

2. I think water is important because we use it for many things like drinking, washing, cooking, growing crops, and making electricity. Without water, life wouldn't be possible.

3. Parents and teachers have to teach their children that water can help us to turn the desert into green land to grow more crops.

B) 4. b) water
5. c) dirty
6. d) grow

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) sleeps
2. a) quietly
3. d) statues
4. c) countryside
5. c) armchair
6. a) which
7. a) pumps
8. b) shop worker
9. c) Awesome
10. a) donated

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. has to
2. carefully
3. were walking
4. didn't use to

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

7. Alexandria Governorate (El Montazah Directorate)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) The Pyramids.
2. c) On Monday.
3. d) Lunch.
4. a) It's hot.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. My favourite hobby is swimming.
2. When did you learn to swim?
3. It took three months to be perfect.
4. Where do you practise it?
5. Yes, you can.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is the historical places in Egypt.
2. We should visit historical places because they help us to know more about our beautiful country.
3. I think Salah al-Din built the Citadel to protect Cairo.

B) 4. c) ancient
5. d) six days a week
6. d) the Museum of Islamic Art

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) text
2. b) share
3. b) flat
4. c) grateful
5. b) volunteer
6. c) guide
7. c) put away
8. d) who
9. a) carefully
10. c) did

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. is playing
2. be
3. when
4. don't

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

8. Qalyubia Governorate (Benha Directorate)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) nurse
2. c) hospital
3. a) ill
4. d) study hard

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I spent my summer holiday in Sharm El-Sheikh.
2. I went to Sharm El-Sheikh by plane.
3. How long did you stay there?
4. Who did you go with?
5. Yes, I did.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The writer's most favourite invention is the internet.
2. The passage is mainly about modern inventions.
3. I think our grandfathers suffered a lot in the past because their life was very difficult. They had much trouble travelling from a village to the town, or making a long-distance call.

B) 4. d) people
5. c) in a better way
6. a) ancient

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) text
2. b) adventures
3. d) repair
4. d) junior
5. b) patient
6. d) rules
7. a) distance
8. d) never
9. a) lazily
10. a) didn't

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. was
2. was repaired
3. was cooking
4. which

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

9. Menofia Governorate (Menouf Directorate)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) charity
2. b) work
3. c) money
4. d) after

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Nice to meet you, too.
2. Where are you from?
3. No, it isn't.
4. What/Which places did you visit?
5. Thank you.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The father takes them for a picnic or a movie once a month.
2. The underlined pronoun "**us**" refers to the writer and his sister.
3. Yes, I would like to be like this father because he is kind and friendly.

B) 4. c) A perfect role model
5. a) talk
6. b) succeed

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) daily
2. c) guest
3. b) respect
4. b) customers
5. a) random
6. b) drought
7. a) by
8. d) are visited
9. d) which
10. a) mustn't

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. was
2. played
3. didn't use
4. don't have to

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

10. Dakahliya Governorate (Aga Educational Directorate)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) scientist
2. b) 1917
3. c) science
4. a) None.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm looking at my photo album.
2. Yes, of course.
3. Where were you?
4. My little sister is in the foreground of the photo.
5. Who is in the background?

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. A Clever King.
2. The queen was holding two flower baskets.
3. I think the king was clever.

B) 4. a) queen
5. c) wise
6. b) thinking

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) poor
2. b) waved
3. a) infections
4. c) follow
5. a) servant
6. c) flood
7. b) manager
8. d) used to
9. d) have
10. a) which

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. dropped
2. well
3. planted
4. has

6. Write an email of NINETY (90) words:

Left to students.

11. Beheira Governorate (Itai El Baroud Educational Administration)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) north-east
2. b) ships
3. c) the Suez Canal
4. b) the world

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I think rubbish collectors are heroes.
2. Why do you think so?
3. They make sure streets are clean.
4. Are they important in our society?
5. We should respect them and put rubbish in the bins.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of this passage is the importance of teachers and their role in society.

2. Teachers can help students by helping them understand their lessons and be creative ones. They also change the bad behaviour of naughty students into better ways.

3. Yes, teachers are important in our society.

B) 4. b) amazing
5. c) difficult
6. b) Teachers

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) scared
2. a) hero
3. b) surgeon
4. c) carpet
5. c) ward
6. d) calligraphy
7. b) teenager
8. a) Was
9. b) mustn't
10. b) use to live

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. doesn't have to
2. as serious
3. which
4. are sold

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

12. Damietta Governorate (El-Rawda Directorate)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) Wednesday
2. b) family
3. d) photos
4. b) lunch

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Yes, you can.
2. Where are the Pyramids?
3. No, they aren't.
4. Go along this road and turn left.
5. Who built them?

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The passage is about Huda's daily routine.
2. The underlined pronoun "**She**" refers to Huda.
3. Yes, I think people like Huda because she helps sick people as a nurse.

B) 4. c) evening
5. d) ill
6. a) nurse

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) prison
2. b) police officer
3. d) disaster
4. b) lungs
5. c) poor
6. b) pots
7. a) donate
8. c) has
9. c) is learning
10. b) live

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. was reading
2. have
3. start
4. who

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

13. Sharkia Governorate (Zagazig Directorate)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) Last Friday.
2. d) Fruit and vegetables.
3. a) Heavy.
4. d) By taxi.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I went to Alexandria.
2. Where did you stay?
3. How did you travel?
4. Yes, I did.
5. I ate fish.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is about Sham El-Nessim.
2. Sham El-Nessim started in 2700 BCE.
3. I think Sham El-Nessim is a great festival.

B) 4. c) fish
5. d) Sham El-Nessim
6. d) Alexandria

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) stalls
2. c) prison
3. b) heart
4. b) damages
5. c) lift
6. a) drought
7. c) get
8. a) Do
9. a) which
10. a) cold

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. don't have
2. better
3. was walking
4. cut

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

14. Sharkia Governorate (10th of Ramadan Directorate)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Messy.
2. d) Every day.
3. c) On Saturday.
4. c) Once a week.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I went to Alexandria last summer.
2. I stayed in a nice hotel.
3. How did you travel there?
4. Yes, I did.
5. How long did you stay there?

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The main idea of the passage is tourism in Egypt.
2. Tourists come from all parts of the world. They come from Europe, Asia and Africa.
3. I think tourism is important to Egypt because it brings money and jobs.

B) 4. b) weather
5. b) Pyramids
6. c) very old

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) ruler
2. a) neighbour
3. c) isn't
4. d) curtains
5. d) guide
6. c) lamp
7. a) recommend
8. d) keep
9. b) who
10. c) always goes

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. doesn't have to
2. less expensive
3. were walking
4. is visited

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

15. Ismailia Governorate

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) On foot.
2. c) his mum
3. a) English & maths.
4. c) helpful

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm fine, thanks.
2. My favourite hobby is reading.
3. When do you read?
4. What do you think of basketball?
5. Yes, sure.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The shopkeeper ran out of the shop because Nabil didn't pay for the jacket.
2. The underlined pronoun "**he**" refers to Nabil.
3. I think Nabil is a cheat (مخادع).

B) 4. b) shopping
5. b) jacket
6. a) happy

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) stomach
2. c) strangers
3. a) awesome
4. a) disasters
5. d) do
6. c) which
7. a) disabled
8. c) Keep
9. a) prefer
10. b) mustn't

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. quietly
2. Were
3. must
4. is playing

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

16. Fayoum Governorate

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) island
2. c) 1480
3. a) buildings
4. b) museum

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Egypt is located in the north-east of Africa.
2. Does it recycle much rubbish?
3. Egypt is famous for its cotton.
4. That's a good idea.
5. Who can help us?

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The passage is about the story of *Gulliver's Travels*.
2. Nada got the story of *Gulliver's Travels* as a present from her father.
3. I think Gulliver liked working as a sailor because he wanted to see other countries and explore different places.

B) 4. d) sailor
5. c) small
6. a) story

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) block
2. a) older
3. d) have
4. b) arch
5. c) excitedly
6. d) grateful
7. d) historic
8. b) surgeon
9. a) polluted
10. b) suitcase

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Were
2. is known
3. which
4. was walking

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

17. Beni Suef Governorate

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) 15.
2. d) Historic
3. c) Reading.
4. a) Pleased.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm learning sign language.
2. Why do you learn it?
3. Is he deaf?
4. A deaf person can't hear.
5. Thank you.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The passage is about a hardworking man named Saeed who found money.
2. He decided to give the cash away to help pay for the baby's surgery.
3. I think Saeed is kind and friendly.

B) 4. a) buy a house
5. b) envelope
6. d) tell

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) daily
2. c) forward to
3. a) charity
4. b) emergency
5. d) designs
6. c) boarding
7. a) polluted
8. b) is
9. d) angrily
10. c) used to

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. put
2. which
3. as big
4. are

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

18. Minya Governorate (Samalout Directorate)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) mirrors
2. b) protect
3. c) insects
4. d) metal

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm going to the charity.
2. To help disabled people.
3. Are there many disabled people?
4. When/How often do you go there?
5. Yes, you can.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The Man with Four Hundred Clocks.
2. I would talk to the husband about reducing the number of clocks.
3. The underlined word "**his**" refers to the man.

B) 4. b) clocks
5. c) 400
6. d) many

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) sign
2. d) up
3. a) figure
4. c) do
5. b) computer engineer
6. c) are made
7. d) bookshelf
8. a) never
9. d) sailing
10. c) are they

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. loudly
2. must
3. faster
4. where

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

19. Assiut Governorate (Assuit Educational Zone)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) Pots and bowls.
2. d) The River Nile.
3. b) Stones.
4. d) Clay.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm studying English.
2. Do you have any problems?
3. I don't remember the words.
4. What else should I do?
5. Thank you.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The writer and his friends had sandwiches and cool drinks in the restaurant.
2. The writer didn't find money because he changed his trousers and forgot to take the money.
3. If I were the writer, I would phone my father.

B) 4. d) bad experience
5. c) hungry
6. b) the writer's uncle

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) never helps
2. b) where
3. b) female
4. a) use to
5. b) charity
6. c) recommend
7. d) interview
8. b) hear
9. a) boarding
10. b) mirror

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. doesn't have
2. well
3. rang
4. who

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

20. Sohag Governorate (Tema Directorate)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) climb
2. a) litter
3. b) home
4. b) culture

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I went to my uncle's farm.
2. How did you get there?
3. What did you do there?
4. I stayed there for a week.
5. Yes, I did.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Mrs Nadia, the Kind Arabic Teacher.
2. Mrs Nadia has got three children: Nora, Aya, and Samy.
3. I think Mrs Nadia is a friendly teacher and mother because she helps her students and her family.

B) 4. b) cruel
5. a) a doctor
6. c) students

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) put
2. b) isn't
3. a) later
4. d) share
5. c) view
6. c) behaves
7. b) is sleeping
8. c) Has
9. b) Coins
10. d) protect

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Was
2. doesn't have
3. does Ali
4. tall

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Left to students.

(2) Al-Azhar Exams

1. Cairo Governorate

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) attractive
2. a) under

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm a street-food seller.
2. What kind of food do you cook?
3. Where do you park your food stall?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) volunteer
2. b) was reading
3. b) disabled
4. c) located
5. a) daily

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The students cleaned the riverbank last week.
2. Rubbish in the river damages the wildlife.
3. The students collected 15 bags of rubbish.

B) 4. a) Mr Hassan
5. c) sad

5. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. Tanta is located in the north of Egypt.
2. Students must arrive at school on time.
3. I get up late at the weekends.
4. When did the Egyptian handball team win the competition?

6. Write a short paragraph of five sentences about:

Left to students.

2. Alexandria Governorate

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) pots
2. c) clay

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I live in Cairo.
2. Who do you live with?
3. How do you go to school?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) tap
2. d) usually play
3. c) where
4. a) patient
5. d) watching

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. People speak English all over the world.
2. Students need English to get a place at the university.
3. Tour guides speak English to tourists.

B) 4. c) good
5. b) English

5. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. In a museum, you mustn't touch the objects.
2. Kind people always donate to charities to help the poor.
3. Cairo is more crowded than Aswan.
4. To recycle is to reuse things.

6. Write a short paragraph of five sentences about:

Left to students.

3. Qalyubia Governorate

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) breakfast
2. a) hospital

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I went to the cinema.
2. When did the film start?
3. Did you enjoy it?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) heavily
2. c) disaster
3. c) historic
4. c) mustn't
5. c) is grown

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. "Keep safe" means to protect.
2. I think the Ancient Egyptians were clever.
3. The Ancient Egyptians used mirrors to protect their eyes from the sun and keep away insects.

B) 4. b) objects
5. b) mirror

5. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. You mustn't eat or drink in a museum.
2. Where did you live when you were a child?
3. She was cooking while her father was reading a book.
4. I work for a charity which looks after animals.

6. Write a short paragraph of five sentences about:

Left to students.

4. Dakahlia Governorate

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) ward
2. a) likes

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. What do you mean?
2. we won't learn.
3. the internet can't replace teachers./ I don't understand.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) have to
2. b) patron
3. a) fast
4. b) messy
5. c) clay

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The engineer decided to stop working and relax.
2. The owner wanted him to build a beautiful house as his last job for the company.
3. No, the engineer wasn't interested in building the house well.

B) 4. c) the engineer
5. c) careless

5. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. They used to have a small car.
2. How often do you exercise?
3. My home is located near the Nile.
4. Bikes are greener than cars.

6. Write a short paragraph of five sentences about:

Left to students.

5. Sharkia Governorate (Modified) 2023

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) normal
2. d) worried

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Thank you.
2. Yes, I have.
3. What/Which places did you visit?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) have
2. c) well
3. b) used to play
4. a) Teenager
5. d) after

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Mrs. Karima used to study hard to be a nurse.

2. In 2020, there was a health emergency and many people were in a hospital. The narrator, Adam, was ill too.

3. Adam stayed in the hospital for two weeks.

B) 4. b) proud

5. a) studies

5. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. Port Said is located in the north-east of Egypt.
2. How did you use to go to school?
3. It's a pity that you can't come.
4. The desert is an area of very dry land.

6. Write a short paragraph of five sentences about:

Left to students.

6. Suez Governorate

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** Egyptian
2. **d)** 27

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I want to buy a jacket.
2. What size do you want?
3. I'd like a black one.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** cook
2. **d)** never
3. **b)** sharing
4. **d)** breathe
5. **c)** mustn't

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. The scientist often forgot about his food.

2. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to the eggs.

3. The scientist put his watch in the pan because he was thinking of his work and not his food.

B) 4. **c)** cook

5. **b)** basket

5. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. He used to live in the countryside.
2. Do you have any brothers or sisters?
3. In a museum, you mustn't touch the objects.
4. Can you tell me the price of a ticket, please?

6. Write a short paragraph of five sentences about:

Left to students.

7. El-Fayoum Governorate

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) surgeon
2. d) father

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm fine, thanks.
2. When do you get up?
3. My favourite sport is football.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) mosques
2. a) taller
3. c) mustn't
4. d) princess
5. d) running

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Salma was playing with her toys in the bathroom.

2. Ahmed and Soha dried the floor using their father's old newspapers.

3. There are five persons in the family.

B) 4. d) water

5. c) work

5. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. Who is your hero?
2. Amr is taller than me.
3. You should study hard to get high marks.
4. My grandfather used to play tennis.

6. Write a short paragraph of five sentences about:

Left to students.

8. Minya Governorate

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) interview
2. b) left

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I do.
2. I'm sorry, I can't.
3. I hope he gets better soon.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) where
2. a) up
3. c) is grown
4. b) How much
5. b) hear

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

A) 1. Egyptian Heroes.

2. Lots of people love this sport because the Egyptian Handball Team won an important competition, making them the best team in Africa.
3. The Egyptian Handball Team won an important competition in 2020 - the Handball Africa Cup of Nations in Tunisia.

B) 4. b) Tunisia

5. c) handball

5. Reorder the following groups of words to make correct sentences:

1. Tamer is learning a new skill at the moment.
2. What can the charities do with the money?
3. I need a computer engineer to repair my computer.
4. Tourists like visiting historic buildings.

6. Write a short paragraph of five sentences about:

Left to students.

(3) Inclusive Exams

1. Ismailia Governorate

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:

1. **d)** do
2. **b)** Where
3. **e)** are
4. **a)** cousins
5. **c)** time

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

1. **c)** new
2. **b)** had
3. **a)** many
4. **c)** village
5. **a)** excited
6. **d)** never

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** As
2. **d)** have to
3. **d)** oldest
4. **a)** use
5. **a)** have

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** Papyrus
2. **c)** laboratory
3. **b)** recycle
4. **b)** grandparents
5. **d)** desert
6. **a)** looks
7. **a)** dolphin
8. **d)** have

5. Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

b) I get up at 7 o'clock. I go to my work. I have lunch after I go home. At night, I watch TV.

2. Beni Suef Governorate (Beni Suef Educational Administration)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:

1. b) jacket
2. c) size
3. a) Red
4. d) like
5. b) take

2. Read the following, then answer the questions:

1. c) small.
2. b) ground floor.
3. a) two.
4. b) three
5. b) the house.
6. c) attic.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) live
2. a) drive
3. c) drop
4. d) is playing
5. b) left

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) never
2. b) walk
3. a) cook
4. a) volunteer
5. b) explain
6. d) donate
7. c) make
8. b) fantastic

5. Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

1. d)
2. b)
3. c)
4. a)